ONKYO

AV RECEIVER

# TX-NR797

Instruction Manual


Table of contents ≫

Connections ≫

- Connecting Speakers ≫

Playback ≫

Setup ≫

Troubleshooting ≫

Appendix ≫

Supplementary Information ≫


En

**What's in the box** 5
**Additional Function (Firmware Update)** 6
Update Information of the firmware 6
Operation of added new functions 6
Firmware Update Procedure 7
**Part Names** 10
Front Panel 10
Display 12
Rear Panel 13
Remote Controller 15

## Connections

**Connecting speakers** 17
Speaker Installation 18
Speaker Connections and "Speaker Setup" Settings 36
Speaker combinations 49
**Connecting the TV** 50
To ARC TV 51
To Non-ARC TV 52
**Connecting Playback Devices** 53
Connecting an AV Component with HDMI Jack Mounted 53
Connecting an AV Component without HDMI Jack Mounted 54
Connecting an Audio Component 55
Connecting a Video Camera, etc. 56
**Connecting an AV Component in a Separate Room (Multi-zone Connection)** 57
Connecting a TV (ZONE 2) 57
Connecting a Pre-main Amplifier (ZONE 2) 58
**Connecting ZONE B** 59
Connecting a Pre-main Amplifier, etc. (ZONE B) 59
**Connecting Antennas** 60
**Network Connection** 61
**Connecting External Control Devices** 62
IR IN port 62
12V TRIGGER OUT jack 63
**Connecting the Power Cord** 64

## Playback

**AV Component Playback** 66
Basic Operations 66
**BLUETOOTH® Playback** 67
Basic Operations 67
**Internet Radio** 68
Playing Back 68
**Spotify** 70
**AirPlay®** 71

Playing Back on This Unit 71
Playing Back on multiple devices (AirPlay2) 72
**DTS Play-Fi® 73**
Playing Back 73
**FlareConnect™ 74**
Playing Back 74
**USB Storage Device 75**
Basic Operations 75
Device and Supported Format 77
**Playing back files on a PC and NAS (Music Server) 78**
Windows Media® Player settings 78
Playing Back 79
Supported Audio Formats 82
**Play Queue 83**
Initial Setup 83
Adding Play Queue Information 83
Sort and Delete 84
Playing Back 84
**Amazon Music 85**
Registering This Unit with Amazon Music 85
Playing Amazon Music 85
**Connecting the Sonos System for Playback 86**
Necessary Equipment 86
How to Connect This Unit and Sonos Connect 86
Setting Up 86
Playing Sonos on This Unit 87
**Listening To the AM/FM Radio 88**
Tuning into a Radio Station 88
Presetting a Radio Station 90
Using RDS (Asian models) 92
**Multi-zone 93**
Playing Back (ZONE 2) 94
Playing Back (ZONE 3) 96
**ZONE B Playback 97**
Playing Back 97
**Convenience functions 98**
Displaying Your Favorite Video on TV While Playing Music 98
Adjusting the tone 99
Sleep Timer 100
**Listening Mode 101**
Selecting a Listening mode 101
Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes 103
Listening Mode Effects 106
Input Formats and Selectable Listening Modes 112
**Inputting Characters 127**

## Setup

**Setup Menu** **128**
Menu list 128
Menu operations 130
1. Input/Output Assign 131
2. Speaker 135
3. Audio Adjust 141
4. Source 143
5. Hardware 145
6. Multi Zone 152
7. Miscellaneous 153
**Quick Menu** **155**
Menu operations 155
**Web Setup** **157**
Menu operations 157
**Initial Setup with Auto Start-up Wizard** **158**
Operations 158

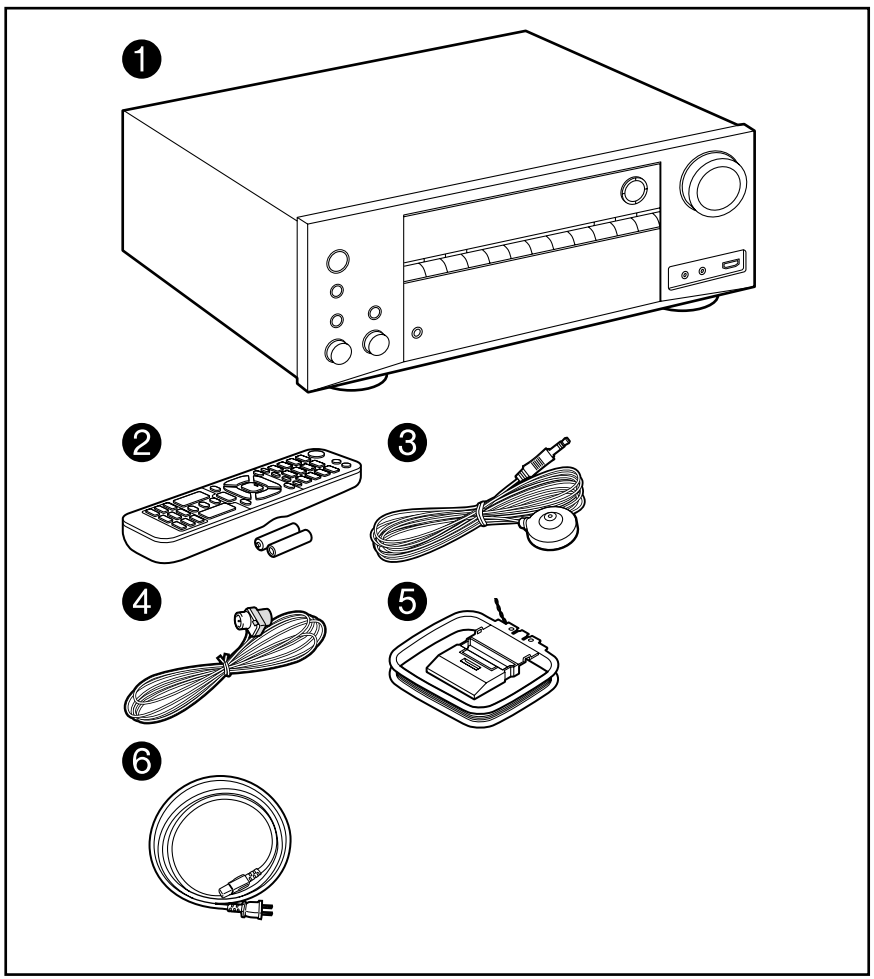
## Troubleshooting

When the unit is operating erratically 162
Troubleshooting 164

## Appendix

**Reducing the Power Consumption in Standby State** **173**
**About HDMI** **174**
**General Specifications** **176**

## What's in the box




1. Main unit (1)
2. Remote controller (RC-972R) (1), Batteries (AAA/R03) (2)
3. Speaker setup microphone (1)
   - Used during Initial Setup.
4. Indoor FM antenna (1)
5. AM loop antenna (1)
6. Power cord (1)

- Quick Start Guide (1)

*This is an online user manual. This is not supplied with the product.

- Connect speakers with an impedance of 4 Ω to 16 Ω.
- The power cord must be connected only after all other connections are completed.
- We will not accept any responsibility for damage arising from the connection with equipment manufactured by other companies.
- Network services and content that can be used may no longer be available if new functions are added by updating firmware or the service providers terminate their services. Also, available services may differ depending on your area.
- Details on the firmware update will be posted on our website and through other means at a later date.
- The illustrations in this manual use those of North American models unless otherwise mentioned.
- Specifications and appearance are subject to change without prior notice.

# Additional Function (Firmware Update)

This unit is equipped with a function to update the firmware via network or USB port when the firmware update is announced after purchase. This enables various functions to be added and operations to be improved.
Depending on the manufacturing timing of the product, the firmware may be switched to the updated one. In such a case, new functions may be added from the start.
For how to confirm the latest firmware contents and the firmware version of your product, see the following section.

## Update Information of the firmware

For the latest firmware contents and the firmware version, visit our company's website. If the firmware version of your product differs from the latest one, it is recommended to update the firmware.
To confirm the firmware version of your product, press the ☼ button on the remote controller, and refer to "7. Miscellaneous" - "Firmware Update" - "Version" ( →p153).

## Operation of added new functions

If functions are added or changed from contents described in the Instruction Manual, see the following reference.

Supplementary Information ≫

❑ Firmware Update Procedure ( →p7)

# Firmware Update Procedure

The update may take approx. 20 minutes to complete via network or via USB port. Existing settings are guaranteed in either updating method.
When this unit is connected to the network, notifications of firmware updates may be displayed. To update the firmware, select "Update Now" with the cursor buttons of the remote controller and press ENTER. The unit automatically enters standby mode after "Completed!" is displayed, and the update is completed.

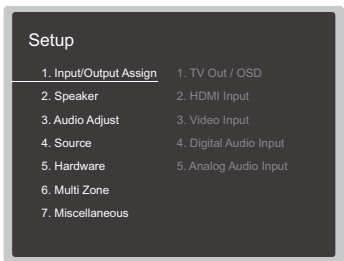
**Disclaimer**: The program and accompanying online documentation are furnished to you for use at your own risk.
Our company will not be liable and you will have no remedy for damages for any claim of any kind whatsoever concerning your use of the program or the accompanying online documentation, regardless of legal theory, and whether arising in tort or contract.
In no event will our company be liable to you or any third party for any special, indirect, incidental, or consequential damages of any kind, including, but not limited to, compensation, reimbursement or damages on account of the loss of present or prospective profits, loss of data, or for any other reason whatsoever.

## Updating the Firmware via Network

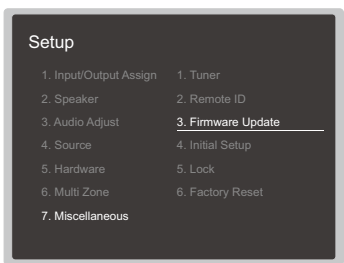
- While updating the firmware, do not do the following:
  – Disconnecting and reconnecting cables, USB storage device, speaker setup microphone or headphones, or performing operations on the unit such as turning the power off
  – Accessing this unit from a PC or smartphone using their applications
- Check that the unit is turned on, and the connection to the Internet is secured.
- Turn off control devices (PC etc.) connected to the network.
- Stop an Internet radio, USB storage device, or server content being played.
- If the multi-zone function is active, turn it off.
- If "HDMI CEC" is set to "On", set it to "Off".
  – Press ☼. Next, select "5. Hardware" - "HDMI" and press ENTER, then select "HDMI CEC" and select "Off".
  * The descriptions may differ from the actual on-screen displays, however, operations and functions are the same.

### Update

1. Press ☼.
   The Setup menu is displayed on the TV screen.




2. Select "7. Miscellaneous" - "Firmware Update" - "Update via NET" with the cursors in order, then press ENTER.




   - If "Firmware Update" is grayed out and cannot be selected, wait for a while until it starts up.
   - If there is no updatable firmware, "Update via NET" cannot be selected.
3. Press ENTER with "Update" selected, and start update.
   - During the update, the TV screen may go black depending on the program to be updated. In such a case, check the progress on the display of the unit. The TV screen will remain black until the update is completed and the power is turned on again.
   - When "Completed!" is displayed, the update is complete.

4. Press ⏻ ON/STANDBY on the main unit to turn the unit into standby mode.
   The process is completed, and your firmware is updated to the latest version.
   • Do not use ⏻ on the remote controller.

### If an Error Message is Displayed

If an error occurs, "∗-∗∗ Error!" is displayed on the display of the unit. ("∗" represents an alphanumeric character.) Refer to the following descriptions and check.

Error Code

• ∗-01, ∗-10:
  LAN cable not found. Connect the LAN cable properly.
• ∗-02, ∗-03, ∗-04, ∗-05, ∗-06, ∗-11, ∗-13, ∗-14, ∗-16, ∗-17, ∗-18, ∗-20, ∗-21:
  Internet connection error. Check the following:
  – Whether the router is turned on
  – Whether this unit and the router are connected via the network
  Unplug and plug the power cords of this unit and the router. This may solve the problem. If you are still unable to connect to the Internet, the DNS server or proxy server may be temporarily down. Check the server operation status with your Internet service provider.
• Others:
  After removing the power plug once, insert it to the outlet, and then start the operation from the beginning.

## Updating via USB

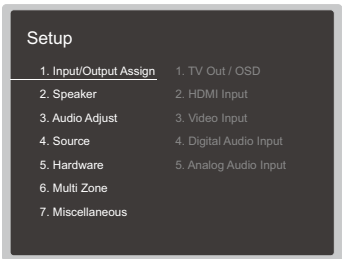
• While updating the firmware, do not do the following:
  – Disconnecting and reconnecting cables, USB storage device, speaker setup microphone or headphones, or performing operations on the unit such as turning the power off
  – Accessing this unit from a PC or smartphone using their applications
• Prepare a 256 MB or larger USB storage device. The format of USB storage devices supports FAT16 or FAT32 file system format.
  – Media inserted into a USB card reader may not be used for this function.
  – USB storage devices equipped with the security function are not supported.
  – USB hubs and USB devices equipped with the hub function are not supported. Do not connect these devices to the unit.
• Delete any data stored on the USB storage device.
• Turn off control devices (PC etc.) connected to the network.
• Stop an Internet radio, USB storage device, or server content being played
• If the multi-zone function is active, turn it off.
• If "HDMI CEC" is set to "On", set it to "Off".
  – Press ☼. Next, select "5. Hardware" - "HDMI" and press ENTER, then select "HDMI CEC" and select "Off".

* Depending on the USB storage device or its content, long time may be required for loading, the content may not be loaded correctly, or power may not be supplied correctly.
* Our company will not be liable whatsoever for any loss or damage of data, or storage failure arising from the use of the USB storage device. Please note this in advance.
* The descriptions may differ from the actual on-screen displays, however, operations and functions are the same.

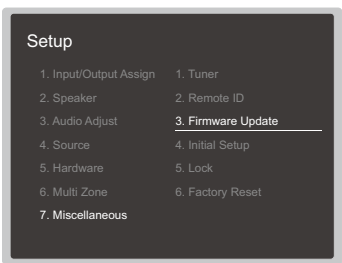
### Update

1. Connect the USB storage device to your PC.
2. Download the firmware file from the our company's website to your PC and unzip.
   Firmware files are named as below.
   ONKAVR∗∗∗∗_R∗∗∗.zip
   Unzip the file on your PC. The number of unzipped files and folders varies depending on the model.
3. Copy all unzipped files and folders to the root folder of the USB storage device.
   • Make sure to copy the unzipped files.
4. Connect the USB storage device to the USB port of this unit.
   • If an AC adapter is supplied with the USB storage device, connect the AC adapter, and use it with a household outlet.
   • If the USB storage device has been partitioned, each section will be treated as an independent device.

5. Press ☼.
   The Setup menu is displayed on the TV screen.




6. Select "7. Miscellaneous" - "Firmware Update" - "Update via USB" with the cursors in order, then press ENTER.




   - If "Firmware Update" is grayed out and cannot be selected, wait for a while until it starts up.
   - If there is no updatable firmware, "Update via USB" cannot be selected.
7. Press ENTER with "Update" selected, and start update.
   - During the update, the TV screen may go black depending on the program to be updated. In such a case, check the progress on the display of the unit. The TV screen will remain black until the update is completed and the power is turned on again.
   - During the update, do not turn the power off, or disconnect or reconnect the USB storage device.
   - When "Completed!" is displayed, the update is complete.
8. Disconnect the USB storage device from the unit.
9. Press ⏻ ON/STANDBY on the main unit to turn the unit into standby mode.
   The process is completed, and your firmware is updated to the latest version.
   - Do not use ⏻ on the remote controller.

### If an Error Message is Displayed

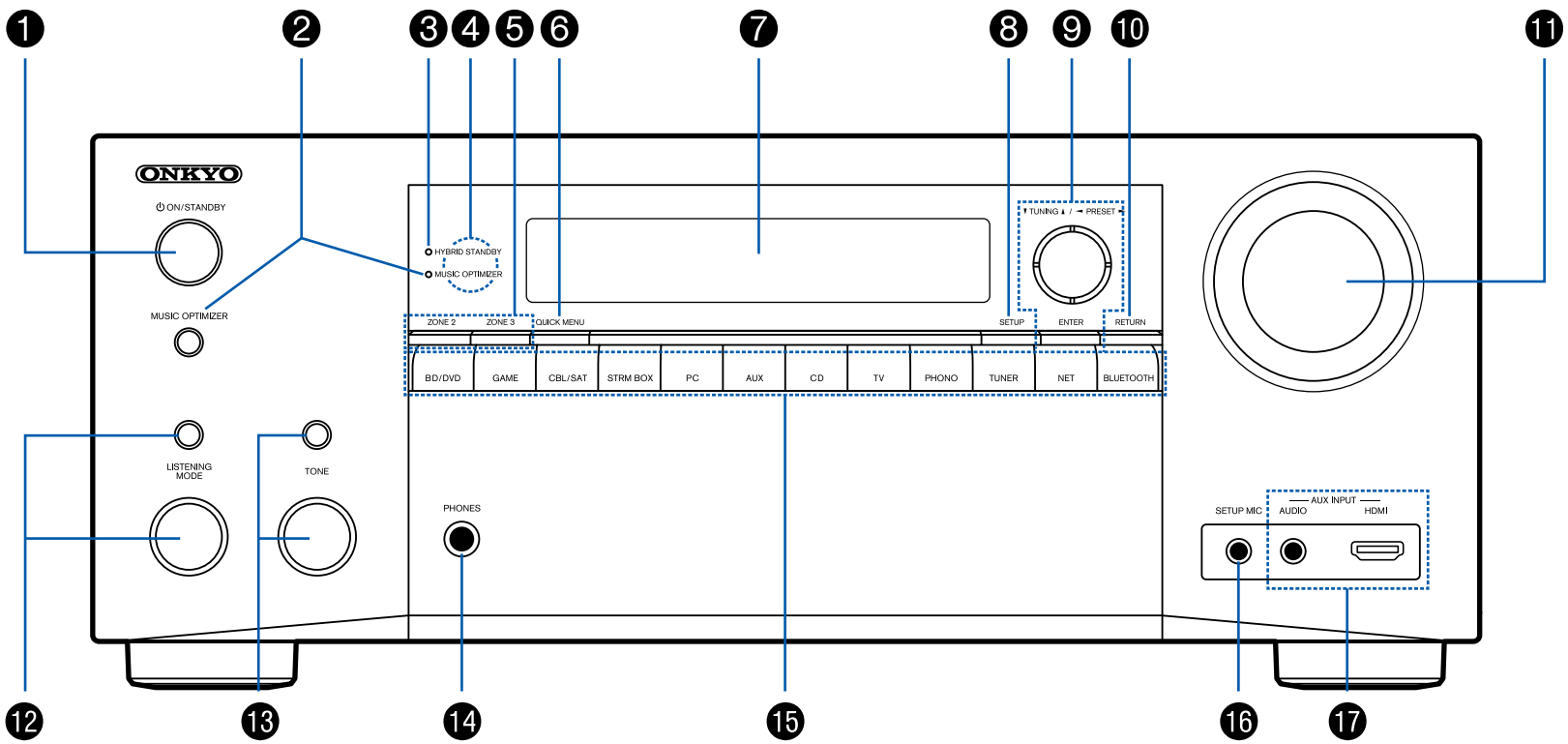
If an error occurs, "∗-∗∗ Error!" is displayed on the display of the unit. ("∗" represents an alphanumeric character.) Refer to the following descriptions and check.

Error Code

- ∗-01, ∗-10:
  The USB storage device cannot be recognized. Check if the USB storage device or USB cable is securely inserted to the USB port of the unit.
  Connect the USB storage device to an external power source if it has its own power supply.
- ∗-05, ∗-13, ∗-20, ∗-21:
  The firmware file is not present in the root folder of the USB storage device, or the firmware file is for another model. Retry from the download of the firmware file.
- Others:
  After removing the power plug once, insert it to the outlet, and then start the operation from the beginning.

# Part Names

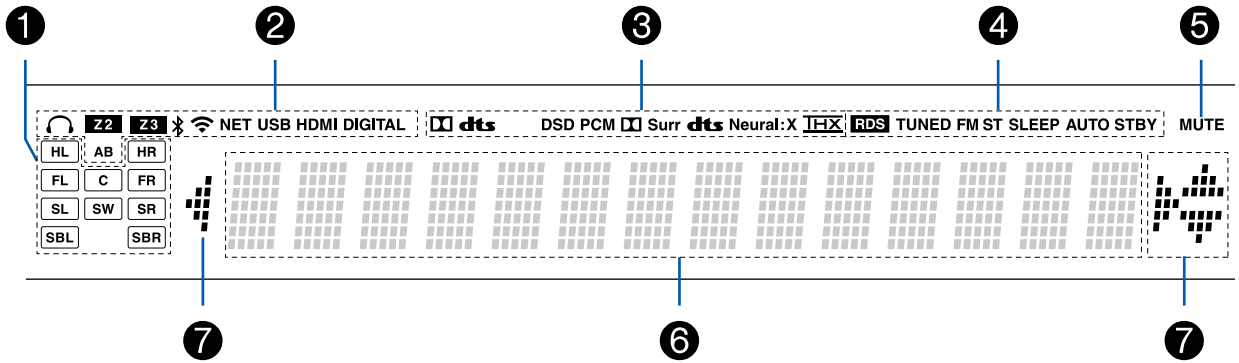
## Front Panel




❑ For details, see ( →p11)

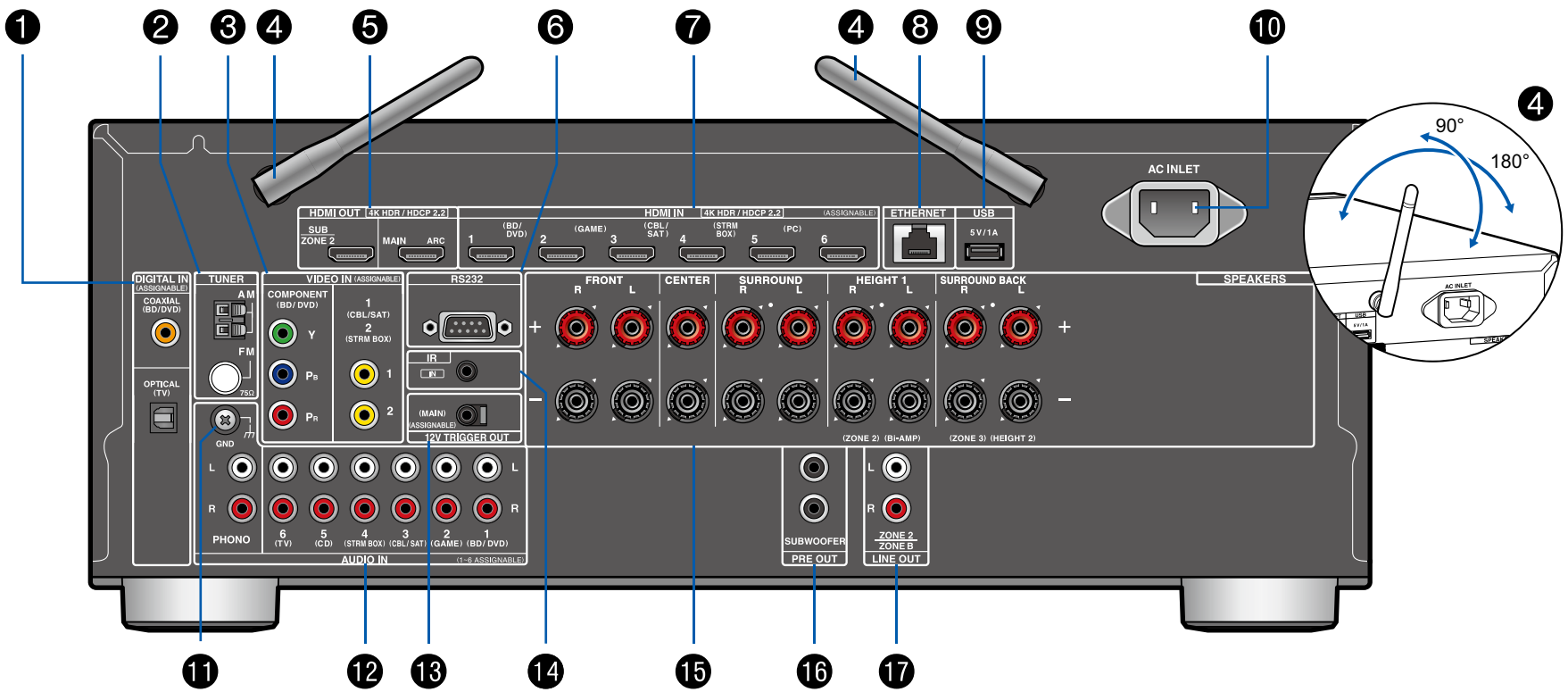
1. ⏻ ON/STANDBY button
2. MUSIC OPTIMIZER button/indicator (North American models): Turns on/off the MUSIC OPTIMIZER function that improves the quality of the compressed audio.
3. HYBRID STANDBY indicator: Lights up when any of the following functions is working or enabled in standby state of this unit. When this indicator is lighting, the power consumption in standby state increases, however, the increase in power consumption is minimized by entering the HYBRID STANDBY mode where only the essential circuits operate.
   – HDMI CEC ( →p145)
   – HDMI Standby Through ( →p145)
   – USB Power Out at Standby ( →p150)
   – Network Standby ( →p150)
   – Bluetooth Wakeup ( →p150)
4. Remote control sensor: Receives signals from the remote controller.
   • The reception range of the remote controller is within a distance of approx. 16´/5 m, and an angle of 20° in vertical direction and 30° to right and left.
5. ZONE 2/ZONE 3 button: Controls the multi-zone function. ( →p94)
6. QUICK MENU button: Pressing this button during playback can make settings such as "HDMI" and "Audio" quickly on the TV screen while playing. ( →p155)
7. Display ( →p12)
8. SETUP button: You can display advanced setting items on the TV and the display to have a more enjoyable experience with this unit. ( →p128)
9. Cursor buttons (▲/▼/◀/▶) and ENTER button: Select an item with the cursors, and press ENTER to confirm your selection. When using TUNER, use them to tune in to stations. ( →p88)
10. RETURN button: Returns the display to the previous state while setting.
11. MASTER VOLUME
12. Press the LISTENING MODE button (above) to select a category from "Movie/TV", "Music" and "Game", and then turn the LISTENING MODE dial (below) to change the listening mode ( →p101).
13. Adjusts the sound quality. Press the TONE button (above) to select an item to adjust from "Bass", "Vocal" and "Treble", and turn the TONE dial (below) to adjust. ( →p99)
14. PHONES jack: Connect headphones with a standard plug (ø1/4″/6.3 mm).
15. Input selector buttons: Switches the input to be played.
16. SETUP MIC jack: Connect the supplied speaker setup microphone. ( →p159)
17. AUX INPUT AUDIO/HDMI jack: Connect a video camera, etc. using a stereo mini plug cable (ø1/8″/3.5 mm) or HDMI cable. ( →p56)

# Display




1. Speaker/Channel display: Displays the output channel that corresponds to the selected listening mode.
2. Lights in the following conditions.
   : Headphones are connected.
   Z2/Z3: ZONE 2/ZONE 3 is on.
   : Connected by BLUETOOTH.
   : Connected by Wi-Fi.
   NET: Lights when connected to the network with the "NET" input selector. It will blink if incorrectly connected to the network.
   USB: Lights when the "NET" input selector is selected, a USB device is connected and the USB input is selected. It will blink if the USB device is not properly connected.
   HDMI: HDMI signals are input and the HDMI input is selected.
   DIGITAL: Digital signals are input and the digital input is selected.
   A: Audio in output only to ZONE A.
   B: Audio is output only to ZONE B.
   AB: Audio is output to both ZONE A and ZONE B.
3. Lights according to the type of input digital audio signal and the listening mode.
4. Lights in the following conditions.
   RDS (Asian models): Receiving RDS broadcasting.
   TUNED: Receiving AM/FM radio.
   FM ST: Receiving FM stereo.
   SLEEP: Sleep timer is set. ( →p149)
   AUTO STBY: Auto Standby is set. ( →p149)
5. Blinks when muting is on.
6. Displays various information of the input signals.
   - "DialogNorm: X dB" ("X" is a numerical value) may be displayed when software recorded in Dolby lineage or DTS lineage audio formats is played. For example, if "DialogNorm: +4 dB" is displayed, the source being played is recorded with 4 dB plus the THX standard level. If you play it with the THX standard level, lower the volume by 4 dB.
7. This may light when operating with the "NET" input selector.

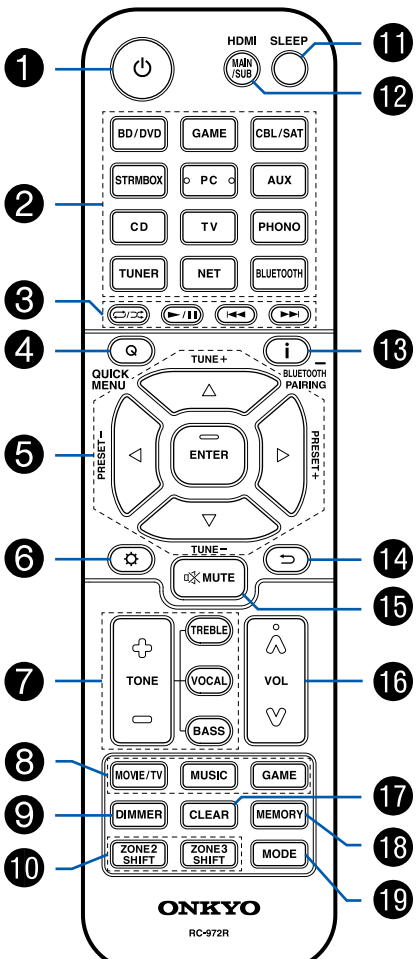
# Rear Panel




❑ For details, see ( →p14)

1. DIGITAL IN OPTICAL/COAXIAL jacks: Input TV or AV component digital audio signals with a digital optical cable or digital coaxial cable.
2. TUNER AM/FM terminal: Connect the supplied antennas.
3. COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks: Input AV component video signals with a component video cable. (Compatible only with 480i or 576i resolution.)
   VIDEO IN jacks: Input AV component video signals with an analog video cable.
4. Wireless antenna: Used for WI-Fi connection or when using a BLUETOOTH-enabled device. Adjust the angles according to the connection status.
5. HDMI OUT jacks: Transmit video signals and audio signals with an HDMI cable connected to a monitor such as a TV or projector.
6. RS-232 port: Connect a home control system equipped with an RS-232 port. For adopting a home control system, contact the specialized stores.
7. HDMI IN jacks: Transmit video signals and audio signals with an HDMI cable connected to an AV component.
8. ETHERNET port: Connect to the network with a LAN cable.
9. USB port: Connect a USB storage device to play music files. (→p75) You can also supply power (5 V/1 A) to USB devices with a USB cable.
10. AC INLET: Connect the supplied power cord.
11. GND terminal: Connect the ground wire of the turntable.
12. AUDIO IN jacks: Input AV component audio signals with an analog audio cable.
13. 12V TRIGGER OUT jack: Connect a device equipped with a 12V trigger input jack to enable power link operation between the device and this unit. (→p63)
14. IR IN port: Connect a remote control receiver unit. (→p62)
15. SPEAKERS terminals: Connect speakers with speaker cables. (North American models support banana plugs. Use a plug 4 mm in diameter. Y plug connection is not supported.)
16. SUBWOOFER PRE OUT jacks: Connect a powered subwoofer with a subwoofer cable. Up to two powered subwoofers can be connected. The same signal is output from each SUBWOOFER PRE OUT jack.
17. ZONE 2 LINE OUT jacks: Output audio signals with an analog audio cable connected to a pre-main amplifier in a separate room (ZONE 2).
    ZONE B LINE OUT jacks: Connect to a pre-main amplifier with an analog audio cable, and simultaneously output audio of the same source as that of the speakers (ZONE A) connected to this unit.

# Remote Controller




1. ⏻ ON/STANDBY button
2. Input selector buttons: Switches the input to be played.
3. Play buttons: Used for playback operations for the Music Server (→p78) or USB device ( →p75). Also, switching to "CEC MODE" with "19. MODE button" allows you to operate an HDMI CEC function-enabled AV component. (Some devices may not be operated.)
4. Q (QUICK MENU) button: Pressing this button during playback allows you to make settings such as "HDMI" and "Audio" quickly on the TV screen while playing. ( →p155)
5. Cursor buttons and ENTER button: Select an item with the cursors, and press ENTER to confirm your selection. Pressing ◀/▶ button allows you to switch the screen when a music folder list or file list is not displayed on one screen on the TV.
6. ☼ button: Displays advanced setting items on the TV or the display to have a more enjoyable experience with this unit. ( →p128)
7. TONE button: Adjusts the sound quality. ( →p99)
8. LISTENING MODE button: Selects a listening mode ( →p101).
9. DIMMER button: Switches the brightness of the display with three levels. It cannot be turned off completely.
10. ZONE 2/ZONE 3 SHIFT button: Used to control the multi-zone function ( →p93).
11. SLEEP button: Sets the sleep timer. Select the time from "30 min", "60 min" and "90 min". ( →p100)
12. HDMI MAIN/SUB button: Select the HDMI OUT jack to output video signals from "MAIN", "SUB", and "MAIN+SUB".
13. i button: Switches the information on the display and is used to operate RDS ( →p92). Also, when the "BLUETOOTH" input selector is selected, pressing and holding this button for 5 seconds or more will switch to the pairing mode.
14. ⮌ button: Returns the display to the previous state while setting.
15. 🔇 button: Temporarily mutes audio. Press the button again to cancel muting.
16. VOLUME buttons
17. CLEAR button: Deletes all characters you have entered when entering text on the TV screen.
18. MEMORY button: Used to register AM/FM radio stations. ( →p90)
19. MODE button: Switches between automatic tuning and manual tuning for AM/FM stations ( →p88). Also, when an HDMI CEC function-enabled AV component is connected to this unit, you can switch "3. Play buttons" between "CEC MODE" and "RCV MODE" (normal mode).

# Connections

Connecting speakers 17
Connecting the TV 50
Connecting Playback Devices 53
Connecting an AV Component in a Separate Room (Multi-zone Connection) 57
Connecting ZONE B 59
Connecting Antennas 60
Network Connection 61
Connecting External Control Devices 62
Connecting the Power Cord 64

## Connecting speakers

You can select the layout of speakers to be installed from various patterns when using this unit. Use the following flow chart to select the speaker layout that suits your speakers and usage environment. You can check the connection method and default settings.

**Use height speakers?**

**Yes**

■ **When using 1 set of Height Speakers**

- 5.1.2 Channel System ( →p44)
- 5.1.2 Channel System + ZONE SPEAKER ( →p45)
- 5.1.2 Channel System (Bi-Amping the Speakers) ( →p46)
- 7.1.2 Channel System ( →p47)

■ **When using 2 sets of Height Speakers**

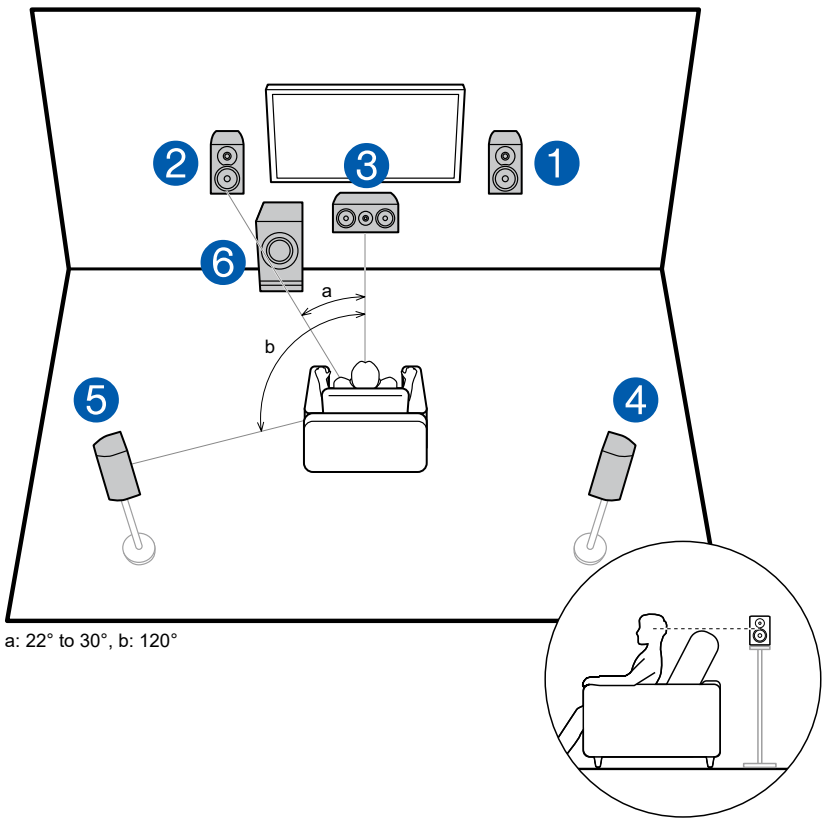
- 5.1.4 Channel System ( →p48)

**No**

- 5.1 Channel System ( →p38)
- 5.1 Channel System + ZONE SPEAKER ( →p39)
- 5.1 Channel System (Bi-Amping the Speakers) ( →p40)
- 7.1 Channel System ( →p41)
- 7.1 Channel System + ZONE SPEAKER ( →p42)
- 7.1 Channel System (Bi-Amping the Speakers) ( →p43)

# Speaker Installation

## ■ 5.1 Channel System



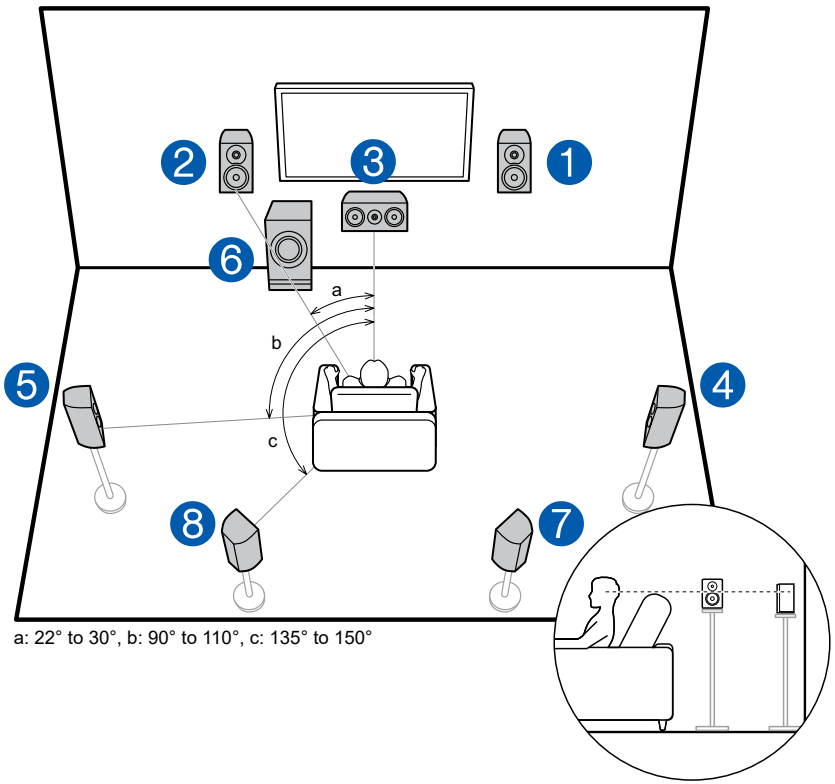

a: 22° to 30°, b: 120°

This is a basic 5.1 Channel System. Front speakers output the front stereo sound, and a center speaker outputs the sound of the center of the screen, such as dialogs and vocals. Surround speakers create the back sound field. Powered subwoofer reproduces the bass sound, and creates the rich sound field.
The front speakers should be positioned at ear height while the surround speakers should be positioned just above ear height. The center speaker should be set up facing the listening position at an angle. Placing the powered subwoofer between the center speaker and the front speaker gives you a natural sound even when playing music sources.

1,2 Front Speakers
3 Center Speaker
4,5 Surround Speakers
6 Powered Subwoofer

❑ **Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p103)**

## ■ 7.1 Channel System




a: 22° to 30°, b: 90° to 110°, c: 135° to 150°

This is a 7.1 Channel System that consists of the basic 5.1 Channel System (→p18) and added surround back speakers. Front speakers output the front stereo sound, and a center speaker outputs the sound of the center of the screen, such as dialogs and vocals. Surround speakers create the back sound field. Powered subwoofer reproduces the bass sound, and creates the rich sound field. Surround back speakers improves the sense of envelopment and connectivity of sound in the back sound field, and provides a more real sound field.
The front speakers should be positioned at ear height while the surround speakers should be positioned just above ear height. The center speaker should be set up facing the listening position at an angle. Placing the powered subwoofer between the center speaker and the front speaker gives you a natural sound even when playing music sources. The surround back speakers should be positioned at ear height.

- If surround back speakers are installed, be sure to install surround speakers as well.

1,2 Front Speakers
3 Center Speaker
4,5 Surround Speakers
6 Powered Subwoofer
7,8 Surround Back Speakers

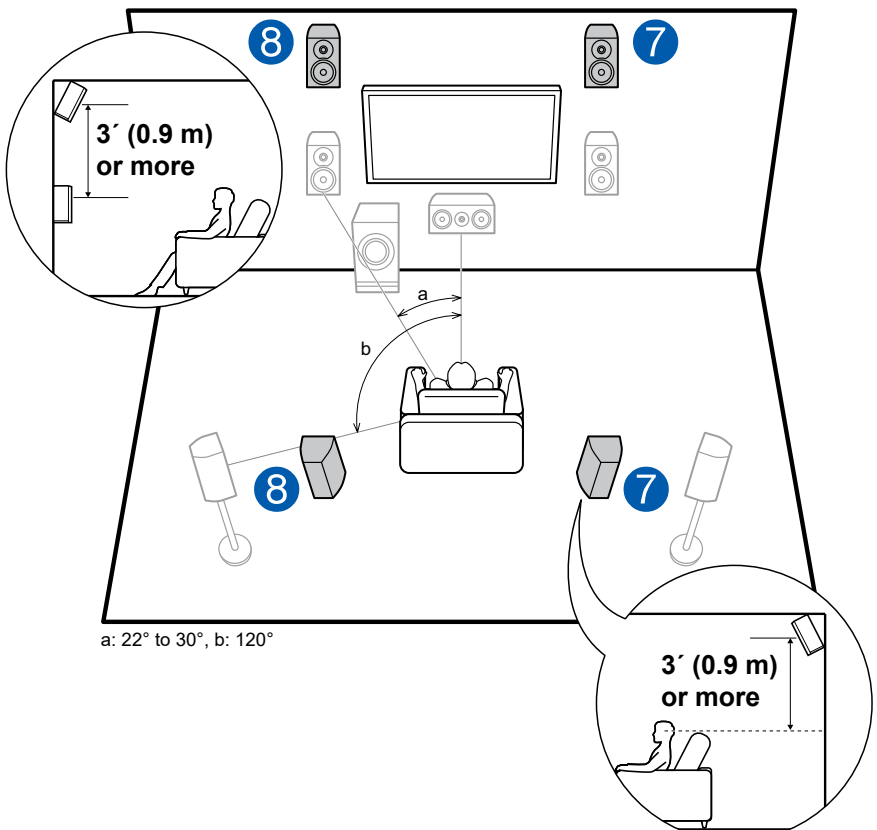
### ❑ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes (→p103)

## ■ 5.1.2 Channel System

A 5.1.2 Channel System is a speaker layout consisting of the basic 5.1 Channel System ( → p18) and added height speakers. Select the height speakers that suit your speakers and usage environment from the following three types.

- ❑ **Front High Speakers/Rear High Speakers Installation Example ( →p21)**
- ❑ **Ceiling Speakers Installation Example ( →p22)**
- ❑ **Dolby Enabled Speakers (Dolby Speakers) Installation Example ( →p23)**

## ❑ Front High Speakers/Rear High Speakers Installation Example



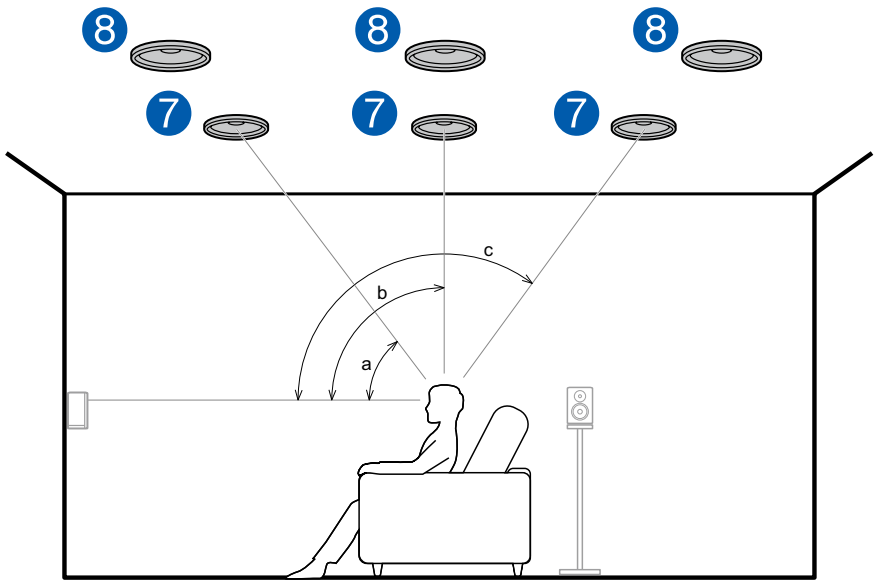

a: 22° to 30°, b: 120°

This is a system with the basic 5.1 channel system ( → p18) consisting of front speakers, a center speaker, surround speakers and a powered subwoofer, and added front high speakers or rear high speakers combined. Installing the height speakers will enrich the sound field feeling in the upper space. Front high speakers or rear high speakers should be installed at least 3´/0.9 m higher than the front speakers.
Front high speakers should be installed directly above the front speakers, and the distance between the rear high speakers should match the distance between the front speakers. In both cases, the speakers should be set up facing the listening position at an angle.

7,8 Height Speakers
Choose one of the following:
- Front High Speakers
- Rear High Speakers

## ❑ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p103)

## ❑ Ceiling Speakers Installation Example




a: 30° to 55°, b: 65° to 100°, c: 125° to 150°

This is a system with the basic 5.1 channel system ( →p18) consisting of front speakers, a center speaker, surround speakers and a powered subwoofer, and added top front speakers or top middle speakers or top rear speakers combined. Installing the height speakers will enrich the sound field feeling in the upper space. Install the top front speakers on the ceiling anterior to the seating position, top middle speakers on the ceiling directly above the seating position, and top rear speakers on the ceiling posterior to the seating position. The distance between each pair should match the distance between the front speakers.

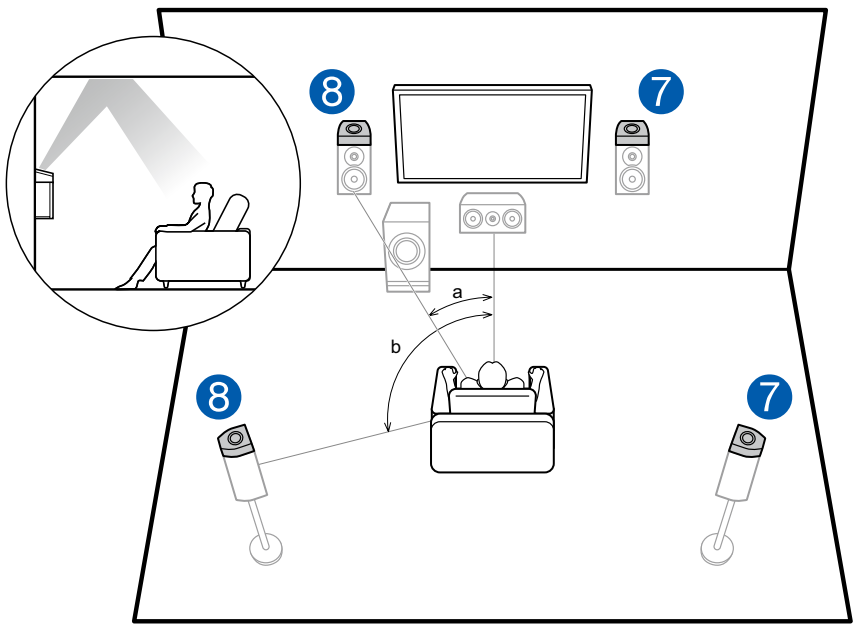
- Dolby Laboratories recommends the setups of these types of height speakers to obtain the best Dolby Atmos effect.

7,8 Height Speakers
Choose one of the following:

- Top Front Speakers
- Top Middle Speakers
- Top Rear Speakers

## ❑ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p103)

## ❑ Dolby Enabled Speakers (Dolby Speakers) Installation Example




a: 22° to 30°, b: 120°

This is a system with the basic 5.1 channel system ( →p18) consisting of front speakers, a center speaker, surround speakers and a powered subwoofer, and added Dolby enabled speakers (front) or Dolby enabled speakers (surround) combined. Dolby enabled speakers are special speakers designed to face the ceiling, so that the sound is heard from overhead by bouncing the sound off the ceiling. Installing the height speakers will enrich the sound field feeling in the upper space.
Install them either on the front speakers or on the surround speakers.

7,8 Height Speakers
Choose one of the following:
- Dolby Enabled Speakers (Front)
- Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround)

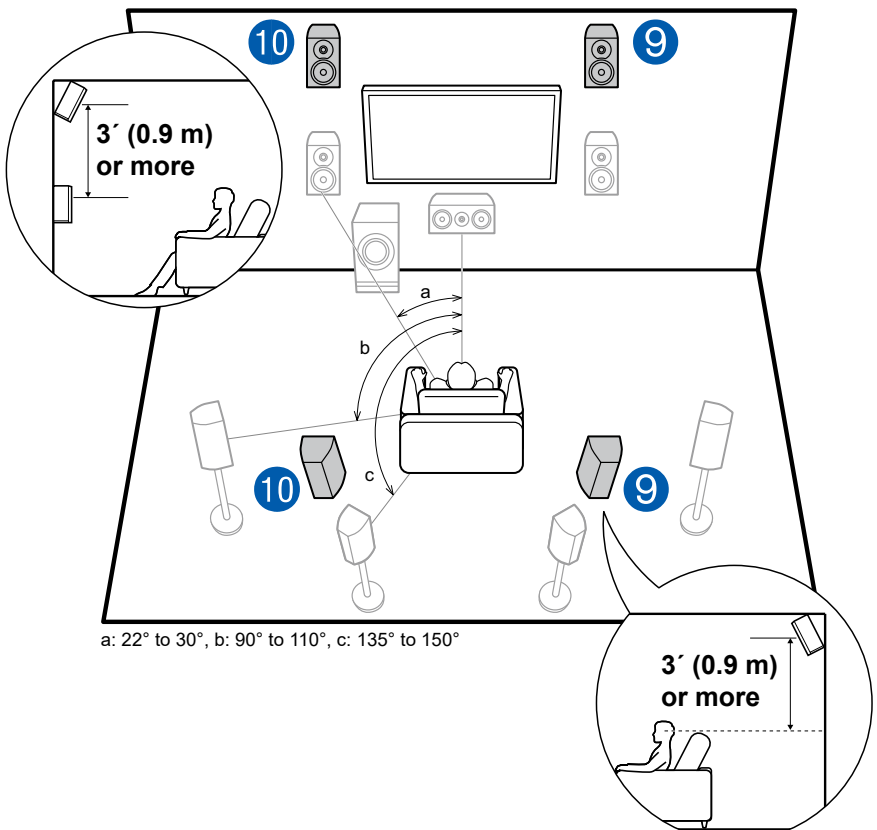
## ❑ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p103)

## ■ 7.1.2 Channel System

A 7.1.2 Channel System is a speaker layout consisting of the 7.1 Channel System ( →p19) and added height speakers. Select the height speakers that suit your speakers and usage environment from the following three types.

- ❑ **Front High Speakers/Rear High Speakers Installation Example ( →p25)**
- ❑ **Ceiling Speakers Installation Example ( →p26)**
- ❑ **Dolby Enabled Speakers (Dolby Speakers) Installation Example ( →p27)**

## ❑ Front High Speakers/Rear High Speakers Installation Example



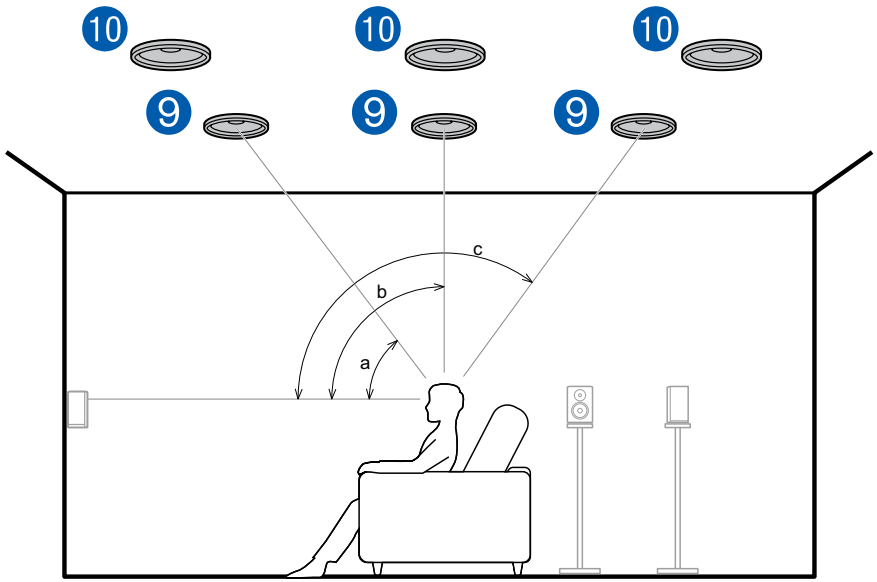

a: 22° to 30°, b: 90° to 110°, c: 135° to 150°

This is a system with the 7.1 channel system ( →p19) consisting of front speakers, a center speaker, surround speakers, surround back speakers and a powered subwoofer, and added front high speakers or rear high speakers combined. Installing the height speakers will enrich the sound field feeling in the upper space. Front high speakers or rear high speakers should be installed at least 3´/0.9 m higher than the front speakers.
Front high speakers should be installed directly above the front speakers, and the distance between the rear high speakers should match the distance between the front speakers. In both cases, the speakers should be set up facing the listening position at an angle.

9,10 Height Speakers
Choose one of the following:
- Front High Speakers
- Rear High Speakers

## ❑ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p103)

## ❑ Ceiling Speakers Installation Example




a: 30° to 55°, b: 65° to 100°, c: 125° to 150°

This is a system with the 7.1 channel system ( →p19) consisting of front speakers, a center speaker, surround speakers, surround back speakers and a powered subwoofer, and added top front speakers or top middle speakers or top rear speakers combined. Installing the height speakers will enrich the sound field feeling in the upper space. Install the top front speakers on the ceiling anterior to the seating position, top middle speakers on the ceiling directly above the seating position, and top rear speakers on the ceiling posterior to the seating position. The distance between each pair should match the distance between the front speakers.

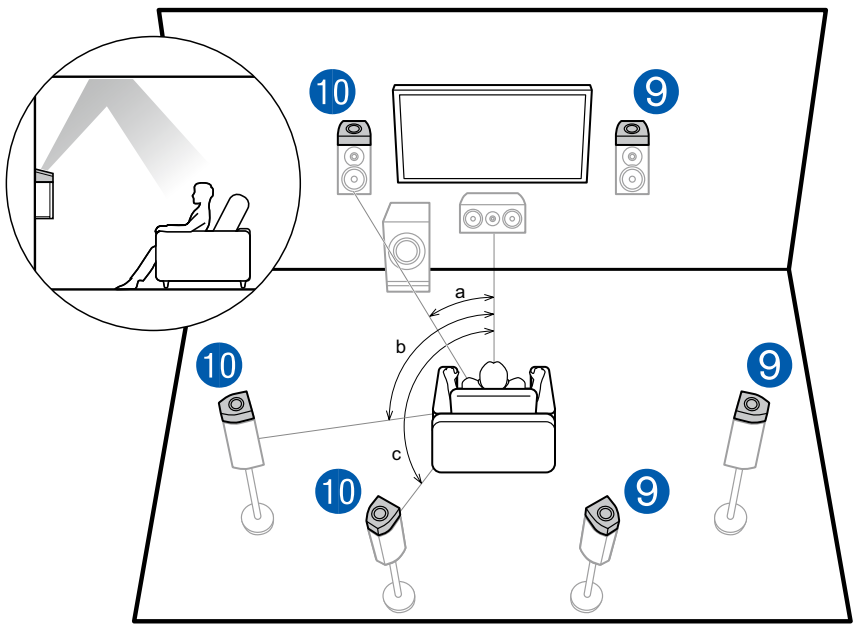
- Dolby Laboratories recommends the setups of these types of height speakers to obtain the best Dolby Atmos effect.

9,10 Height Speakers
Choose one of the following:

- Top Front Speakers
- Top Middle Speakers
- Top Rear Speakers

## ❑ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p103)

## ❑ Dolby Enabled Speakers (Dolby Speakers) Installation Example




a: 22° to 30°, b: 90° to 110°, c: 135° to 150°

This is a system with the 7.1 channel system ( →p19) consisting of front speakers, a center speaker, surround speakers, surround back speakers and a powered subwoofer, and added Dolby enabled speakers (front), Dolby enabled speakers (surround) or Dolby enabled speakers (surround back) combined. Dolby enabled speakers are special speakers designed to face the ceiling, so that the sound is heard from overhead by bouncing the sound off the ceiling. Installing the height speakers will enrich the sound field feeling in the upper space.
Install them either on the front speakers, on the surround speakers or on the surround back speakers.

9,10 Height Speakers
Choose one of the following:

- Dolby Enabled Speakers (Front)
- Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround)
- Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround Back)

## ❑ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p103)

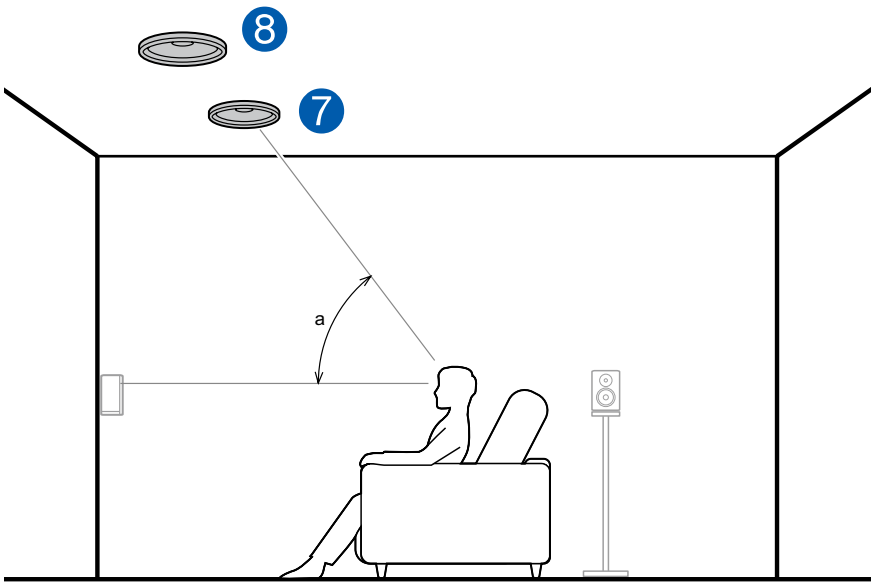
## ■ 5.1.4 Channel System

A 5.1.4 Channel System is a speaker layout combining 2 sets of the height speakers, 1 set of left and right at the front and 1 set of left and right at the rear, to the basic 5.1 Channel System ( →p18). Installing the height speakers will enrich the sound field feeling in the upper space. Combination of 2 height speakers can be selected from following.

- ❑ **Combination example when Top Front Speakers are used at the front ( →p29)**
- ❑ **Combination example when Top Middle Speakers are used at the front ( →p31)**
- ❑ **Combination example when Front High Speakers are used at the front ( →p32)**
- ❑ **Combination example when Dolby Enabled Speakers (Front) are used at the front ( →p34)**

## ❑ Combination example when Top Front Speakers are used at the front

### About the top front speakers

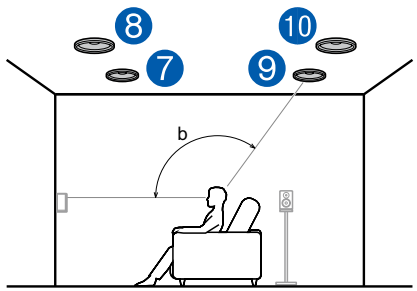



a: 30° to 55°

The top front speakers are installed on the ceiling at front of the listening position, and the width between the left and right speakers is optimal to match the one for the front speakers. When the top front speakers are used in front, the combination of the height speakers at the rear can be selected from the following 3 examples shown at the right.

7,8 Top Front Speakers

### (Example 1) Use top rear speakers at the rear



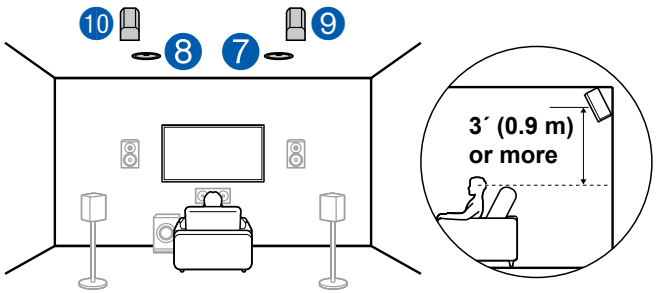

b: 125° to 150°

The top rear speakers are installed on the ceiling at rear of the listening position, and the width between the left and right speakers is optimal to match the one for the front speakers.

9,10 Top Rear Speakers

## ❑ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p103)

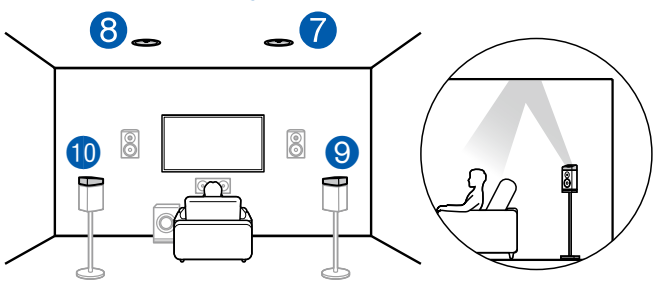
### (Example 2) Use rear high speakers at the rear




The width between the rear high speakers should match the one for the front speakers, and they should be installed minimum of 3'/0.9 m higher than the front speakers, and tilted so they will point toward the listener.

9,10 Rear High Speakers

### (Example 3) Use Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround) at the rear



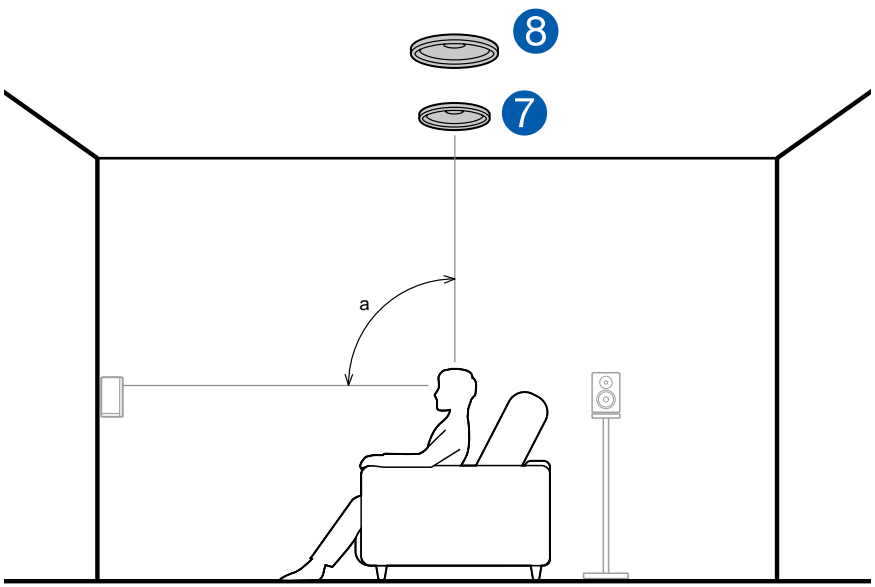

The Dolby enabled speakers are the special speaker that the sound is emitted toward the ceiling, and have the effect the sound to come from above by reflecting the sound on the ceiling.
The Dolby enabled speakers (surround) are installed on top of the surround speakers.

9,10 Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround)

## ❑ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p103)

## ❑ Combination example when Top Middle Speakers are used at the front

### About the top middle speakers

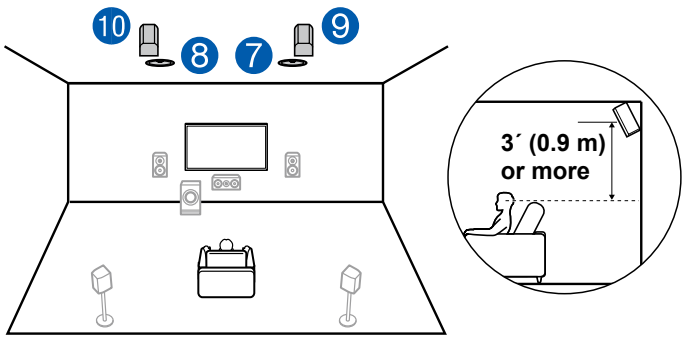



a: 65° to 100°

The top middle speakers are installed on the ceiling immediately above the listening position, and the width between the left and right speakers is optimal to match the one for the front speakers. When the top middle speakers are used in front, the rear high speakers in the figure at the right can be used at the rear.

7,8 Top Middle Speakers

### Use rear high speakers at the rear



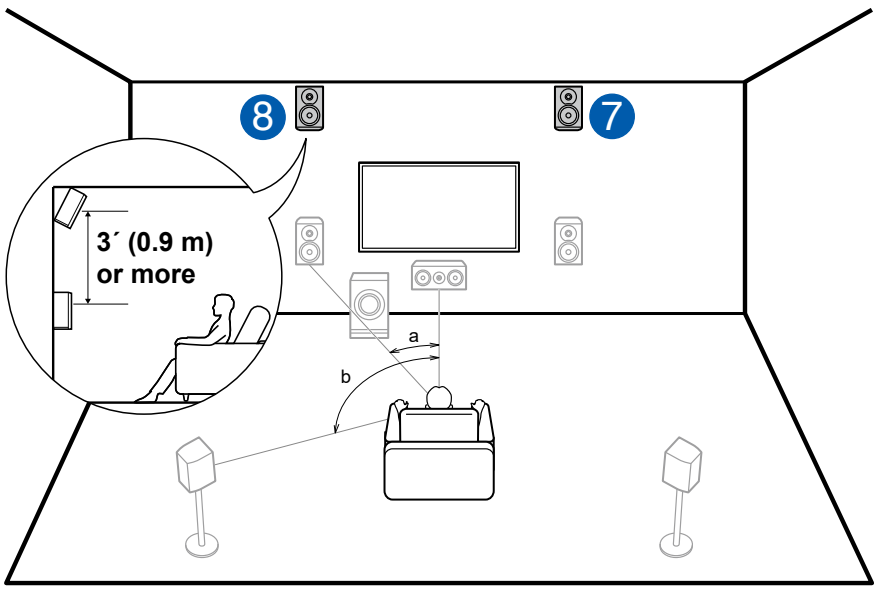

The width between the rear high speakers should match the one for the front speakers, and they should be installed minimum of 3'/0.9 m higher than the front speakers, and tilted so they will point toward the listener.

9,10 Rear High Speakers

## ❑ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p103)

## ❑ Combination example when Front High Speakers are used at the front

### About the front high speakers

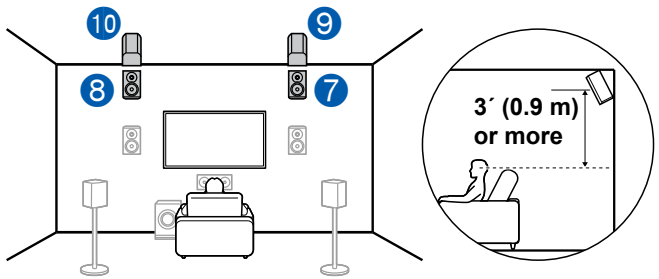



a: 22° to 30°, b: 120°

Install the front high speakers immediately above the front speakers minimum of 3’/0.9 m higher, and tilted so they will point toward the listener. When the front high speakers are used in front, the combination of the height speakers at the rear can be selected from the following 4 examples shown at the right.

7,8 Front High Speakers

### (Example 1) Use rear high speakers at the rear

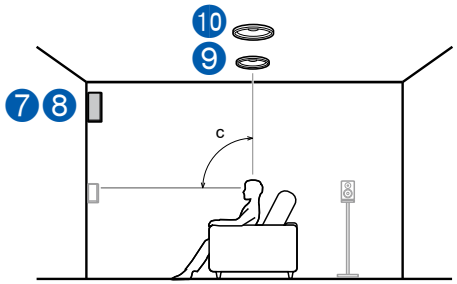



The width between the rear high speakers should match the one for the front speakers, and they should be installed minimum of 3’/0.9 m higher than the front speakers, and tilted so they will point toward the listener.

9,10 Rear High Speakers

## ❑ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p103)

### (Example 2) Use top middle speakers at the rear

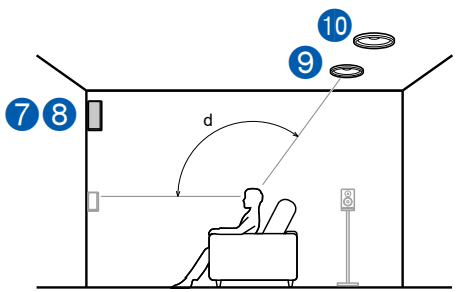



c: 65° to 100°

The top middle speakers are installed on the ceiling immediately above the listening position, and the width between the left and right speakers is optimal to match the one for the front speakers.

9,10 Top Middle Speakers

### (Example 3) Use top rear speakers at the rear

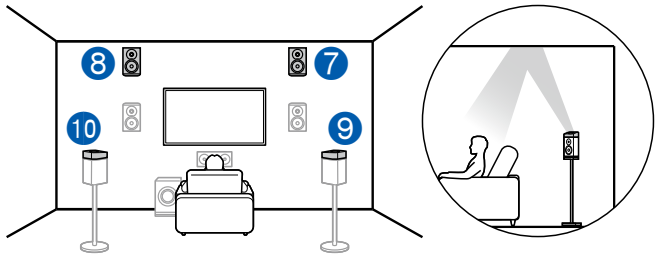



d: 125° to 150°

The top rear speakers are installed on the ceiling at rear of the listening position, and the width between the left and right speakers is optimal to match the one for the front speakers.

9,10 Top Rear Speakers

### (Example 4) Use Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround) at the rear



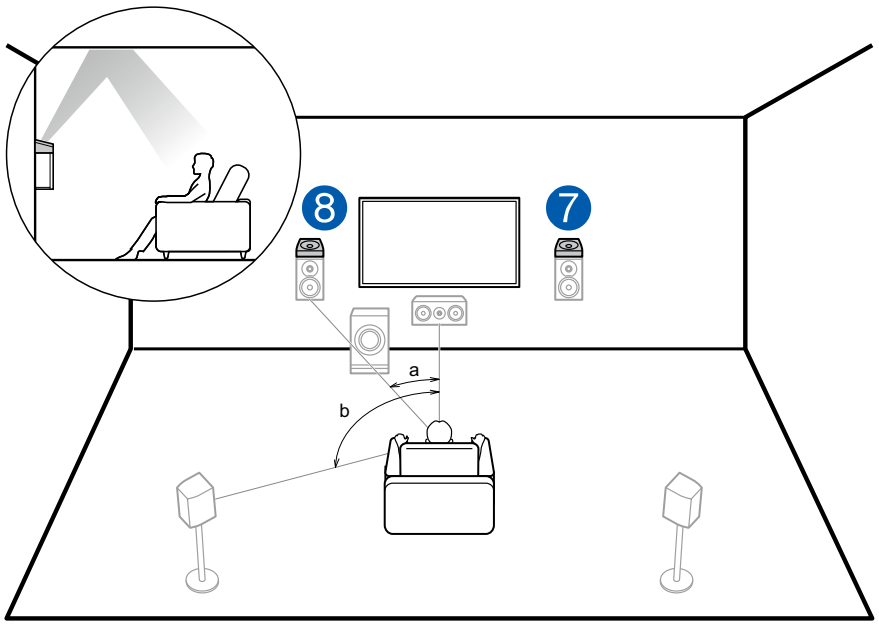

The Dolby enabled speakers are the special speaker that the sound is emitted toward the ceiling, and have the effect the sound to come from above by reflecting the sound on the ceiling.
The Dolby enabled speakers (surround) are installed on top of the surround speakers.

9,10 Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround)

## ❑ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p103)

## ❑ Combination example when Dolby Enabled Speakers (Front) are used at the front

### About the Dolby enabled speakers (front)

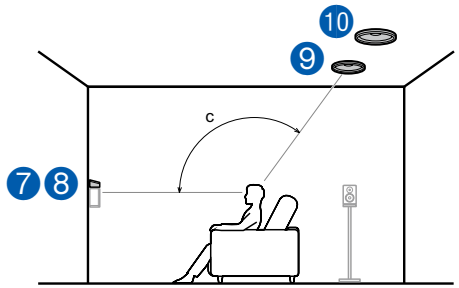



a: 22° to 30°, b: 120°

The Dolby enabled speakers are the special speaker that the sound is emitted toward the ceiling, and have the effect the sound to come from above by reflecting the sound on the ceiling.
The Dolby enabled speakers (front) are installed on top of the front speakers.
When the Dolby enabled speakers (front) are used in front, the combination of the height speakers at the rear can be selected from the following 3 examples shown at the right.

7,8 Dolby Enabled Speakers (Front)

### (Example 1) Use top rear speakers at the rear



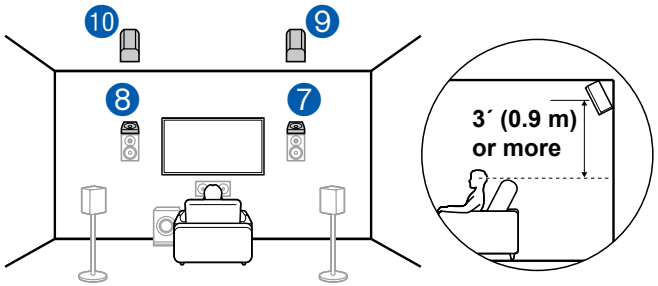

c: 125° to 150°

The top rear speakers are installed on the ceiling at rear of the listening position, and the width between the left and right speakers is optimal to match the one for the front speakers.

9,10 Top Rear Speakers

## ❑ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p103)

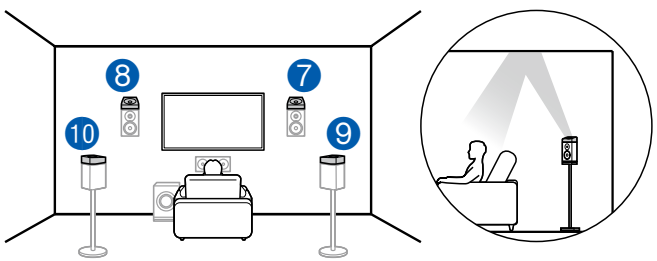
### (Example 2) Use rear high speakers at the rear




The width between the rear high speakers should match the one for the front speakers, and they should be installed minimum of 3'/0.9 m higher than the front speakers, and tilted so they will point toward the listener.

9,10 Rear High Speakers

### (Example 3) Use Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround) at the rear




The Dolby enabled speakers are the special speaker that the sound is emitted toward the ceiling, and have the effect the sound to come from above by reflecting the sound on the ceiling.
The Dolby enabled speakers (surround) are installed on top of the surround speakers.

9,10 Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround)

## ❑ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p103)

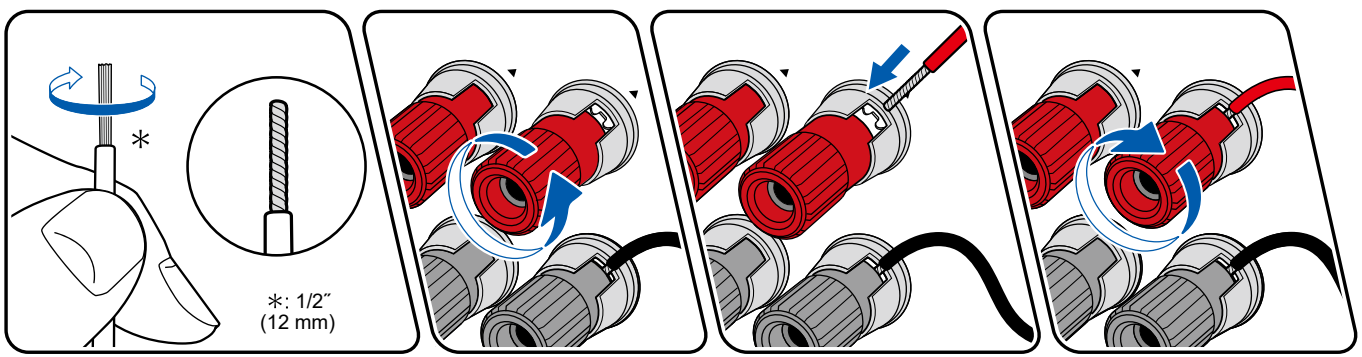
# Speaker Connections and "Speaker Setup" Settings

## Connections

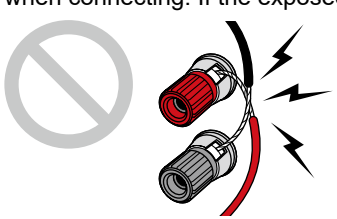
### ■ (Note) Speaker Impedance

Connect speakers with an impedance of 4 Ω to 16 Ω. If any of the speakers to be connected has an impedance of 4 Ω or more and less than 6 Ω, set "Speaker Impedance" to "4ohms" for "Speaker Setup" in the Initial Setup section ( →p158). When setting "Speaker Impedance" from the Setup menu, press ☼ on the remote controller, and set "2. Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Speaker Impedance" ( →p136) to "4ohms".

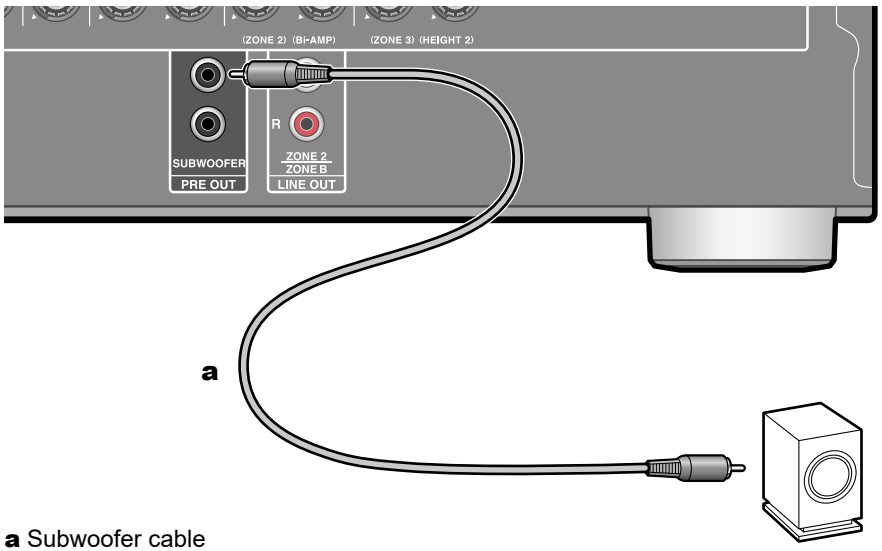
### ■ Connect the Speaker Cables




Make correct connection between the unit's jacks and speaker's jacks (+ side to + side, and - side to - side) for each channel. If the connection is wrong, a bass sound will not be reproduced properly due to reverse phase. Twist the wires exposed from the tip of the speaker cable so that the wires do not stick out of the speaker terminal when connecting. If the exposed wires touch the rear panel, or the + side and – side wires touch each other, a malfunction may occur.



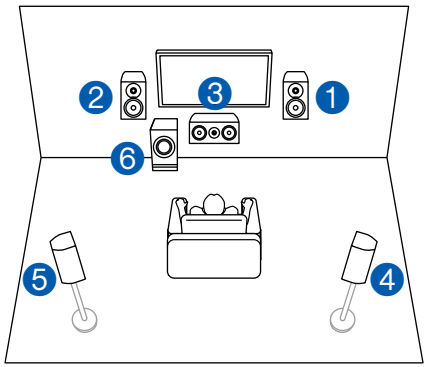
## ■ Connect the Subwoofer

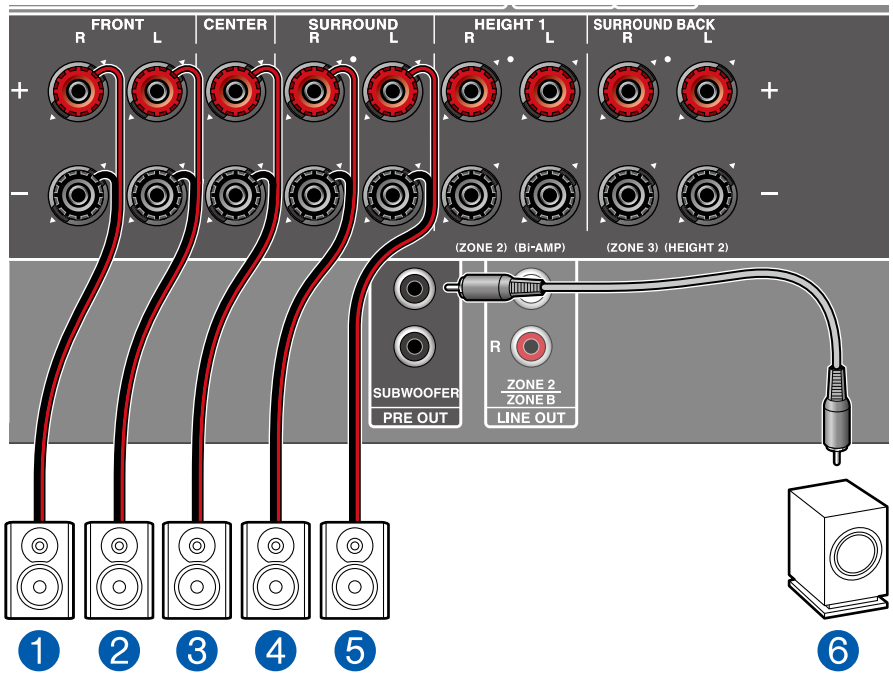



**a** Subwoofer cable

Connect a powered subwoofer with this unit using a subwoofer cable. Up to two powered subwoofers can be connected. The same signal is output from each SUBWOOFER PRE OUT jack.

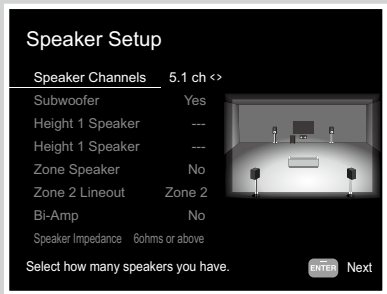
## ■ 5.1 Channel System




This is a basic 5.1 Channel System. For details of the speaker layout, refer to "Speaker Installation" ( →p18).

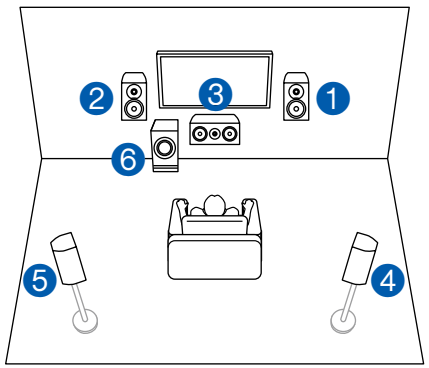
■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup ( →p159)



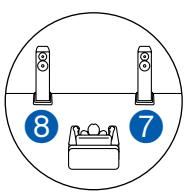

- Speaker Channels: 5.1 ch
- Subwoofer: Yes
- Height 1 Speaker: ---
- Height 2 Speaker: ---
- Zone Speaker: No
- Zone 2 Lineout/(Preout): Set any value ( →p136)
- Bi-Amp: No
- Speaker Impedance: Set any value ( →p36)

## ■ 5.1 Channel System + ZONE SPEAKER

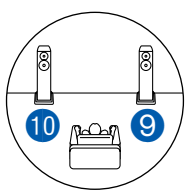
**MAIN ROOM**

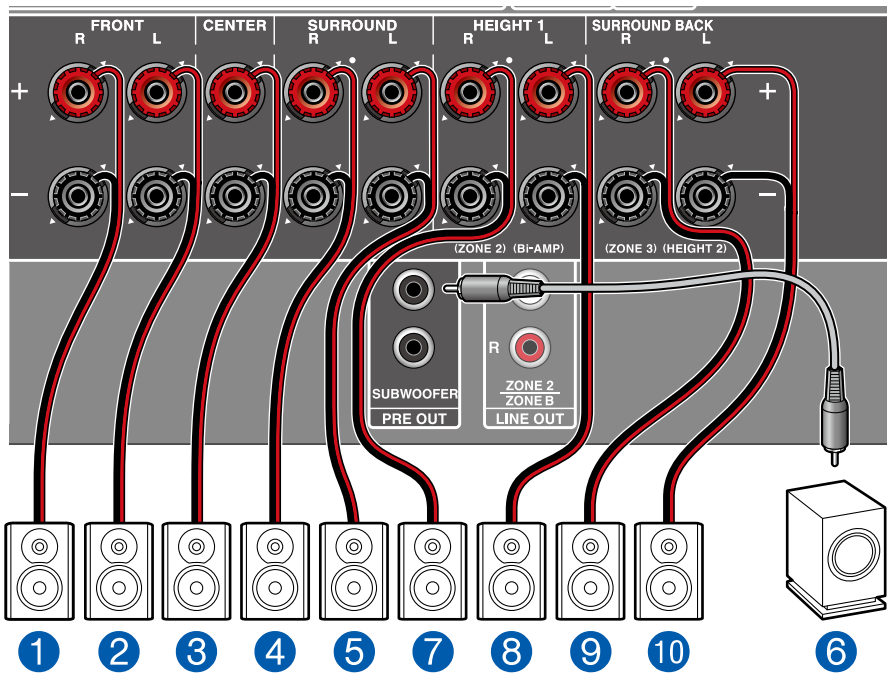



**ZONE 2**




**ZONE 3**

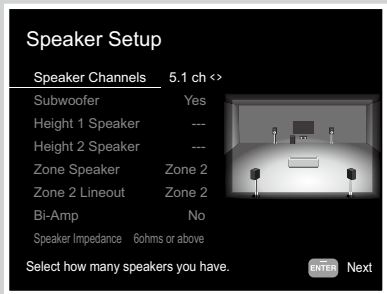



**MAIN ROOM:** This is a basic 5.1 Channel System. For details of the speaker layout, refer to "Speaker Installation" ( →p18).

**ZONE 2/ZONE 3:** You can enjoy 2-ch audio in the separate room (ZONE 2/ZONE 3) while performing 5.1-ch playback in the main room (where this unit is located). The same source can be played back in the main room and ZONE 2/ZONE 3 simultaneously. Also, different sources can be played back in both rooms.
To output audio from an externally connected AV component to ZONE 3, use an analog audio cable for connection. Note that ZONE 3 output is not possible with the connection using a HDMI cable, digital coaxial cable, or digital optical cable.

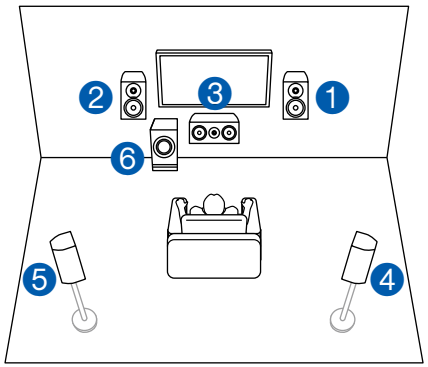
■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup ( →p159)

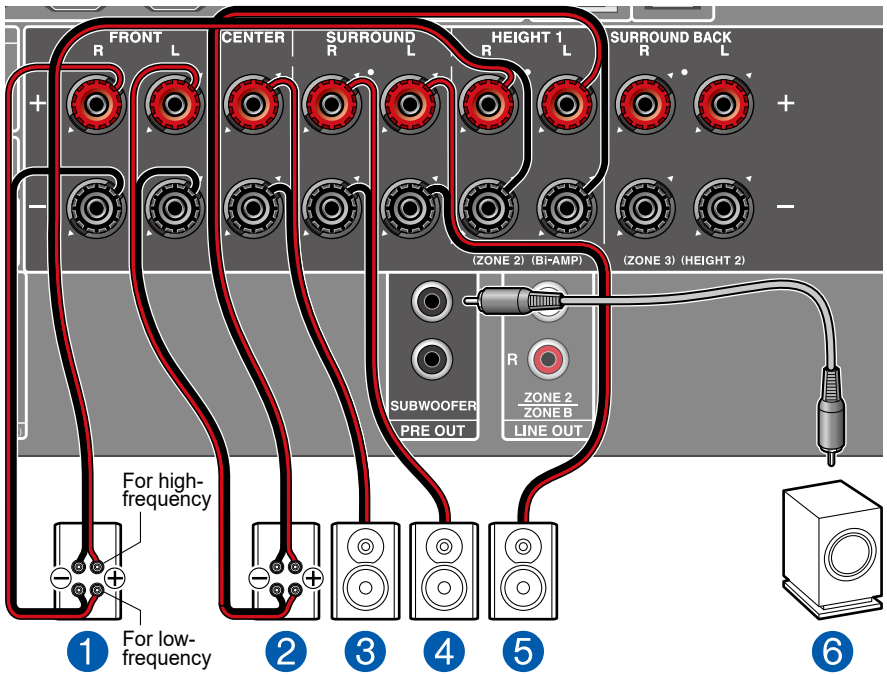



- Speaker Channels: 5.1 ch
- Subwoofer: Yes
- Height 1 Speaker: ---
- Height 2 Speaker: ---
- Zone Speaker: Zone 2 or Zone 2/Zone 3
- Zone 2 Lineout/(Preout): Zone 2
- Bi-Amp: No
- Speaker Impedance: Set any value ( →p36)

**Setup**
When video and audio via HDMI input are output to ZONE 2, set "1. Input/ Output Assign" - "TV Out / OSD" - "Zone 2 HDMI" ( →p131) to "Use" on the Setup menu.

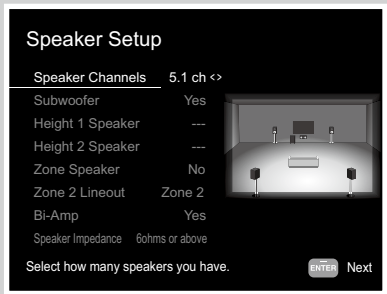
## ■ 5.1 Channel System (Bi-Amping the Speakers)



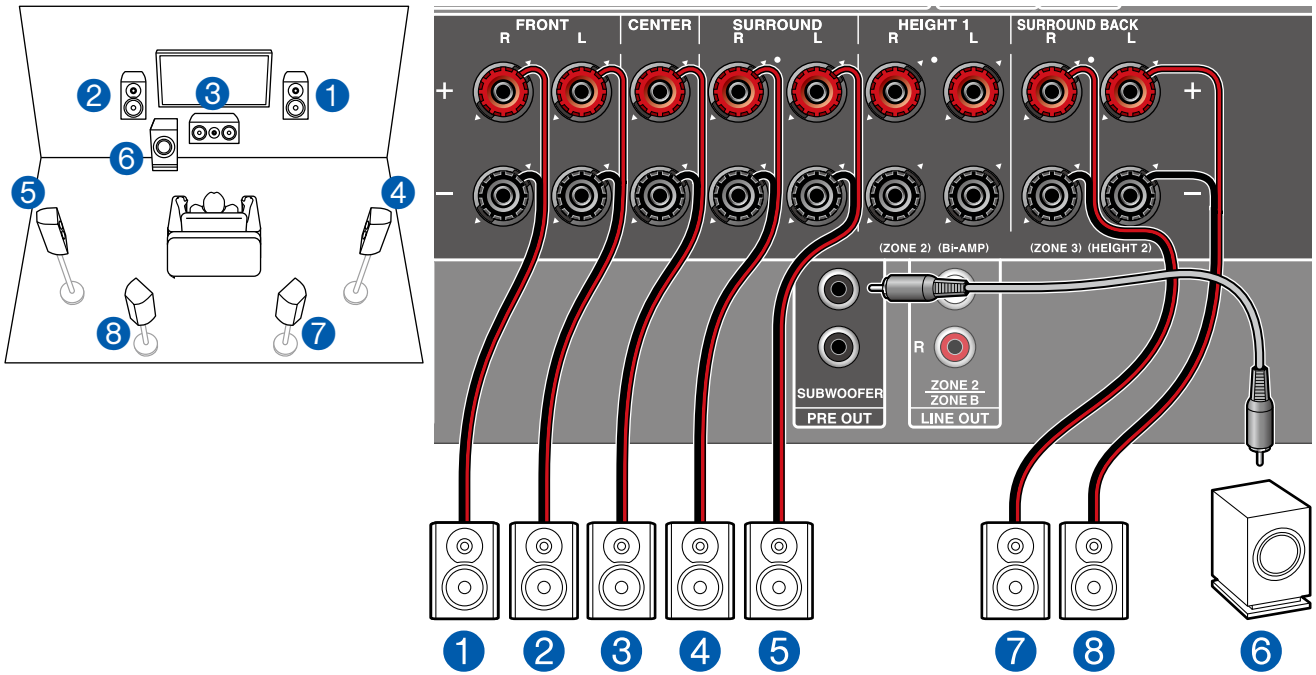

You can configure a 5.1 Channel System ( →p18) by connecting front speakers that support Bi-Amping connection. The Bi-Amping connection can improve the quality of the low and high pitched ranges. Be sure to remove the jumper bar connecting between the woofer jacks and tweeter jacks of the Bi-Amping supported speakers. Refer to the instruction manual of your speakers as well.

■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup ( →p159)



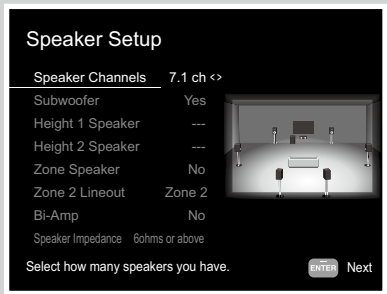

- Speaker Channels: 5.1 ch
- Subwoofer: Yes
- Height 1 Speaker: ---
- Height 2 Speaker: ---
- Zone Speaker: No
- Zone 2 Lineout/(Preout): Set any value ( →p136)
- Bi-Amp: Yes
- Speaker Impedance: Set any value ( →p36)

## ■ 7.1 Channel System




This is a 7.1 Channel System that consists of the basic 5.1 Channel System and added surround back speakers.
For details of the speaker layout, refer to "Speaker Installation" ( →**p19**).

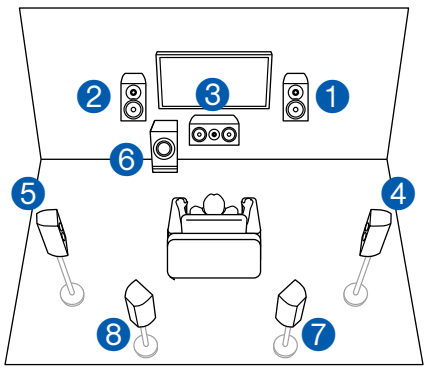
■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup ( →**p159**)



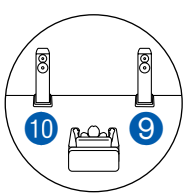

- Speaker Channels: 7.1 ch
- Subwoofer: Yes
- Height 1 Speaker: ---
- Height 2 Speaker: ---
- Zone Speaker: No
- Zone 2 Lineout/(Preout): Set any value ( →**p136**)
- Bi-Amp: No
- Speaker Impedance: Set any value ( →**p36**)

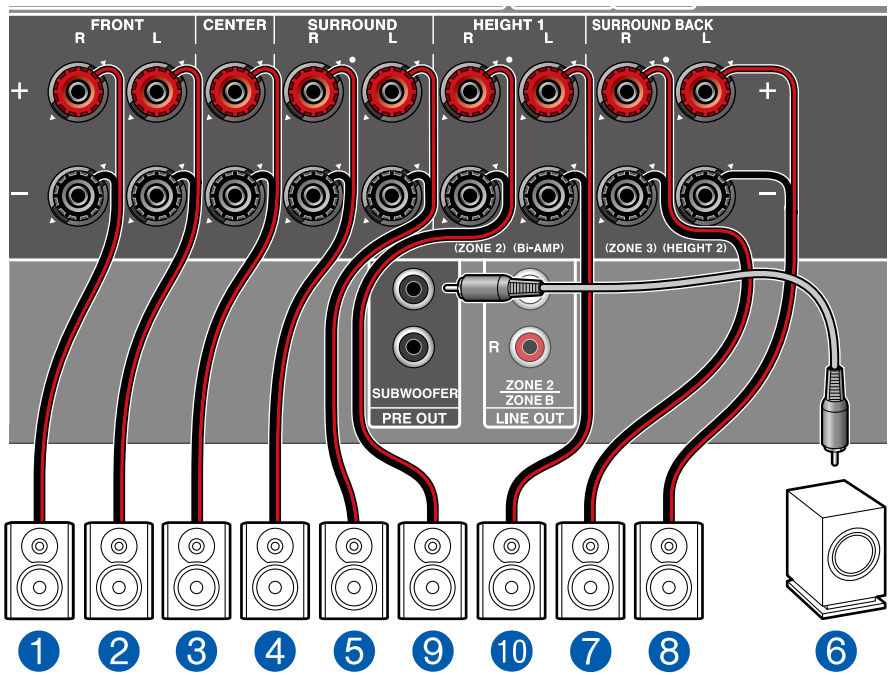
## ■ 7.1 Channel System + ZONE SPEAKER

**MAIN ROOM**




**ZONE 2**

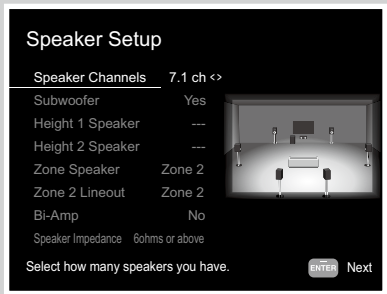



**MAIN ROOM:** This is a 7.1 Channel System that consists of the basic 5.1 Channel System and added surround back speakers. For details of the speaker layout, refer to "Speaker Installation" ( →p19).

**ZONE 2:** You can enjoy 2-ch audio in the separate room (ZONE 2) while performing playback in the main room (where this unit is located). The same source can be played back in the main room and ZONE 2 simultaneously. Also, different sources can be played back in both rooms.

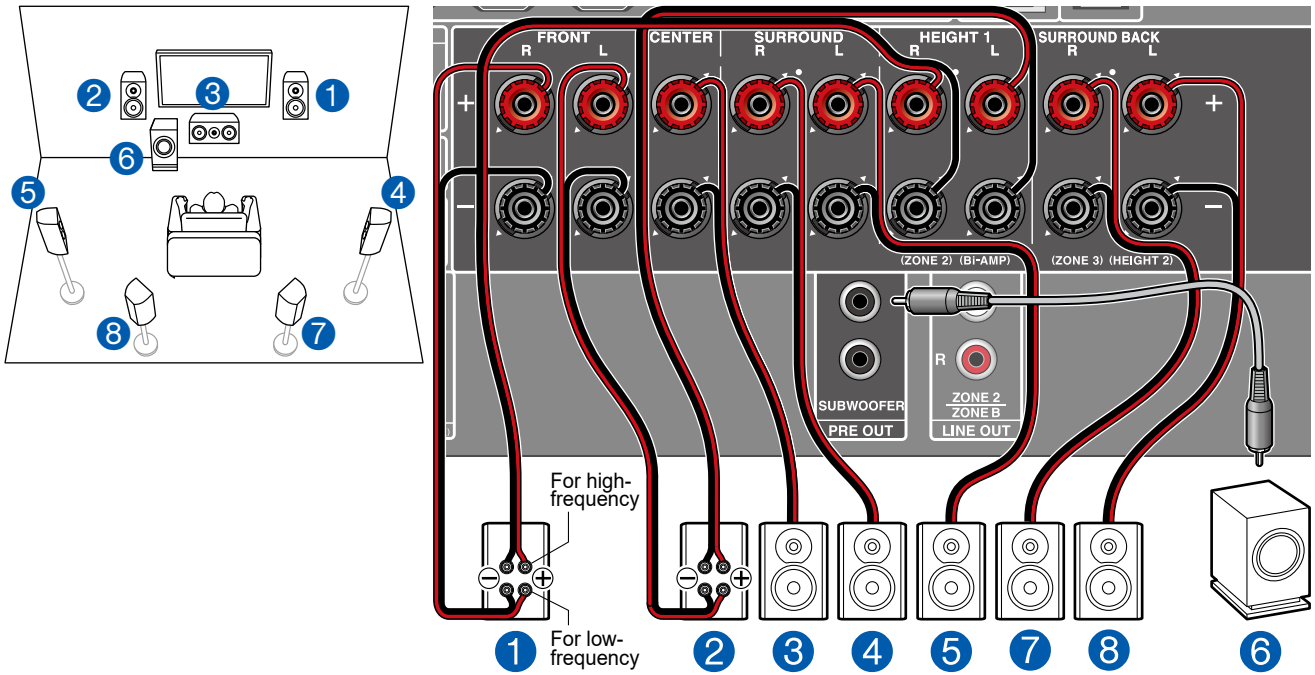
■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup ( →p159)




- Speaker Channels: 7.1 ch
- Subwoofer: Yes
- Height 1 Speaker: ---
- Height 2 Speaker: ---
- Zone Speaker: Zone 2
- Zone 2 Lineout/(Preout): Zone 2
- Bi-Amp: No
- Speaker Impedance: Set any value ( →p36)

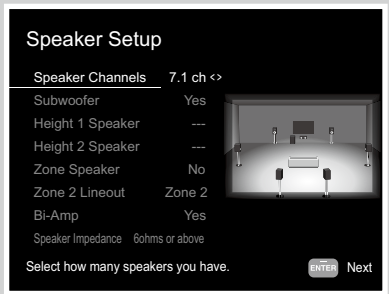
**Setup**
When video and audio via HDMI input are output to ZONE 2, set "1. Input/ Output Assign" - "TV Out / OSD" - "Zone 2 HDMI" ( →p131) to "Use" on the Setup menu.

## ■ 7.1 Channel System (Bi-Amping the Speakers)



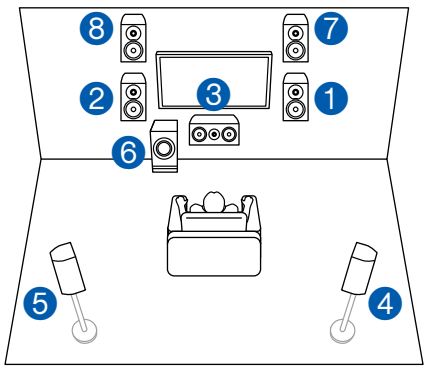

You can configure a 7.1 Channel System ( →p19) by connecting front speakers that support Bi-Amping connection. The Bi-Amping connection can improve the quality of the low and high pitched ranges. Be sure to remove the jumper bar connecting between the woofer jacks and tweeter jacks of the Bi-Amping supported speakers. Refer to the instruction manual of your speakers as well.

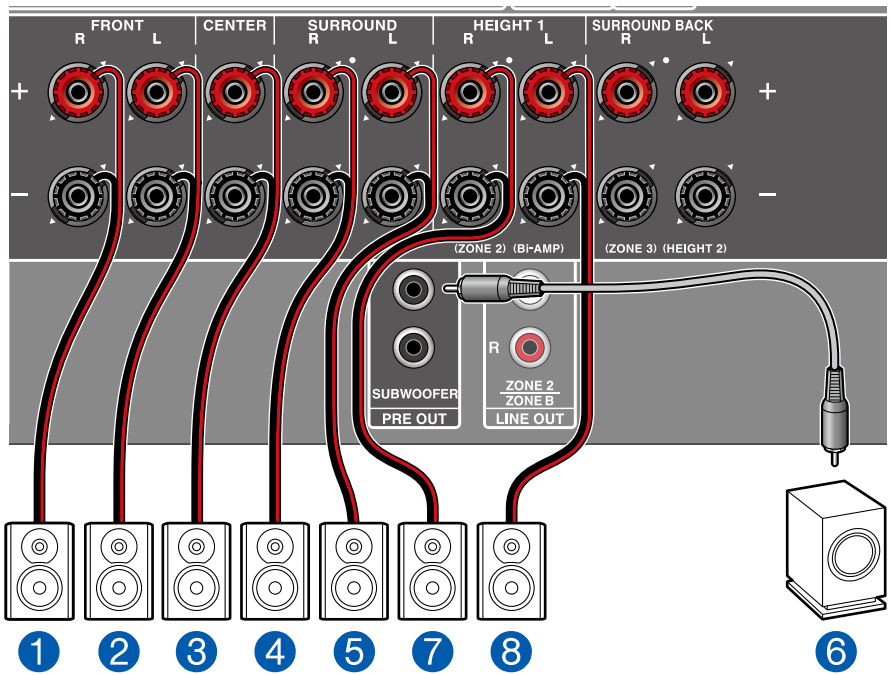
■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup ( →p159)




- Speaker Channels: 7.1 ch
- Subwoofer: Yes
- Height 1 Speaker: ---
- Height 2 Speaker: ---
- Zone Speaker: No
- Zone 2 Lineout/(Preout): Set any value ( →p136)
- Bi-Amp: Yes
- Speaker Impedance: Set any value ( →p36)

## ■ 5.1.2 Channel System



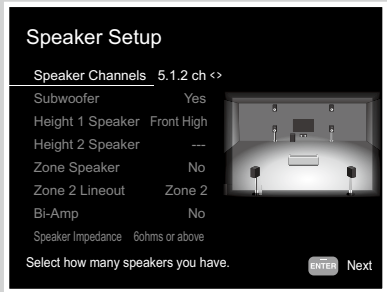

This is a combination of the 5.1 Channel System and front high speakers. A front high speaker is a type of height speaker. You can select only one set of height speakers from the following three types for connection.

❏ Front High Speakers/Rear High Speakers Installation Example ( →p21)

❏ Ceiling Speakers Installation Example ( →p22)

❏ Dolby Enabled Speakers (Dolby Speakers)  Installation Example ( →p23)

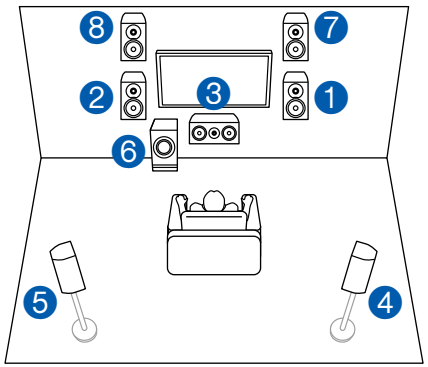
■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup ( →p159)



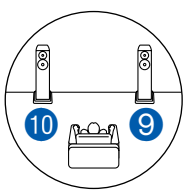

- Speaker Channels: 5.1.2 ch
- Subwoofer: Yes
- Height 1 Speaker: Select the type of height speaker actually installed.
- Height 2 Speaker: ---
- Zone Speaker: No
- Zone 2 Lineout/(Preout): Set any value ( →p136)
- Bi-Amp: No
- Speaker Impedance: Set any value ( →p36)

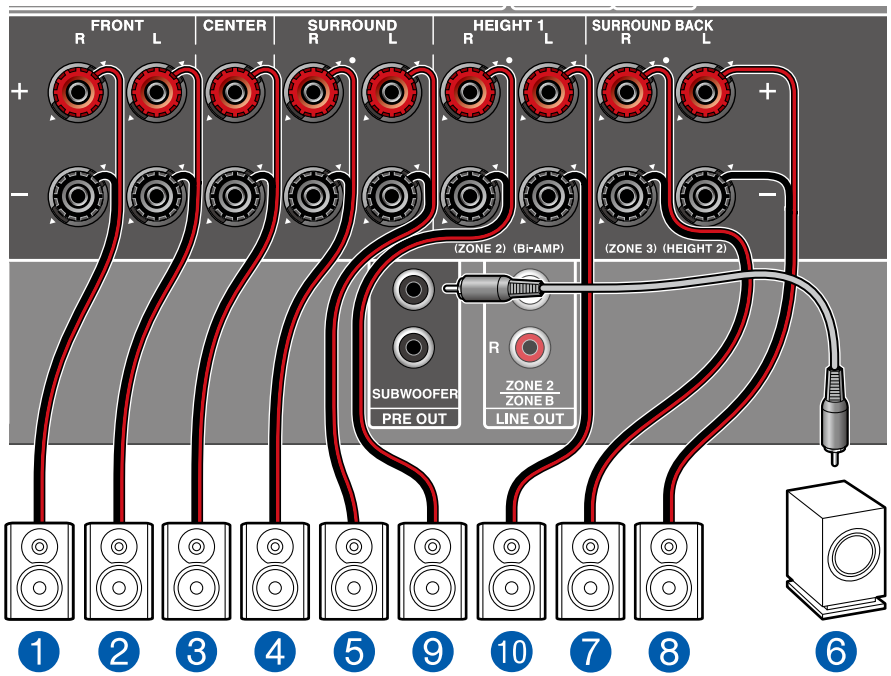
## ■ 5.1.2 Channel System + ZONE SPEAKER

**MAIN ROOM**




**ZONE 2**



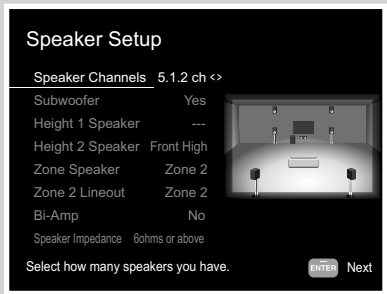




**MAIN ROOM:** This is a combination of the 5.1 Channel System and front high speakers. A front high speaker is a type of height speaker. You can select only one set of height speakers from the following three types for connection.

❏ Front High Speakers/Rear High Speakers Installation Example ( →p21)
❏ Ceiling Speakers Installation Example ( →p22)
❏ Dolby Enabled Speakers (Dolby Speakers) Installation Example ( →p23)

**ZONE 2:** You can enjoy 2-ch audio in the separate room (ZONE 2) while performing playback in the main room (where this unit is located). The same source can be played back in the main room and ZONE 2 simultaneously. Also, different sources can be played back in both rooms.

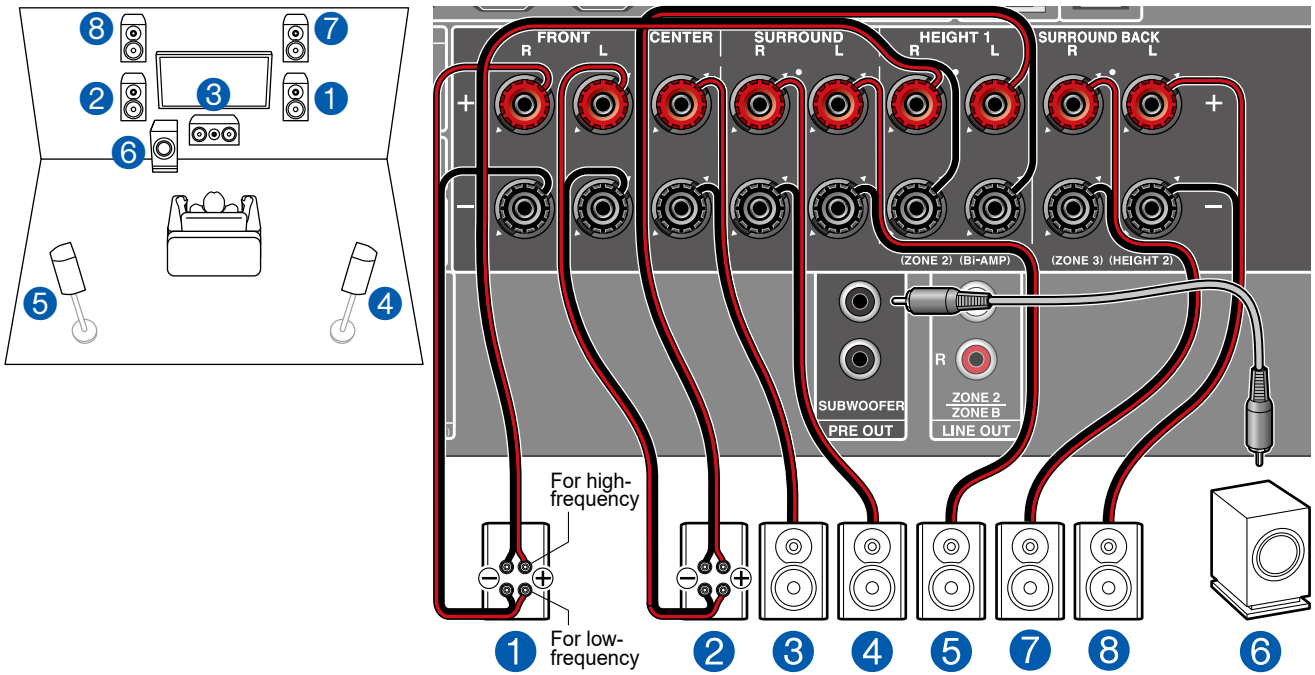
■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup ( →p159)




- Speaker Channels: 5.1.2 ch
- Subwoofer: Yes
- Height 1 Speaker: ---
- Height 2 Speaker: Select the type of height speaker actually installed.
- Zone Speaker: Zone 2
- Zone 2 Lineout/(Preout): Zone 2
- Bi-Amp: No
- Speaker Impedance: Set any value ( →p36)

**Setup**
When video and audio via HDMI input are output to ZONE 2, set "1. Input/ Output Assign" - "TV Out / OSD" - "Zone 2 HDMI" ( →p131) to "Use" on the Setup menu.

## ■ 5.1.2 Channel System (Bi-Amping the Speakers)




This is a combination of the 5.1 Channel System and front high speakers. A front high speaker is a type of height speaker. You can select only one set of height speakers from the following three types for connection.

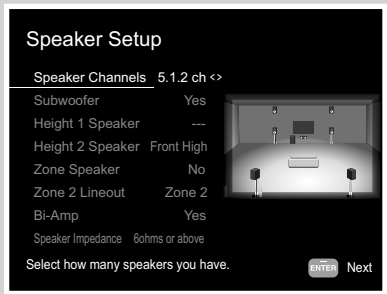
❏ Front High Speakers/Rear High Speakers Installation Example ( →p21)

❏ Ceiling Speakers Installation Example ( →p22)

❏ Dolby Enabled Speakers (Dolby Speakers) Installation Example ( →p23)

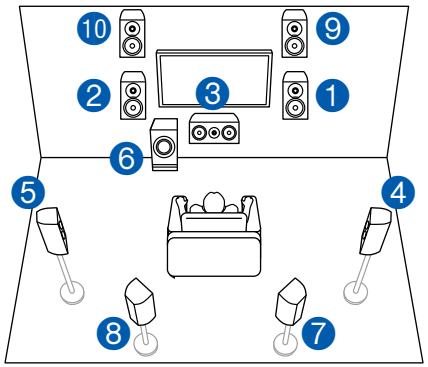
You can configure a 5.1.2 Channel System by connecting front speakers that support Bi-Amping connection. The Bi-Amping connection can improve the quality of the low and high pitched ranges. Be sure to remove the jumper bar connecting between the woofer jacks and tweeter jacks of the Bi-Amping supported speakers. Refer to the instruction manual of your speakers as well.

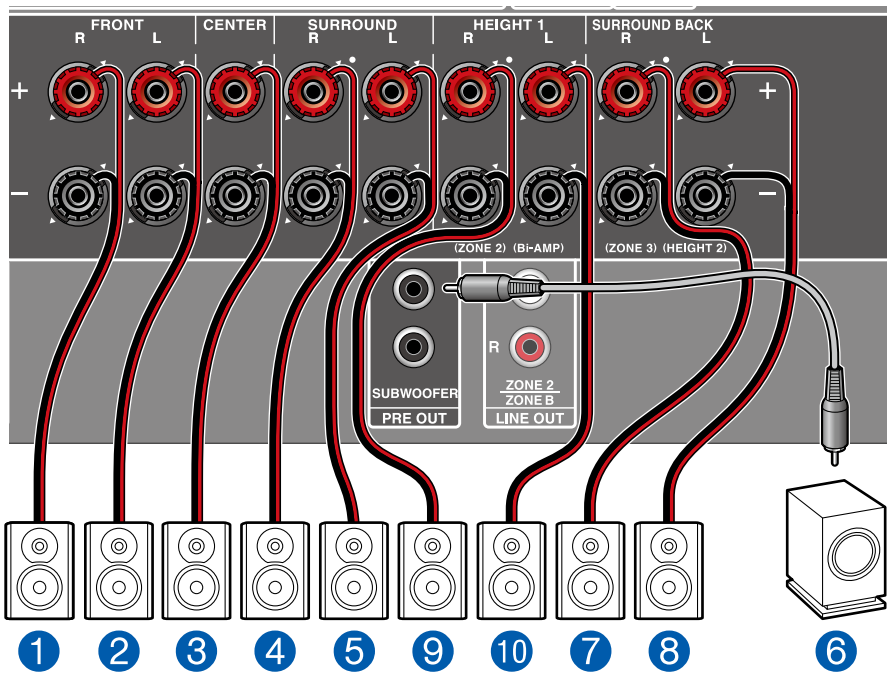
■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup ( →p159)




- Speaker Channels: 5.1.2 ch
- Subwoofer: Yes
- Height 1 Speaker: ---
- Height 2 Speaker: Select the type of height speaker actually installed.
- Zone Speaker: No
- Zone 2 Lineout/(Preout): Set any value ( →p136)
- Bi-Amp: Yes
- Speaker Impedance: Set any value ( →p36)

## ■ 7.1.2 Channel System

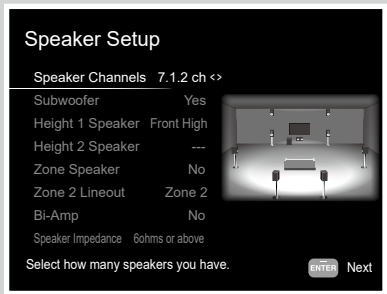



This is a combination of the 7.1 Channel System and front high speakers. A front high speaker is a type of height speaker. You can select only one set of height speakers from the following three types for connection.

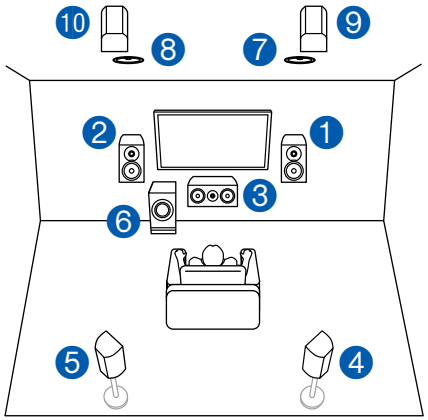
❏ Front High Speakers/Rear High Speakers Installation Example ( →p25)
❏ Ceiling Speakers Installation Example ( →p26)
❏ Dolby Enabled Speakers (Dolby Speakers) Installation Example ( →p27)

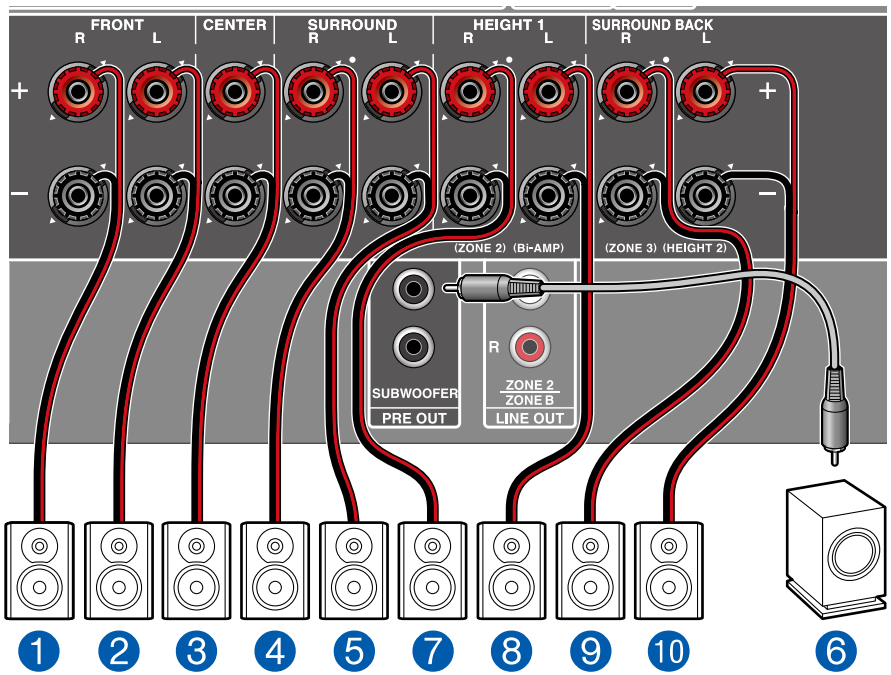
■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup ( →p159)




- Speaker Channels: 7.1.2 ch
- Subwoofer: Yes
- Height 1 Speaker: Select the type of height speaker actually installed.
- Height 2 Speaker: ---
- Zone Speaker: No
- Zone 2 Lineout/(Preout): Set any value ( →p136)
- Bi-Amp: No
- Speaker Impedance: Set any value ( →p36)

## ■ 5.1.4 Channel System

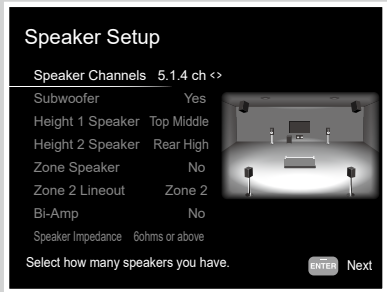



This is an example of combining the top middle speakers at the front and the rear high speakers at the rear to the 5.1 Channel System. The height speakers in front can be selected from following 4 types. The height speakers that can be combined at the rear differ depending on the height speakers used at the front.

❏ Combination example when Top Front Speakers are used at the front ( →p29)
❏ Combination example when Top Middle Speakers are used at the front ( →p31)
❏ Combination example when Front High Speakers are used at the front ( →p32)
❏ Combination example when Dolby Enabled Speakers (Front) are used at the front ( →p34)

■ "Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup ( →p159)




- Speaker Channels: 5.1.4 ch
- Subwoofer: Yes
- Height 1 Speaker: Select the type of height speaker actually installed.
- Height 2 Speaker: Select the type of height speaker actually installed.
- Zone Speaker: No
- Zone 2 Lineout/(Preout): Set any value ( →p136)
- Bi-Amp: No
- Speaker Impedance: Set any value ( →p36)

# Speaker combinations

- Up to two powered subwoofers can be connected in either combination.

| Speaker Channels | FRONT | CENTER | SURROUND | SURROUND BACK | HEIGHT 1 | HEIGHT 2 | Bi-AMP (*1) | ZONE 2 (*1) (ZONE SPEAKER) | ZONE 3 (*1) (ZONE SPEAKER) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2.1 ch | ✔ | | | | | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ |
| 3.1 ch | ✔ | ✔ | | | | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ |
| 4.1 ch | ✔ | | ✔ | | | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ |
| 5.1 ch | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | | | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ |
| 6.1 ch | ✔ | | ✔ | ✔ | | | ✔ | ✔ | |
| 7.1 ch | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | | | ✔ | ✔ | |
| 2.1.2 ch | ✔ | | | | ✔ (*2) (*3) | | ✔ (*3) | ✔ (*2) | |
| 3.1.2 ch | ✔ | ✔ | | | ✔ (*2) (*3) | | ✔ (*3) | ✔ (*2) | |
| 4.1.2 ch | ✔ | | ✔ | | ✔ (*2) (*3) | | ✔ (*3) | ✔ (*2) | |
| 5.1.2 ch | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | | ✔ (*2) (*3) | | ✔ (*3) | ✔ (*2) | |
| 6.1.2 ch | ✔ | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | | | | |
| 7.1.2 ch | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | | | | |
| 4.1.4 ch | ✔ | | ✔ | | ✔ | ✔ | | | |
| 5.1.4 ch | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | | ✔ | ✔ | | | |

(*1) The Bi-AMP and ZONE speakers cannot be used simultaneously.
(*2) When using the ZONE 2 speakers, it is necessary to connect the height speakers to the SURROUND BACK terminal.
(*3) When using the Bi-AMP speakers, it is necessary to connect the Bi-AMP speakers to the HEIGHT 1 terminals, and the height speaker to the SURROUND BACK terminals.

**About the HEIGHT 1/HEIGHT 2**
When connecting 2 sets of the height speakers, the combination of the height speakers that can be selected is as follows.
– Height 1 Speaker: Top Middle, Height 2 Speaker: Rear High
– Height 1 Speaker: Front High; Height 2 Speaker: One of Rear High/Top Middle/Top Rear/Dolby Enabled Speaker (Surround)
– Height 1 Speaker: Top Front or Dolby Enabled Speaker (Front), Height 2 Speaker: One of Rear High/Top Rear/Dolby Enabled Speaker (Surround)
When only 1 set of the height speakers is connected, 1 from the height speakers types can be selected.

## Connecting the TV

Connect this unit between a TV and AV component. Connecting this unit with the TV can output the video and audio signals of the AV component to the TV, or play the audio of the TV on this unit. Connection with the TV differs depending on whether the TV supports the ARC (Audio Return Channel) function or not. The ARC function transmits the audio signals of the TV via an HDMI cable, and plays the audio of the TV on this unit. To check if the TV supports the ARC function, refer to the instruction manual of the TV, etc.

**Does your TV support the ARC function?**

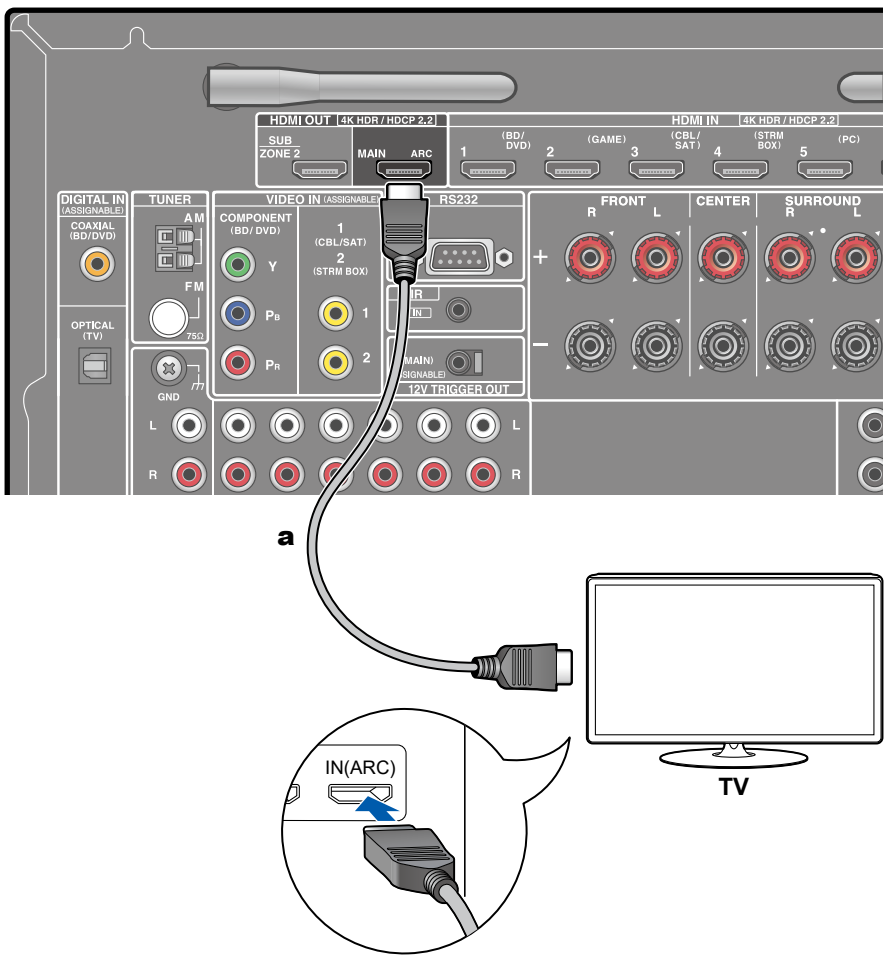
**Yes**

- **To ARC TV ( →p51)**

**No**

- **To Non-ARC TV ( →p52)**

# To ARC TV




**a** HDMI cable

If the TV supports the ARC (Audio Return Channel) function (*), use only the HDMI cable to connect with the TV. Use the ARC-compatible HDMI IN jack of the TV for connection. You connect the HDMI cable to the port labeled OUT on the receiver side.

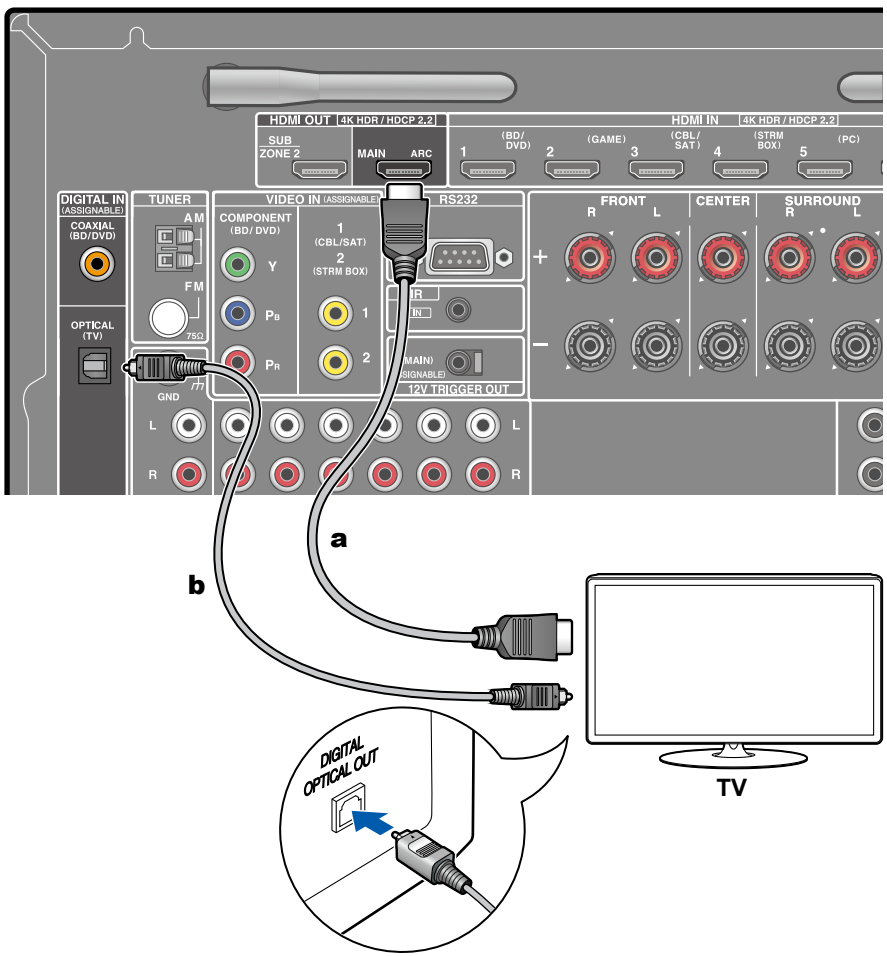
- Another TV or projector can be connected to the HDMI OUT SUB jack. Switch between MAIN and SUB using the HDMI MAIN/SUB button on the remote controller ( →p15) or "Quick Menu" ( →p155). Note that this jack is not ARC-compatible.
- If devices with different resolutions are connected to HDMI OUT MAIN jack and SUB jack, images are output with the lower resolution.
- If a 4K high-quality video is played, use a Premium High Speed HDMI Cable or Premium High Speed HDMI Cable with Ethernet whose package has a "PREMIUM Certified Cable" label.

**Setup**

- Settings are required to use the ARC function. Select "Yes" for "4. ARC Setup" in Initial Setup ( →p158). If "No, Skip" is selected, settings are required in the Setup menu after Initial Setup is completed. Press ☼ on the remote controller, and set "5. Hardware" - "HDMI" - "Audio Return Channel" to "On". ( →p146)
- For detailed settings for TV connection, CEC function and audio output, refer to the instruction manual of the TV.

(*) ARC function: Transmits the audio signals of the TV via an HDMI cable, and plays the audio of the TV on this unit. Connection to an ARC-compatible TV is complete with one HDMI cable. To check if the TV supports the ARC function, refer to the instruction manual of the TV, etc.

## To Non-ARC TV




**a** HDMI cable, **b** Digital optical cable

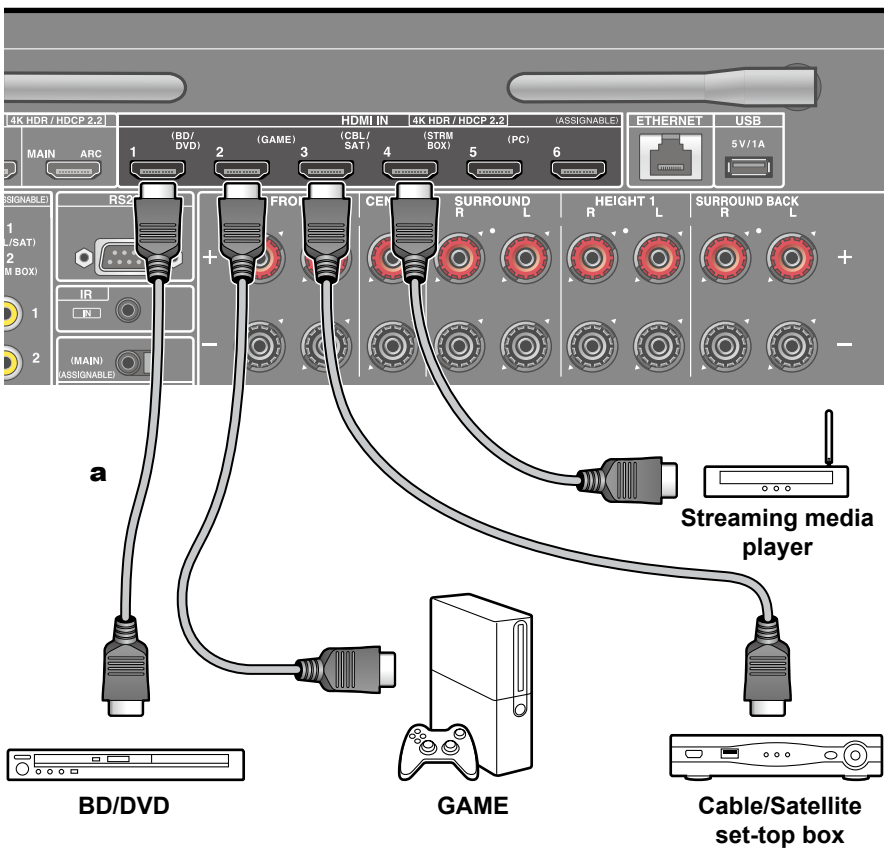
If the TV does not support the ARC (Audio Return Channel) function (*), connect an HDMI cable and digital optical cable. If the TV does not have a DIGITAL OPTICAL OUT jack, you can use an analog audio cable to connect with the AUDIO IN TV jack.

- If you use a cable set-top box, etc. connected to the input jack of this unit to watch TV (without using a TV's built-in tuner), connection with a digital optical cable or analog audio cable is not required.
- Another TV or projector can be connected to the HDMI OUT SUB jack. Switch between MAIN and SUB using the HDMI MAIN/SUB button on the remote controller ( →p15) or "Quick Menu" ( →p155). Note that this jack is not ARC-compatible.
- If devices with different resolutions are connected to HDMI OUT MAIN jack and SUB jack, images are output with the lower resolution.
- If a 4K high-quality video is played, use a Premium High Speed HDMI Cable or Premium High Speed HDMI Cable with Ethernet whose package has a "PREMIUM Certified Cable" label.

(*) ARC function: Transmits the audio signals of the TV via an HDMI cable, and plays the audio of the TV on this unit. Connection to an ARC-compatible TV is complete with one HDMI cable. To check if the TV supports the ARC function, refer to the instruction manual of the TV, etc.

# Connecting Playback Devices

## Connecting an AV Component with HDMI Jack Mounted




**a** HDMI cable

This is a connection example of an AV component equipped with an HDMI jack. When connecting with an AV component that conforms to the CEC (Consumer Electronics Control) standard, you can use the HDMI CEC function (*) that enables linking with input selectors, etc. and the HDMI Standby Through function that can transmit video and audio signals of the AV component to the TV even if this unit is in standby mode.

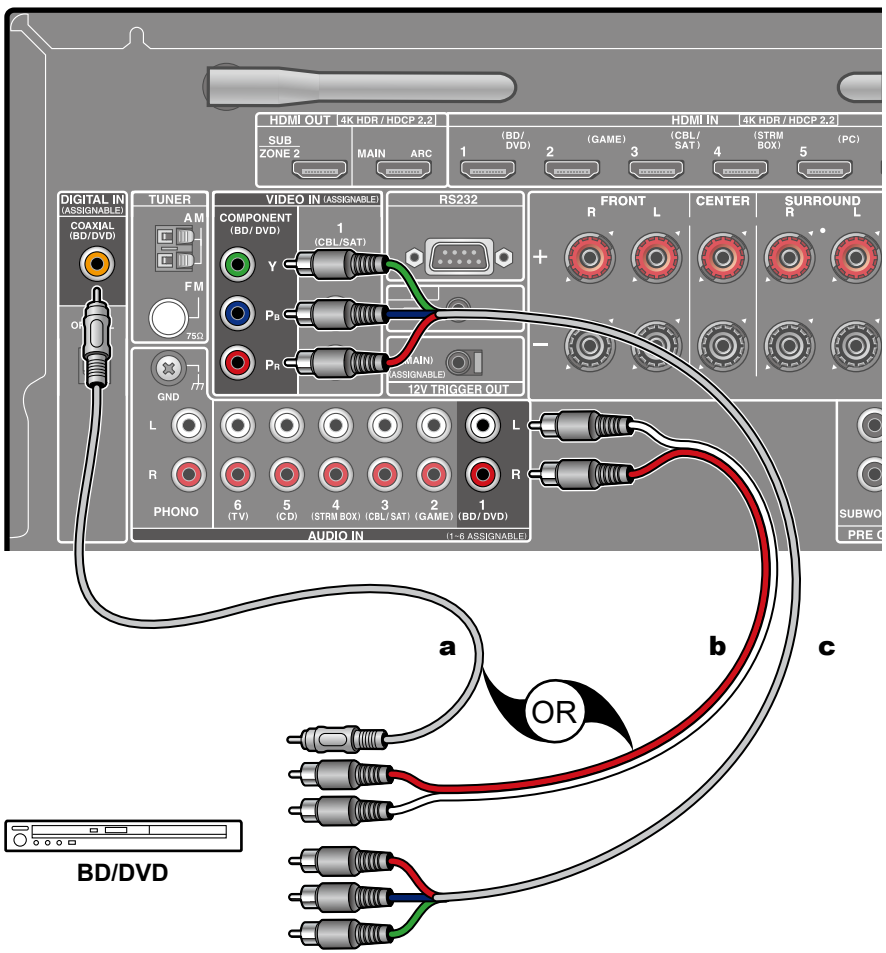
- If a 4K high-quality video is played, use a Premium High Speed HDMI Cable or Premium High Speed HDMI Cable with Ethernet whose package has a "PREMIUM Certified Cable" label.

**Setup**

- The HDMI CEC function and HDMI Standby Through function are automatically enabled if you select "Yes" for "4. ARC Setup" in Initial Setup ( →p158). If "No, Skip" is selected, settings are required in the Setup menu after Initial Setup is completed. Press ☼ on the remote controller, and select "5. Hardware" - "HDMI" to make the settings. ( →p145)
- To enjoy digital surround sound including Dolby Digital, set the audio output of the connected Blu-ray Disc player etc. to the Bitstream output.

(*) The HDMI CEC function: This function enables various linking operations with CEC-compliant devices, such as switching input selectors interlocking with a CEC-compliant player, switching audio output between TV and this unit or adjusting the volume using the remote controller of a CEC-compliant TV, and automatically switching this unit to standby when the TV is turned off.

# Connecting an AV Component without HDMI Jack Mounted




**a** Digital coaxial cable, **b** Analog audio cable, **c** Component video cable

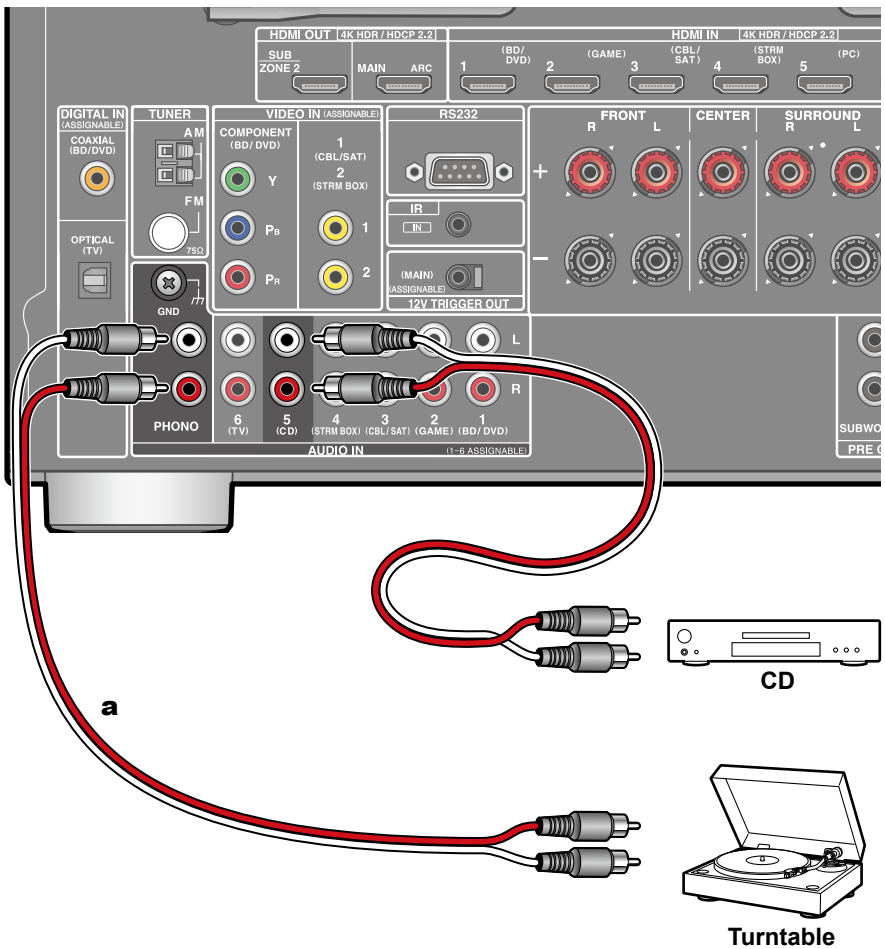
This is a connection example of an AV component unequipped with an HDMI jack. Select cables that match the jacks of the AV component for connection. For example, when video input is connected to the BD/DVD jack, connect the audio input to BD/DVD jack, too. Thus, video input jacks and audio input jacks should have the same name for connection. Note that video signals input to the VIDEO IN jack or the COMPONENT VIDEO IN jack are converted to HDMI video signals, and then output from the HDMI OUT jack.

- To enjoy digital surround playback in formats such as Dolby Digital, you need to make a connection for audio signals with a digital coaxial cable or a digital optical cable.
- According to the illustration, changing the input assignment ( →p133) enables connection to jacks other than the BD/DVD jack.

**Setup**

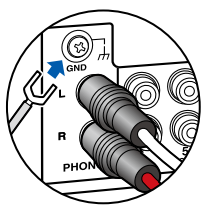
- The COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks are compatible only with 480i or 576i resolution. When connecting to the COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks, set the output resolution of the player to 480i or 576i. If there is no option such as 480i, select interlace. If your player does not support 480i or 576i output, use the VIDEO IN jack.
- To enjoy digital surround sound including Dolby Digital, set the audio output of the connected Blu-ray Disc player etc. to the Bitstream output.

# Connecting an Audio Component




This is a connection example of an audio component. Connect a CD player using an analog audio cable. You can also connect a turntable that has an MM-type cartridge to the PHONO jack.

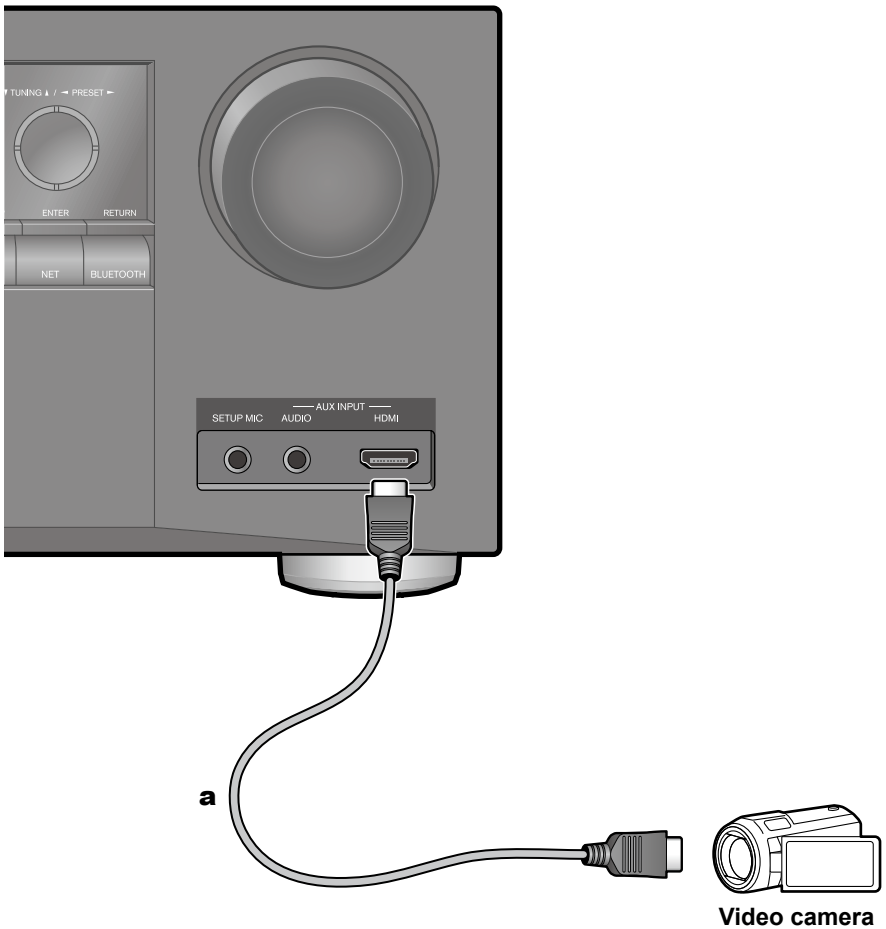
- If the turntable has a built-in phono equalizer, connect it to any of the AUDIO IN jacks other than the PHONO jack. Further, if the turntable uses an MC type cartridge, install a phono equalizer compatible with the MC type cartridge between the unit and the turntable, and then connect it to any of the AUDIO IN jacks other than the PHONO jack.




If the turntable has a ground wire, connect it to the GND terminal of this unit.

**a** Analog audio cable

# Connecting a Video Camera, etc.

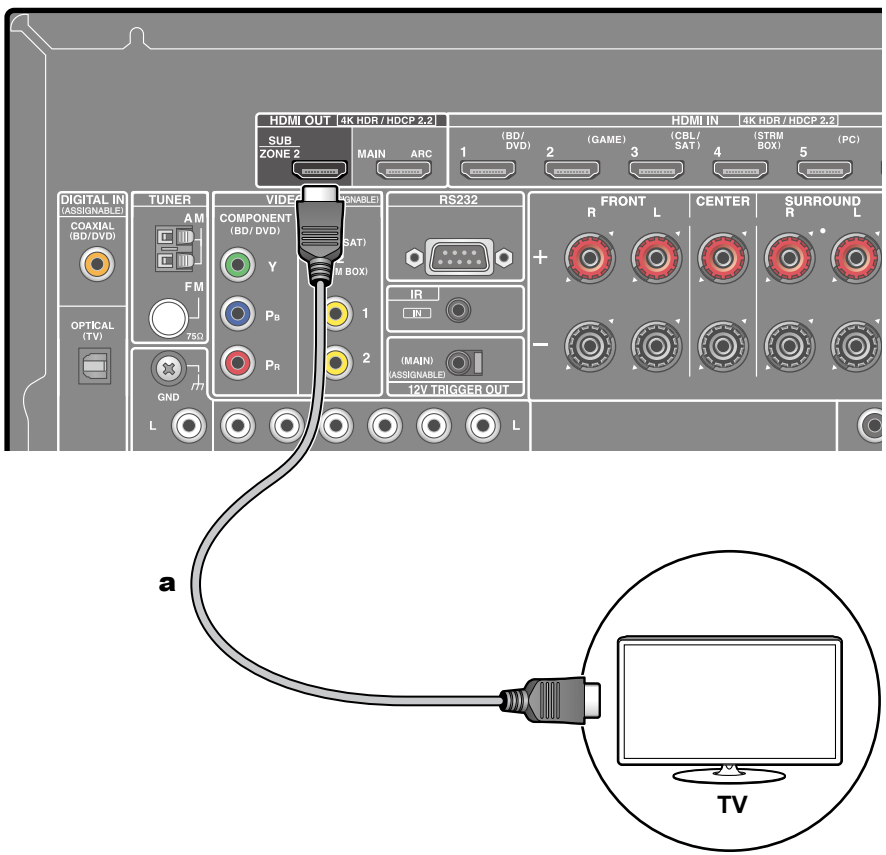



Connect a video camera, etc. to the AUX INPUT AUDIO/HDMI jack on the front panel using an HDMI cable or stereo mini plug cable (ø1/8 ″/3.5 mm).

**a** HDMI cable

# Connecting an AV Component in a Separate Room (Multi-zone Connection)

## Connecting a TV (ZONE 2)




**a** HDMI cable

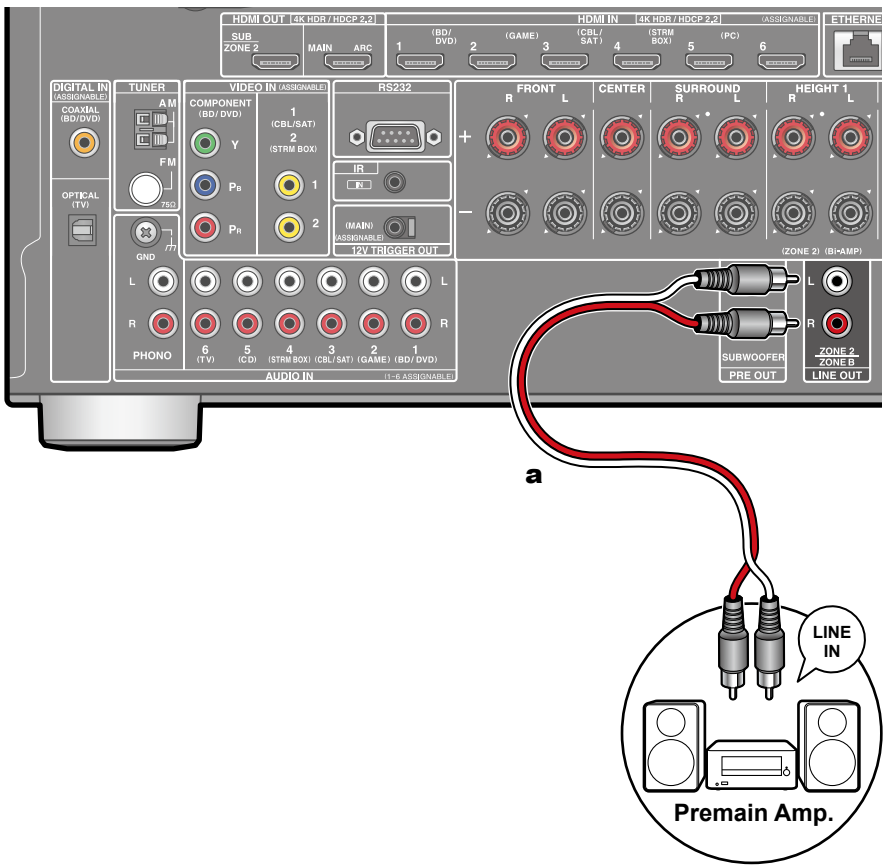
While a disc is played on a Blu-ray Disc player in the main room (where this unit is located), you can play the video and audio of the same Blu-ray Disc player or another AV component on the TV equipped with an HDMI IN jack in a separate room (ZONE 2). The TV in the separate room can play only the video of devices connected to the HDMI IN1 to IN3 jacks of this unit.

- Audio from an externally connected AV component can be output only when the audio is 2ch PCM audio signal. Also, the audio output of the AV component may need to be changed to the PCM output.

**Setup**

- When video and audio via HDMI input are output to ZONE 2, set "1. Input/Output Assign" - "TV Out / OSD" - "Zone 2 HDMI" ( →p131) to "Use" on the Setup menu.

# Connecting a Pre-main Amplifier (ZONE 2)




You can enjoy 2-ch audio in the separate room (ZONE 2) while performing playback in the main room (where this unit is located). Use an analog cable to connect the ZONE 2 LINE OUT jack of this unit and the LINE IN jack of the pre-main amplifier in the separate room. The same source can be played back in the main room and ZONE 2 simultaneously. Also, different sources can be played back in both rooms.

- To output audio from an externally connected AV component to ZONE 2, connect it to any of HDMI IN1 to IN3 jacks. If the AV component is not equipped with an HDMI jack, use a digital coaxial cable, digital optical cable or analog audio cable. Also, the audio from externally connected AV components can be output to ZONE 2 only when the audio is analog or 2ch PCM signal. When the AV component is connected to this unit with a digital coaxial cable or digital optical cable, change the audio output of the AV component to the PCM output.

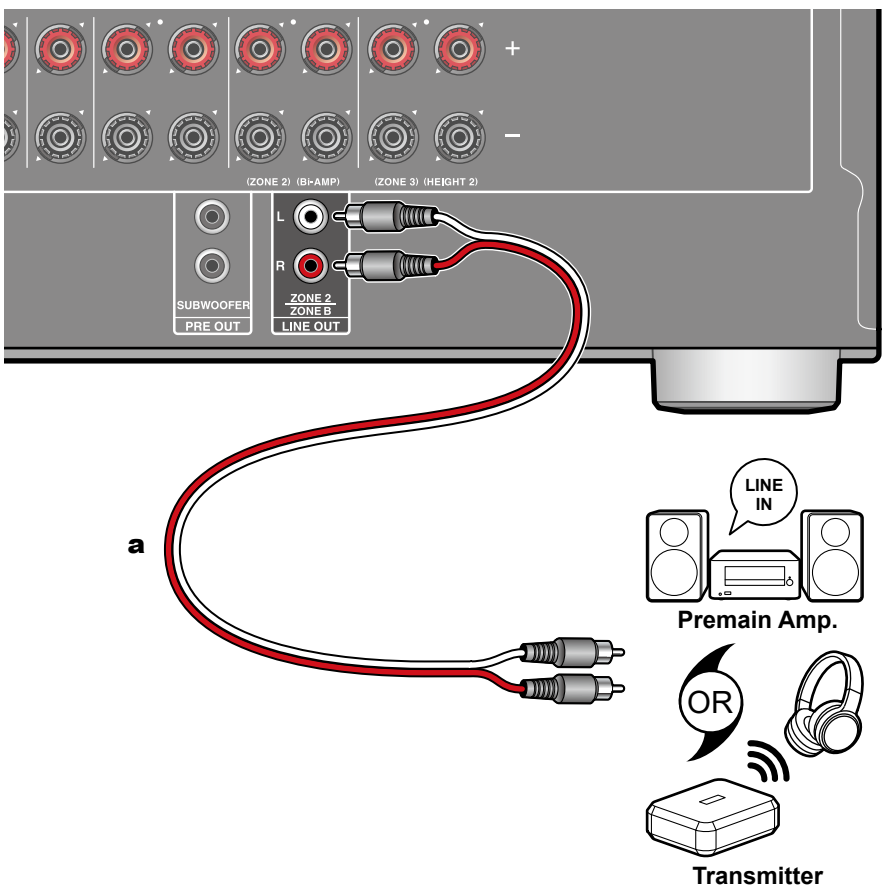
**Setup**

- Settings are required to output audio to ZONE 2. Press ☼ on the remote controller, and set "2. Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Zone 2 Lineout" ( →p136) to "Zone 2".

**a** Analog audio cable

# Connecting ZONE B

## Connecting a Pre-main Amplifier, etc. (ZONE B)



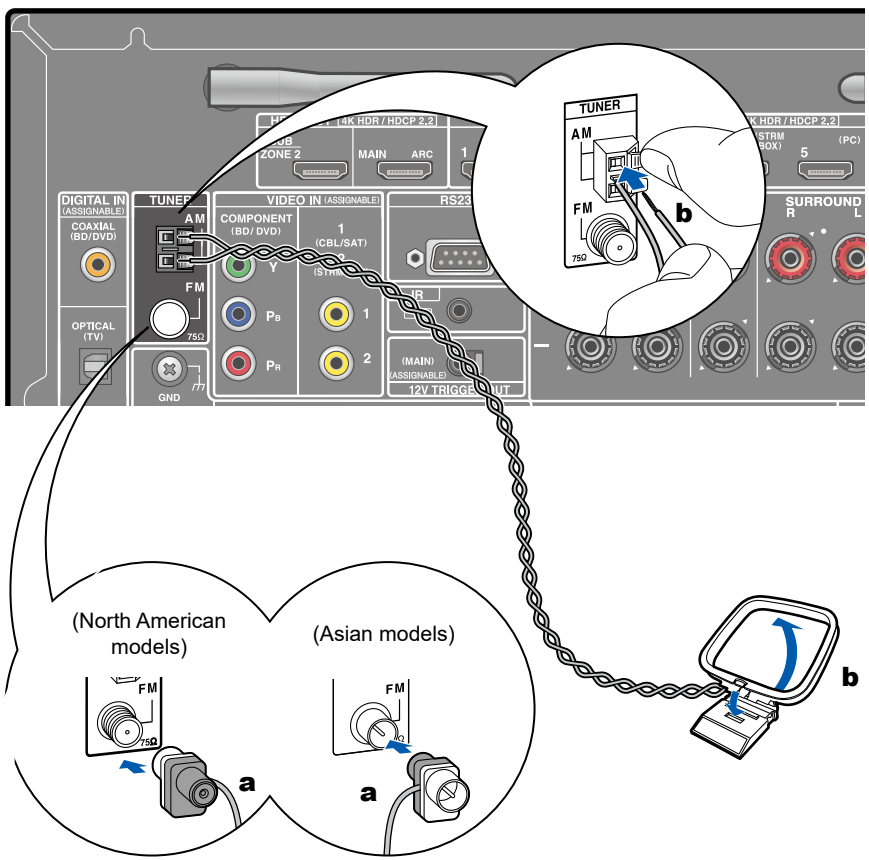

**a** Analog audio cable

While performing playback through speakers (ZONE A) connected to the unit, you can enjoy the audio of the same source at the same time with the pre-main amplifier or the transmitter of the wireless headphones connected to the ZONE B LINE OUT jack. Use an analog audio cable to connect the ZONE B LINE OUT jack of this unit and the LINE IN jack of the pre-main amplifier or the transmitter of the wireless headphones.
Press the Q button on the remote controller for playback, and select the audio output destination on the Quick menu. ( →p97)

**Setup**

- Settings are required to output audio to ZONE B. Press ☼ on the remote controller, and set "2. Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Zone 2 Lineout" ( →p136) to "Zone B".

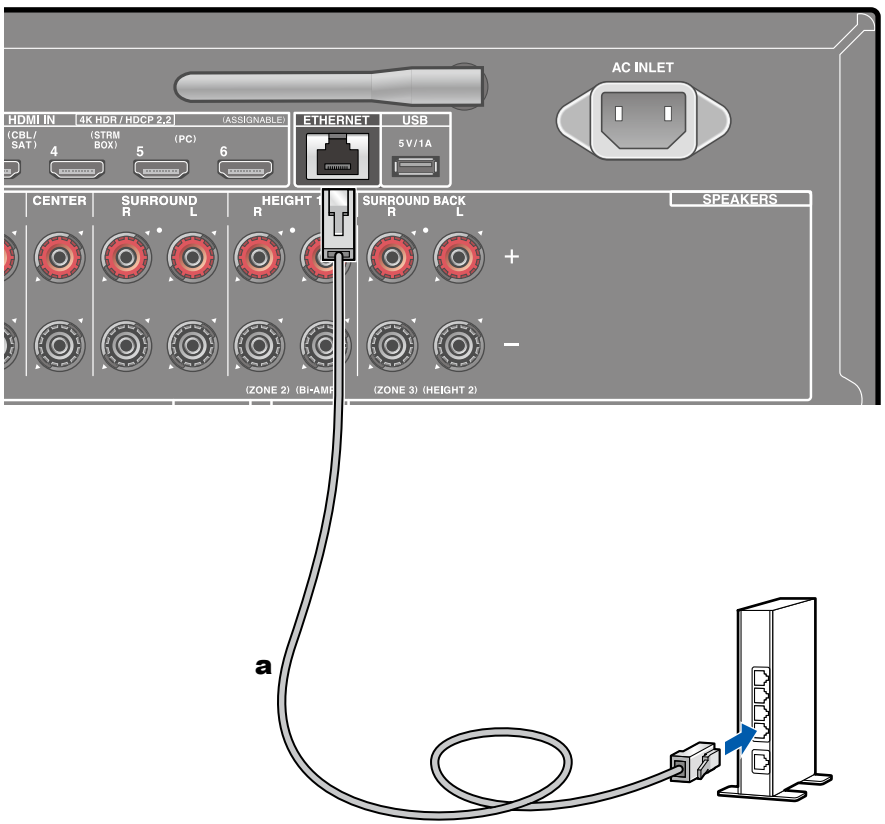
# Connecting Antennas




Connect the antenna to this unit, and set up the antenna at the best position for listening while receiving radio signals. Attach the indoor FM antenna to the wall using push pins or adhesive tape.

**a** Indoor FM antenna, **b** AM loop antenna

# Network Connection

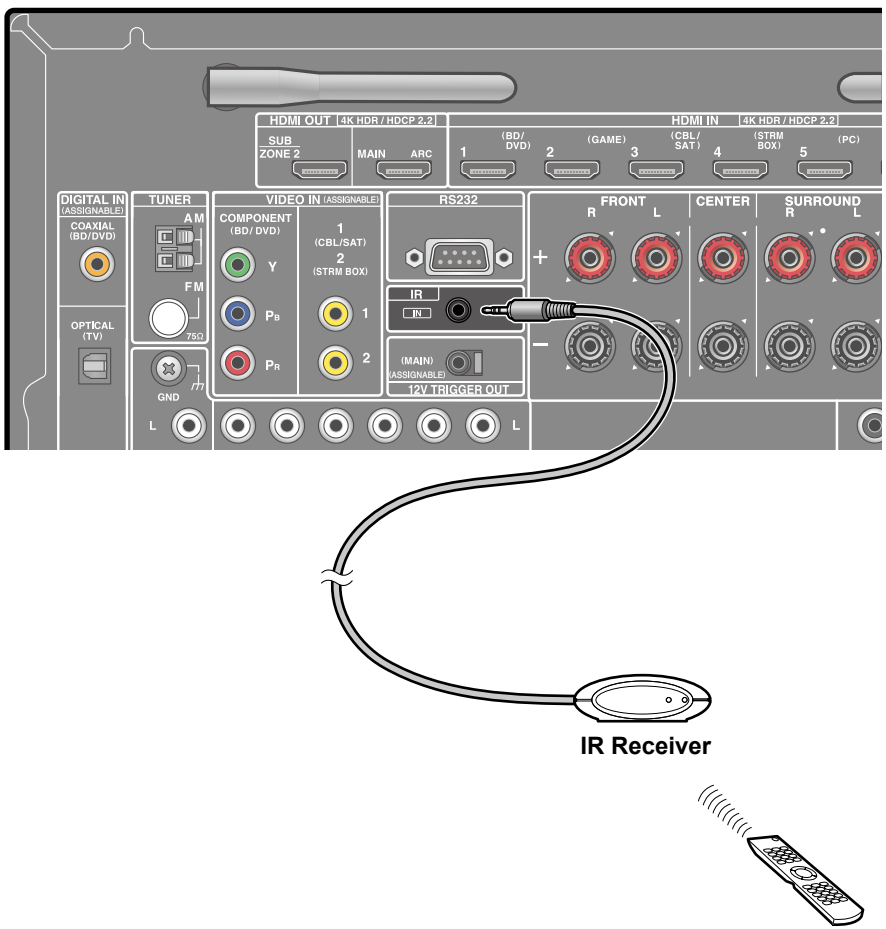



This unit can be connected to the network using a wired LAN or Wi-Fi (wireless LAN). You can enjoy network functions such as Internet radio by network connection. If connection is made by the wired LAN, connect the router and the ETHERNET jack with the LAN cable as shown in the illustration. To connect by Wi-Fi, select "Wireless" for "5. Network Connection" in Initial Setup ( →p160), select your desired setting method, and then follow the on-screen instructions. To configure the setting on the Setup menu after the completion of Initial Setup, press the ☼ button on the remote controller, and select "5. Hardware" - "Network" to make the setting. ( →p146) For the Wi-Fi connection, stand the wireless antenna for use.

**a** LAN cable

# Connecting External Control Devices

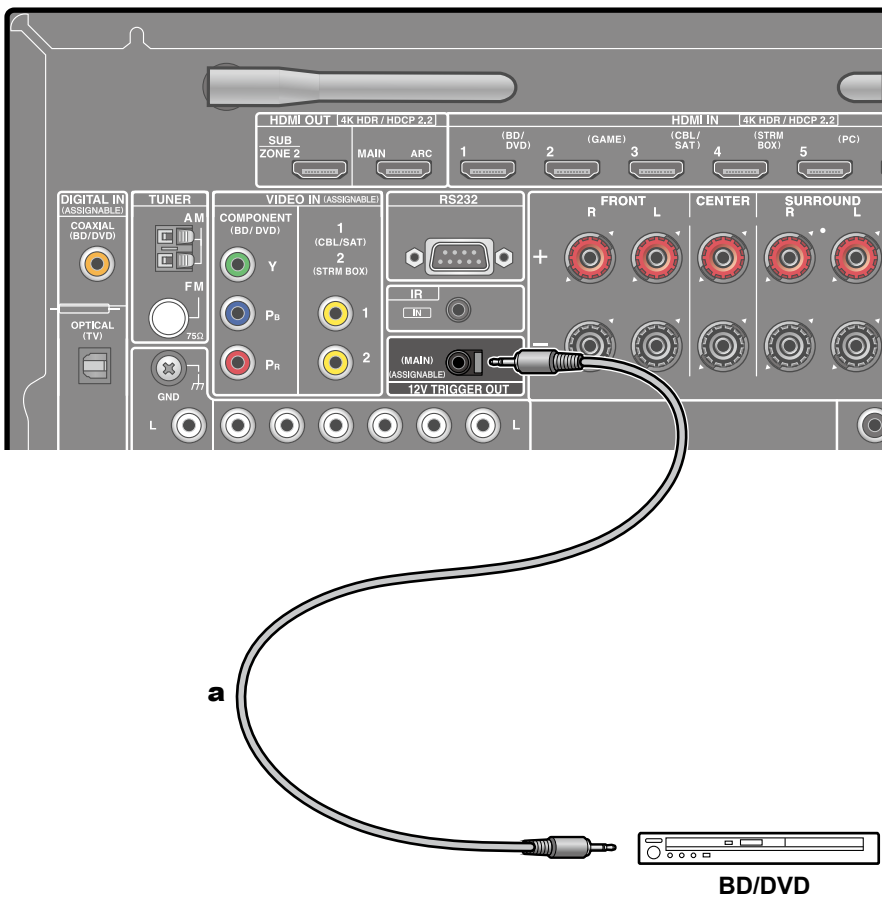
## IR IN port




When connecting a remote control receiver unit consisting of an IR Receiver, etc. to this unit, operation using the remote controller is possible even if the remote control signal is difficult to reach (due to installation in the cabinet, etc.). You can also operate the unit using the remote controller from a separate room such as ZONE 2. For adopting a remote control receiver unit, contact the specialized stores.

- For the type of cable required for connection, refer to the operation manual, etc. of the remote control receiver unit.

# 12V TRIGGER OUT jack

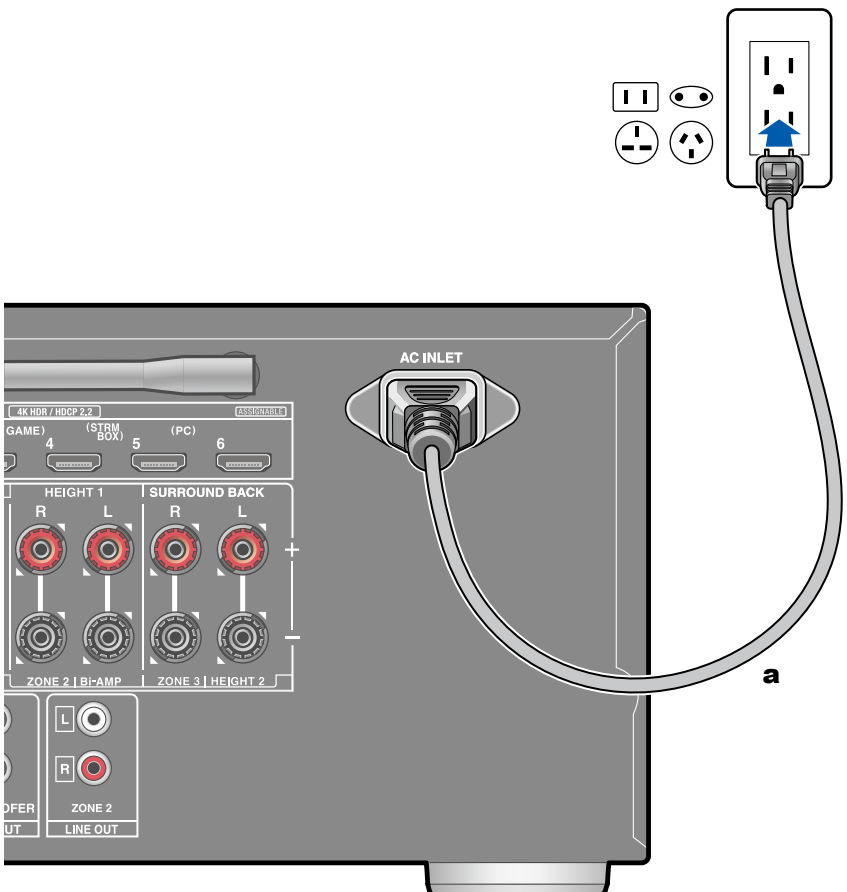



When connecting a device equipped with a TRIGGER IN jack such as a BD/DVD player to this unit, the device can be turned on or set to standby by interlocking the operation on this unit. When any input is selected, this unit outputs a maximum of 12 V/100 mA control signal from the 12V TRIGGER OUT jack, and controls the power link operation of the external device.

- For connection, use a monaural mini plug cable (ø1/8″/3.5 mm) without resistance. Do not use a stereo mini plug cable.

**a** Monaural mini plug cable (ø1/8″/3.5 mm)

## Connecting the Power Cord




Connect the power cord after all the connections are completed.

- This model includes a removable power cord. Be sure to connect the power cord to the AC INLET of the unit first, and then connect it to the outlet. Always disconnect the outlet side first when disconnecting the power cord.

**a** Power cord

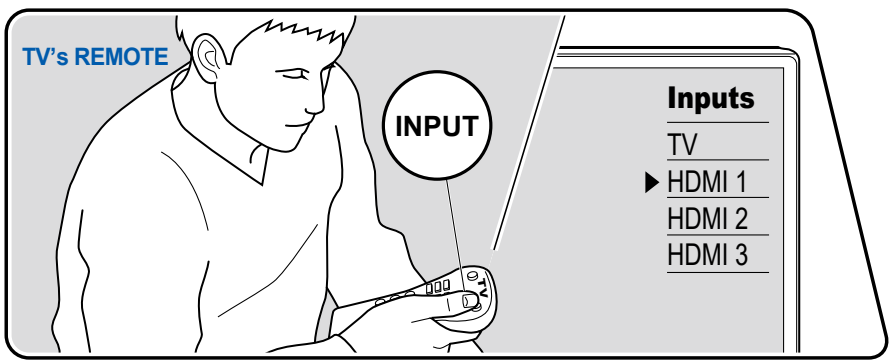
# Playback

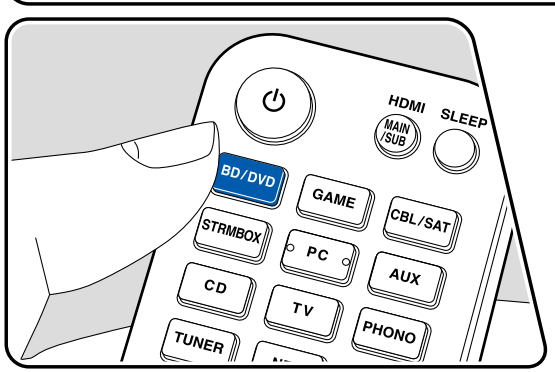

AV Component Playback 66
BLUETOOTH® Playback 67
Internet Radio 68
Spotify 70
AirPlay® 71
DTS Play-Fi® 73
FlareConnect™ 74
USB Storage Device 75
Playing back files on a PC and NAS (Music Server) 78
Play Queue 83
Amazon Music 85
Connecting the Sonos System for Playback 86
Listening To the AM/FM Radio 88
Multi-zone 93
ZONE B Playback 97
Convenience functions 98
Listening Mode 101
Inputting Characters 127

# AV Component Playback

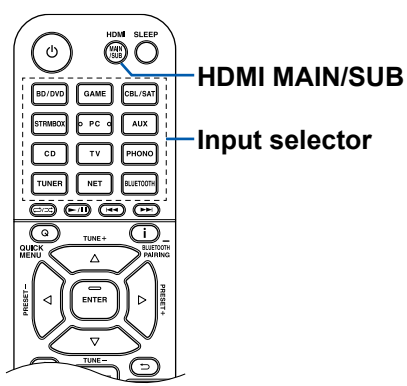
You can play the audio from AV components, such as Blu-ray disc players through this unit.
- When a TV is connected to the HDMI OUT SUB jack, use the HDMI MAIN/SUB button or "Quick Menu" ( →p155) to switch between MAIN and SUB.

## Basic Operations



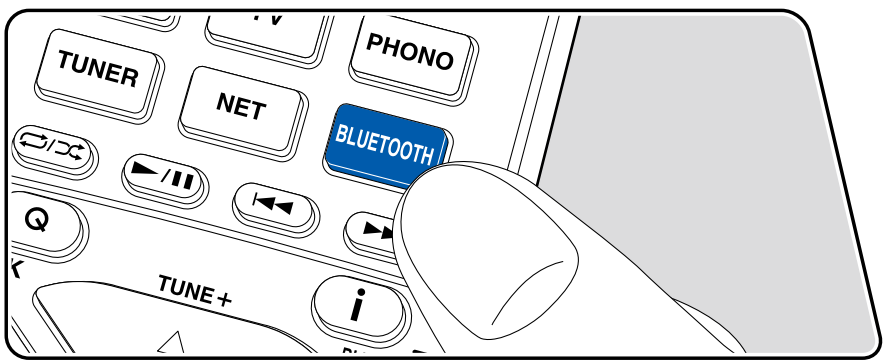

Perform the following procedure when this unit is on.
1. Switch the input on the TV to the input connected to the unit.
2. Press the input selector whose name is the same as that of the jack to which the player is connected.
   For example, press BD/DVD to play the player connected to the BD/DVD jack. Press TV to listen to the sound of the TV. Also, to play a device connected to the AUX INPUT AUDIO/HDMI jack on the front panel, press AUX.
   - When the CEC link function works, the input switches automatically when a CEC compliant TV or player is connected to this unit using HDMI connection.
3. Start play on the AV component.

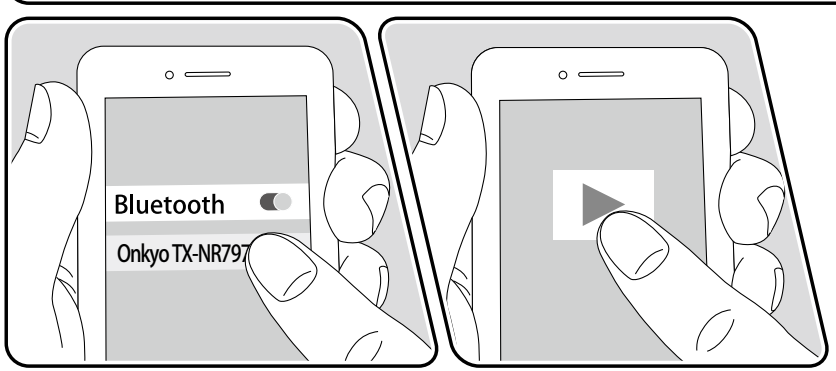


# BLUETOOTH® Playback

You can wirelessly play the audio on a BLUETOOTH-enabled device, such as a smartphone.

## Basic Operations




Perform the following procedure when this unit is on.

### Pairing

1. When you press the BLUETOOTH button, "Now Pairing..." appears on the display, and the pairing mode is enabled.

   Now Pairing...

2. Enable (turn on) the BLUETOOTH function of the BLUETOOTH-enabled device, and then select this unit from among the devices displayed. If a password is requested, enter "0000".
   - This unit is displayed as "Onkyo TX-NR797 XXXXXX". This display can be changed using the Friendly Name function ( →p147) or Onkyo Controller (available on iOS or Android™).
   - To connect another BLUETOOTH-enabled device, press and hold the i button at least 5 seconds, and then perform step 2. This unit can store the pairing information of up to 8 paired devices.
   - The coverage area is approx. 48´/15 m. Note that connection is not always guaranteed with all BLUETOOTH-enabled devices.

### Playing Back

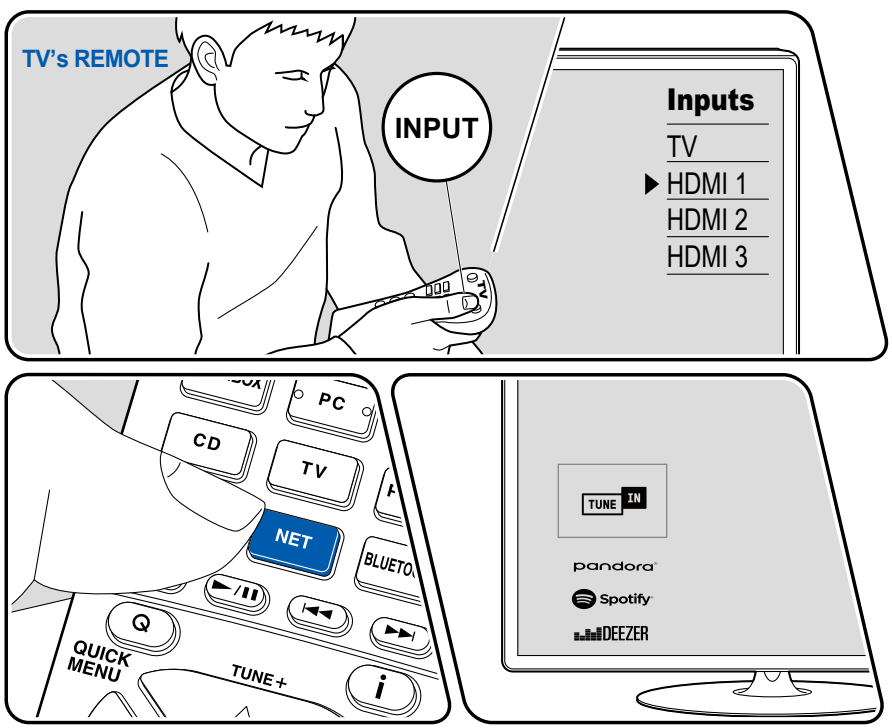
1. Perform the connection procedure on the BLUETOOTH-enabled device.
2. Playing the music file.
   The input on this unit automatically switches to "BLUETOOTH".
   Turn up the volume of the BLUETOOTH-enabled device to an appropriate level.
   - Due to the characteristics of BLUETOOTH wireless technology, the sound produced on this unit may slightly be behind the sound played on the BLUETOOTH-enabled device.

# Internet Radio

By connecting this unit to an Internet-connected network, you can enjoy Internet radio services such as TuneIn Radio.

- To play Internet radio services, the network needs to be connected to the Internet.
- Depending on the Internet radio service, a user registration may be required on your PC beforehand. For details of each service, visit the website of each service.

## Playing Back

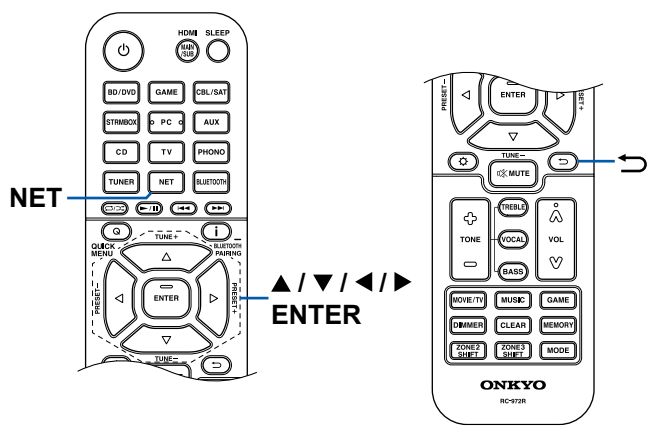



The illustration shows an image.

Perform the following procedure when this unit is on.

1. Switch the input on the TV to the input connected to the unit.
2. Pressing NET will display the Network Functions list screen on the TV.
3. Select your preferred Internet radio service using cursor, and press ENTER to confirm the selection.
4. Following the on-screen instructions, select a radio station and program using cursor, and then press ENTER to play.

- To return to the previous screen, press ⮌.



## Internet Radio Service Menu

You can bookmark specific stations, or delete stations that have been bookmarked. The displayed menu varies according to the service being selected. The menu icon ⋯ is displayed while a station is being played. When only this icon is displayed, pressing ENTER will display the menu on the screen. When multiple icons are displayed, select the ⋯ icon with the cursor, and press ENTER.

## Regarding the TuneIn Radio Account

If you create an account on the TuneIn Radio website (tunein.com), and log in it from this unit, your favorite radio stations or programs you have followed on the website are automatically added to your "My Presets" on this unit. "My Presets" is displayed on the next level in the hierarchical structure of TuneIn Radio. To display a radio station added to "My Presets", you need log into TuneIn Radio from the unit. To log in, select "Login" - "I have a TuneIn account" in the "TuneIn Radio" top list on the unit, and then enter your user name and password.

- If you select "Login" on this unit, a registration code is displayed. By using this code, you can associate the device on the My Page section of the TuneIn Radio website so that you can log in from "Login" - "Login with a registration code" without entering the user name and password.

## Spotify

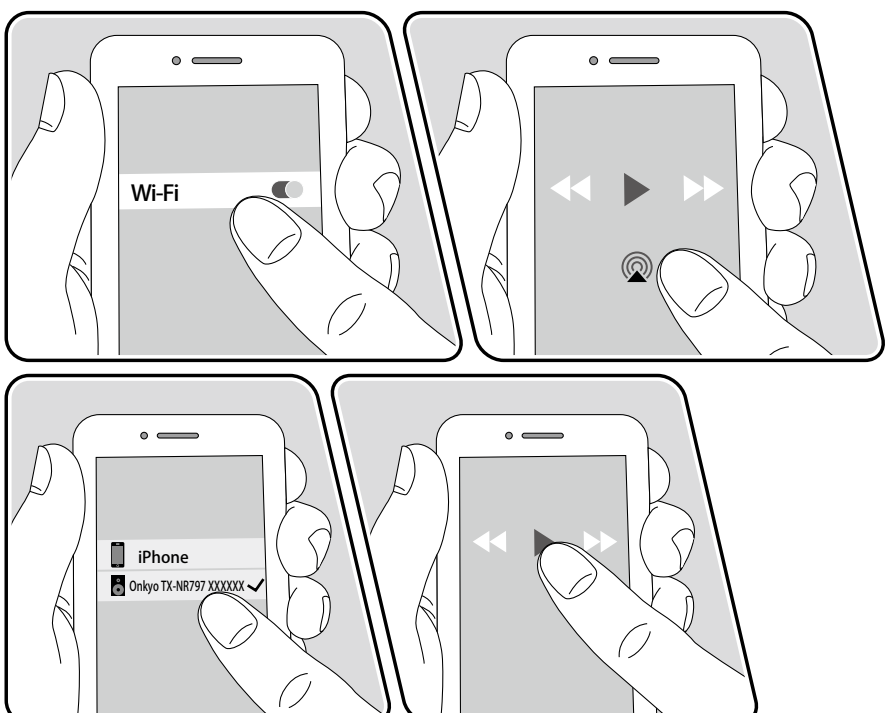
Use your phone, tablet or computer as a remote control for Spotify.
Go to spotify.com/connect to learn how.

# AirPlay®

By connecting this unit to the same network as that of iOS devices such as iPhone®, iPod touch® and iPad®, you can enjoy music files on iOS devices wirelessly.

- Update the OS version on your iOS device to the latest version.
- Depending on the iOS version, operation screens or operation procedures on the iOS device may be different. For details, refer to the operating instructions for the iOS device.

## Playing Back on This Unit



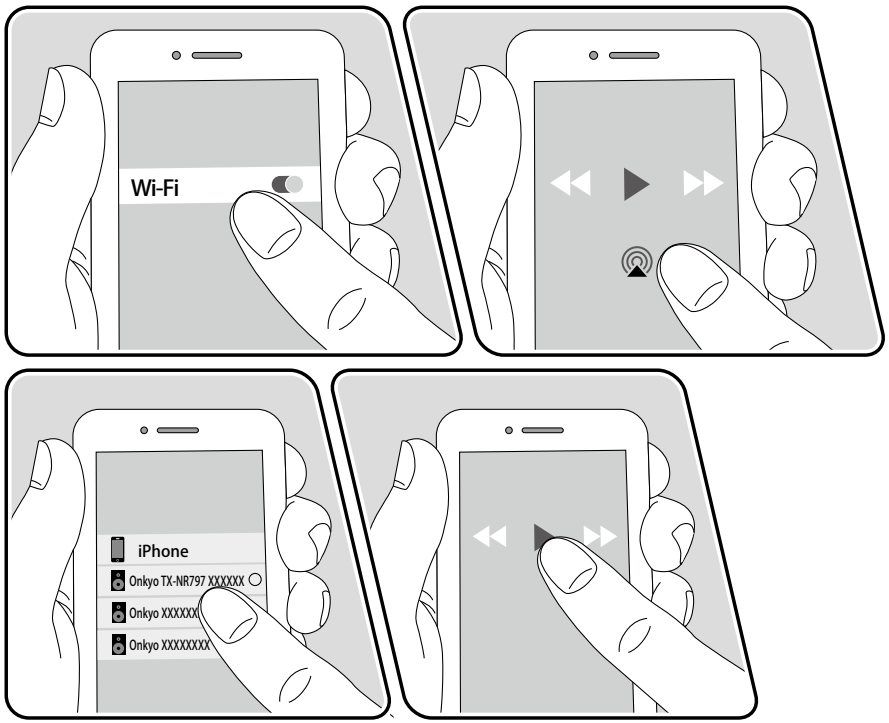

e.g., iOS 10

1. Connect the iOS device to the access point where this unit is connected via network.
2. Tap the AirPlay icon on the play screen of the music play application on the iOS device, and select this unit from the displayed devices.
3. Play the music file on the iOS device.

- When "5. Hardware" - "Power Management" - "Network Standby" is set to "Off" in the Setup menu, turn this unit on manually, and press the NET button on the remote controller. In the factory default setting, the Network Standby function ( →p150) is set to On.
- Due to the characteristics of AirPlay wireless technology, the sound produced on this unit may slightly be behind the sound played on the AirPlay-enabled device.

You can also play the music files on a PC with iTunes (Vere. 10.2 or later) equipped. Confirm that this unit and the PC are connected to the same network beforehand. Then, press NET on this unit. Next, click the AirPlay icon in iTunes, select this unit from the displayed devices, and start play of a music file.

# Playing Back on multiple devices (AirPlay2)




e.g., iOS 11.4

This unit supports AirPlay2. If the version of the iOS device is iOS11.4 or later, you can play the music of the iOS device on this unit and other devices that support AirPlay2.

1. Connect the iOS device to the access point where this unit is connected via network.
2. Tap the AirPlay icon on the play screen of the music play application on the iOS device, and select this unit and AirPlay2-supported devices to play from the displayed devices.
   - AirPlay2-supported devices are displayed with white circle on the right side.
   - Multiple AirPlay2-supported devices can be selected.
   - The volume can be adjusted on individual devices.
3. Play the music file on the iOS device.

- When "5. Hardware" - "Power Management" - "Network Standby" is set to "Off" in the Setup menu, turn this unit on manually, and press the NET button on the remote controller. In the factory default setting, the Network Standby function ( →p150) is set to On.
- Due to the characteristics of AirPlay wireless technology, the sound produced on this unit may slightly be behind the sound played on the AirPlay-enabled device.

You can also play the music files on a PC with iTunes (Vere. 12.8 or later) equipped. Confirm that this unit and the PC are connected to the same network beforehand. Then, press NET on this unit. Next, click the AirPlay icon in iTunes, select this unit and AirPlay2-supported devices to play from the displayed devices, and start play of a music file.

# DTS Play-Fi®

https://play-fi.com/

When connecting this unit to the same network as mobile devices, such as a smartphone and tablet, you can enjoy music played on the mobile device wirelessly. Music from a streaming distribution service or music in the music library on a mobile device can be played. This function also supports a playlist on iTunes. Also, connecting multiple speakers supporting DTS Play-Fi on the same network will enable "Group playback" that plays the same music in separate rooms at home. To enjoy this function, download Onkyo Music Control App (available on iOS or Android™).

## Playing Back

1. Download Onkyo Music Control App using your mobile device.
http://www.onkyo.com/playfi/app_o.html

2. Connect the mobile device to the network where this unit is connected.
3. Starting up Onkyo Music Control App will automatically display compatible devices.
4. Select this device from the compatible devices. Then, a list of applications such as a music streaming distribution service is displayed. Select the content to play, and perform operation according to the on-screen instructions.

- When "5. Hardware" - "Power Management" - "Network Standby" is set to "Off" in the Setup menu, turn this unit on manually, and press the NET button on the remote controller. In the factory default setting, the Network Standby function ( →p150) is set to On.
- For detailed operation and FAQ, visit the following URL.
http://www.onkyo.com/playfi/info_o.html
- To use a music streaming distribution service, user registration may be required.
- This unit does not support the following DTS Play-Fi functions.
  - Spotify
  - Wireless Surround Sound
  - Line In Rebroadcast
  - Internet Radio
  - Critical Listening
  - L/R Stereo Speaker Pairing
- Some of the settings in the "Setup menu" cannot be changed on this unit. To change those settings, cancel the connection of this unit from the application.
- Listening modes cannot be selected during playback.

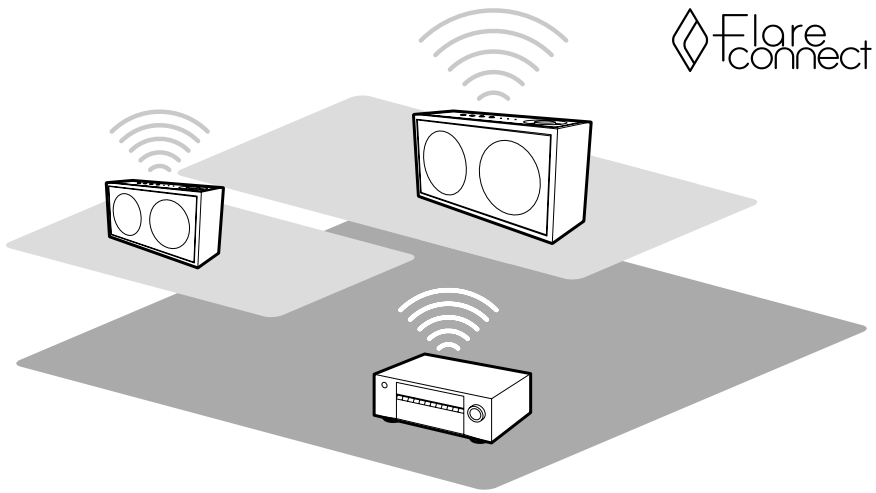
# FlareConnect™

When downloading Onkyo Controller (available on iOS or Android™) to mobile devices, such as a smartphone and tablet, you can enjoy the group playback that plays the same music on multiple audio products supporting the FlareConnect function. You can play audio from external playback devices connected to each product, music from an Internet radio or network audio service such as a music streaming distribution service, and music in the music library on a mobile device.

## Playing Back

1. Connect this unit and other devices supporting FlareConnect to the same network.
2. Download Onkyo Controller from App Store or Google Play™ Store.
3. Connect the mobile device to the network where this unit is connected.
4. Starting up Onkyo Controller will automatically recognize compatible devices.
5. Select the screen of the compatible device to operate, and tap the Group icon at the bottom of the screen.
6. Add a check mark for the audio product on which you want to play the same music.
7. Select the content to play, and operate according to the on-screen instructions.

• When "5. Hardware" - "Power Management" - "Network Standby" is set to "Off" in the Setup menu, turn this unit on manually, and press the NET button on the remote controller. In the factory default setting, the Network Standby function (→p150) is set to On. For other devices, check their respective instruction manuals.

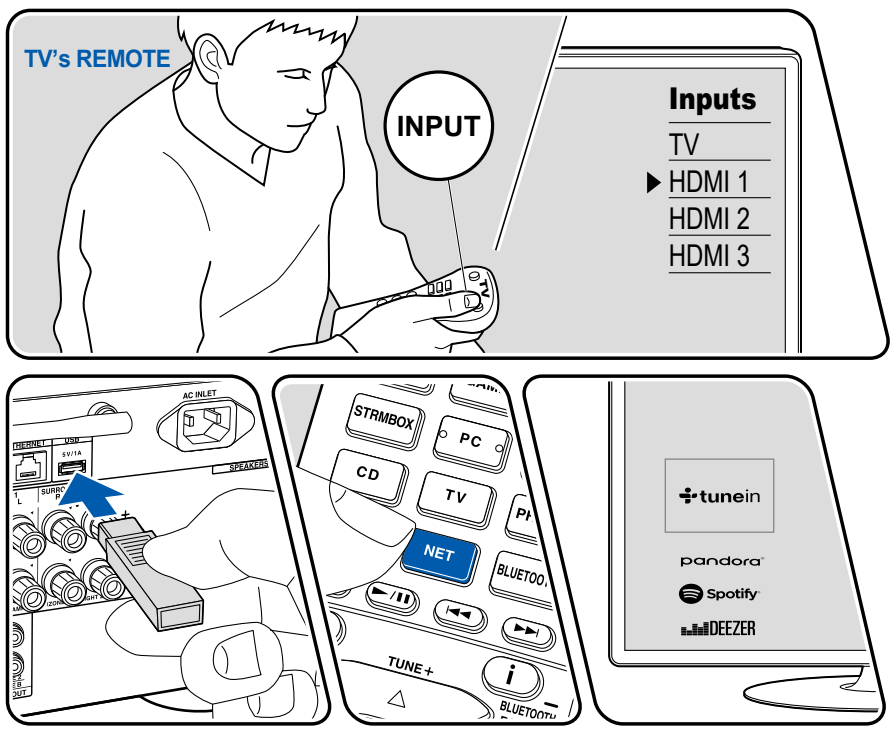


The illustration shows an image.

# USB Storage Device

You can play music files stored on a USB storage device.

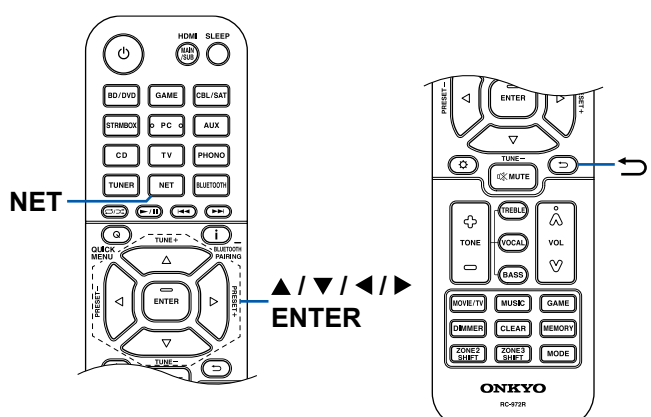
## Basic Operations



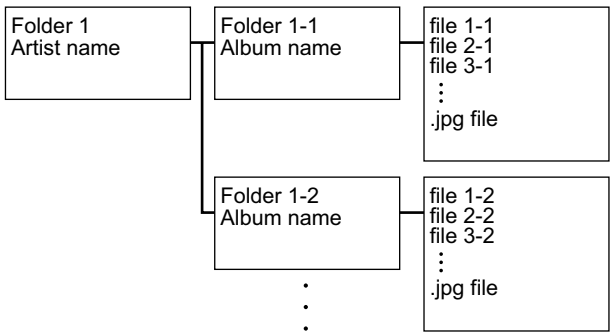

The illustration shows an image.

Perform the following procedure when this unit is on.

1. Switch the input on the TV to the input connected to the unit.
2. Plug your USB storage device containing music files into the USB port of this unit's rear panel.
3. Press NET to display the network service list screen.
4. Select "USB" with the cursors, and then press ENTER.
   - If the "USB" indicator blinks on the display, check whether the USB storage device is plugged in properly.
   - Do not unplug the USB storage device while "Connecting..." is being displayed on the display. This may cause data corruption or malfunction.
5. Press ENTER on the next screen again. The list of folders and music files on the USB storage device is displayed. Select the folder with the cursors, and press ENTER to confirm your selection.
6. Select the music file with the cursors, and then press ENTER to start playback.



- To return to the previous screen, press ⮌.
- To display an album title, artist name and album art of a file in WAV format, make the folder structure and file names as shown below when saving music files. The album art can be displayed by saving a .jpg file to display on the screen in the folder of bottom level. Note that a large volume of .jpg file may take time to be displayed, or may not be displayed.




- Characters that cannot be displayed on this unit appear with "∗"
- The USB port of this unit complies with the USB 2.0 standard. The transfer speed may be insufficient for some content you play, and sound interruptions, etc. may occur.
- Note that operation is not always guaranteed for all USB storage devices.
- This unit can use USB storage devices that comply with the USB mass storage class standard. Also the format of USB storage devices supports FAT16 or FAT32 file system format.

❑ Device and Supported Format ( →p77)

# Device and Supported Format

## USB Storage Device Requirements

- This unit can use USB storage devices that comply with the USB mass storage class standard.
- The format of USB storage devices supports FAT16 or FAT32 file system format.
- If the USB storage device has been partitioned, each section will be treated as an independent device.
- Up to 20,000 tracks per folder are supported, and folders can be nested up to 16 levels deep.
- USB hubs and USB storage devices with hub functions are not supported. Do not connect these devices to the unit.
- USB storage devices with security functions are not supported on this unit.
- If an AC adapter is supplied with the USB storage device, connect the AC adapter, and use it with a household outlet.
- Media inserted to the USB card reader may not be available in this function. Furthermore, depending on the USB storage device, proper reading of the contents may not be possible.
- In use of a USB storage device, our company accepts no responsibility whatsoever for the loss or modification of data stored on a USB storage device, or malfunction of the USB storage device. We recommend that you back up the data stored on a USB storage device before using it with this unit.

## Supported Audio Formats

This unit supports the following music file formats. Note that sound files that are protected by copyright cannot be played on this unit.

MP3 (.mp3/.MP3):
- Supported formats: MPEG-1/MPEG-2 Audio Layer 3
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz
- Supported bitrates: Between 8 kbps and 320 kbps, and VBR

WMA (.wma/.WMA):
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz
- Supported bitrates: Between 5 kbps and 320 kbps, and VBR
- WMA Pro/Voice/WMA Lossless formats are not supported.

WAV (.wav/.WAV):
WAV files contain uncompressed PCM digital audio.
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, 192 kHz
- Quantization bit: 8 bit, 16 bit, 24 bit

AIFF (.aiff/.aif/.AIFF/.AIF):
AIFF files contain uncompressed PCM digital audio.
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, 192 kHz
- Quantization bit: 8 bit, 16 bit, 24 bit

AAC (.aac/.m4a/.mp4/.3gp/.3g2/.AAC/.M4A/.MP4/.3GP/.3G2):
- Supported formats: MPEG-2/MPEG-4 Audio
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz
- Supported bitrates: Between 8 kbps and 320 kbps, and VBR

FLAC (.flac/.FLAC):
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, 192 kHz
- Quantization bit: 8 bit, 16 bit, 24 bit

Apple Lossless (.m4a/.mp4/.M4A/.MP4):
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, 192 kHz
- Quantization bit: 16 bit, 24 bit

DSD (.dsf/.dff/.DSF/.DFF):
- Supported formats: DSF/DSDIFF
- Supported sampling rates: 2.8 MHz, 5.6 MHz, 11.2 MHz

- When playing files recorded with VBR (Variable bit-rate), the playback time may not be displayed correctly.
- This unit supports the gapless playback of the USB storage device in the following conditions.
  When continuously playing WAV, FLAC and Apple Lossless files with the same format, sampling frequency, the number of channels and quantization bit rate.

# Playing back files on a PC and NAS (Music Server)

Streaming play of music files stored on PCs or NAS devices connected to the same network as this unit is supported.

- The network servers supported by this unit are PCs that incorporate players equipped with the server functions such as Windows Media® Player 11 or 12, or NASes supporting the home network function. When using Windows Media® Player 11 or 12, you need to make the settings beforehand. Note that with PCs, only music files registered in the library of Windows Media® Player can be played.

## Windows Media® Player settings

### On Windows Media® Player11

1. Turn on your PC, and start Windows Media® Player 11.
2. In the "Library" menu, select "Media Sharing" to display a dialog box.
3. Select the "Share my media" check box, and then click "OK" to display the compatible devices.
4. Select this unit, and then click "Allow".
   - When it is clicked, the corresponding icon is checked.
5. Click "OK" to close the dialog.

- Depending on the version of Windows Media® Player, the names of items to select may differ from the above description.

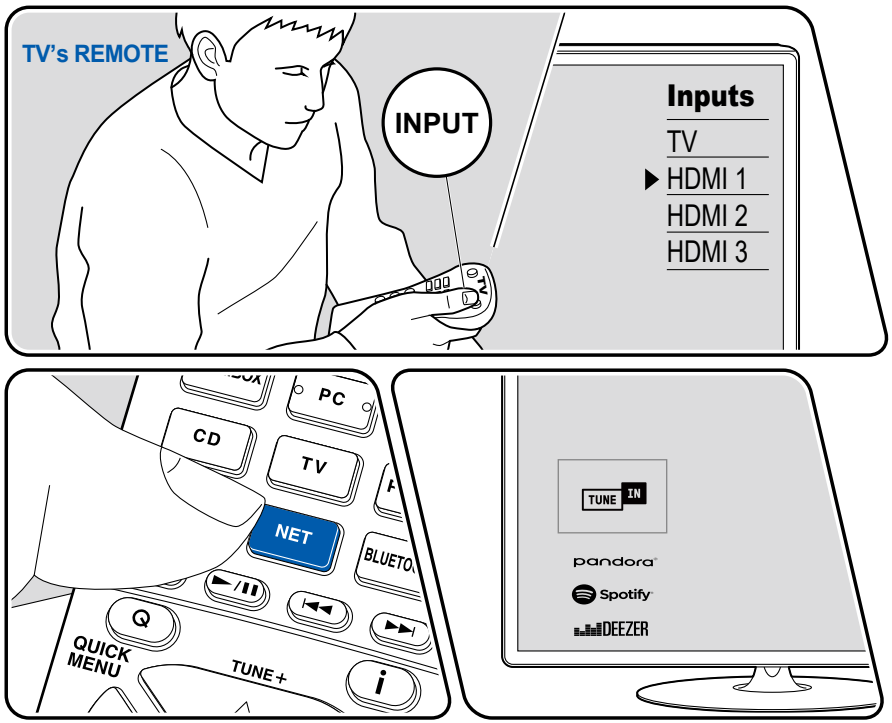
### On Windows Media® Player12

1. Turn on your PC, and start Windows Media® Player 12.
2. In the "Stream" menu, select "Turn on media streaming" to display a dialog box.
   - If the media streaming is already turned on, select "More streaming options..." in the "Stream" menu to display the list of playback devices in the network, and then go to step 4.
3. Click "Turn on media streaming" to display the list of playback devices in the network.
4. Select this unit in "Media streaming options" and check that it is set to "Allow".
5. Click "OK" to close the dialog.

- Depending on the version of Windows Media® Player, the names of items to select may differ from the above description.

❑ Playing Back ( →p79)

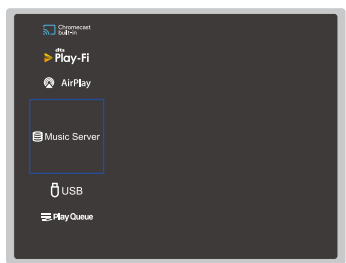
# Playing Back



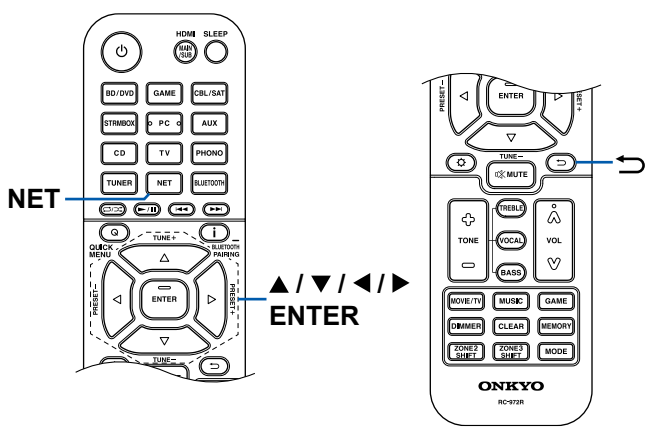

The illustration shows an image.

Perform the following procedure when this unit is on.

1. Switch the input on the TV to the input connected to the unit.
2. Start the server (Windows Media® Player 11, Windows Media® Player 12, or NAS device) containing the music files to play.
3. Make sure that the PC or NAS is properly connected to the same network as this unit.
4. Press NET to display the network service list screen.
   - If the "NET" indicator on the display blinks, the unit is not properly connected to the network. Check the connection.




5. With the cursors, select "Music Server", and then press ENTER.



6. Select the target server with the cursors, and press ENTER to display the items list screen.
   - This unit cannot access pictures and videos stored on servers.
   - Depending on the server sharing settings, contents stored on the server may not be displayed.
7. With the cursors, select the music file to play, and then press ENTER to start playback.
   - If "No Item" is displayed on the screen, check whether the network is properly connected.

- To return to the previous screen, press ⮌.
- For music files on a server, up to 20,000 tracks per folder are supported, and folders can be nested up to 16 levels deep.
- Depending on the type of media server, the unit may not recognize it, or may not be able to play its music files.

## Searching music files to select

If the server you use supports search functions, the following search function can be used.
Perform the following procedure with available servers displayed using Music Server.

1. With ▲ / ▼, select the server containing music files you want to play, and select ENTER.
2. With ▲ / ▼, select the Search folder, and press ENTER. The Search folder contains the following three folders.
   - "Search by Artist": Select this when searching by artist name.
   - "Search by Album": Select this when searching by album title.
   - "Search by Track": Select this when searching by track title.
3. With ▲ / ▼, select the folder, and press ENTER.
4. Input a character string to search for, and press ENTER. Then, the search result is displayed.
5. With ▲ / ▼, select the music files to play, and select ENTER.

## Controlling Remote Playback from a PC

You can use this unit to play music files stored on your PC by operating the PC in your home network. The unit supports remote playback via Windows Media® Player 12. To use the remote playback function of this unit with Windows Media® Player 12, it must be configured beforehand.

### Setting PC

1. Turn on your PC, and start Windows Media® Player 12.
2. In the "Stream" menu, select "Turn on media streaming" to display a dialog box.
   - If the media streaming is already turned on, select "More streaming options..." in the "Stream" menu to display the list of playback devices in the network, and then go to step 4.
3. Click "Turn on media streaming" to display the list of playback devices in the network.
4. Select this unit in "Media streaming options" and check that it is set to "Allow".
5. Click "OK" to close the dialog box.
6. Open the "Stream" menu and confirm that "Allow remote control of my Player..." is checked.

- Depending on the version of Windows Media® Player, the names of items to select may differ from the above description.

### Remote playback

1. Turn on the power of the unit.
2. Turn on your PC, and start Windows Media® Player 12.
3. Select and right-click the music file to play with Windows Media® Player 12.
   - To remotely play a music file on another server, open the target server from "Other Libraries", and select the music file to play.
4. Select this unit in "Play to" to open the "Play to" window of Windows Media® Player 12, and start playback on this unit.
   - If your PC is running on Windows® 8.1, click "Play to", and select this unit. If your PC is running on Windows® 10, click "Cast to Device", and select this unit. Operations during remote playback are possible from the "Play to" window on the PC. The playback screen is displayed on the HDMI-connected TV.
5. Adjust the volume using the volume bar on the "Play to" window.
   - Sometimes, the volume displayed on the remote playback window may differ from the volume displayed on the display of this unit.
   - When the volume is changed on this unit, the value is not reflected in the "Play to" window.
   - This unit cannot play music files remotely in the following conditions.
     – It is using a network service.
     – It is playing a music file on a USB storage device.

- Depending on the version of Windows Media® Player, the names of items to select may differ from the above description.

## ❑ Supported Audio Formats ( →p82)

# Supported Audio Formats

This unit supports the following music file formats. Remote play of FLAC and DSD is not supported.

MP3 (.mp3/.MP3):
- Supported formats: MPEG-1/MPEG-2 Audio Layer 3
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz
- Supported bitrates: Between 8 kbps and 320 kbps, and VBR

WMA (.wma/.WMA):
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz
- Supported bitrates: Between 5 kbps and 320 kbps, and VBR
- WMA Pro/Voice/WMA Lossless formats are not supported.

WAV (.wav/.WAV):
WAV files contain uncompressed PCM digital audio.
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, 192 kHz
- Quantization bit: 8 bit, 16 bit, 24 bit

AIFF (.aiff/.aif/.AIFF/.AIF):
AIFF files contain uncompressed PCM digital audio.
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, 192 kHz
- Quantization bit: 8 bit, 16 bit, 24 bit

AAC (.aac/.m4a/.mp4/.3gp/.3g2/.AAC/.M4A/.MP4/.3GP/.3G2):
- Supported formats: MPEG-2/MPEG-4 Audio
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz
- Supported bitrates: Between 8 kbps and 320 kbps, and VBR

FLAC (.flac/.FLAC):
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, 192 kHz
- Quantization bit: 8 bit, 16 bit, 24 bit

LPCM (Linear PCM):
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz
- Quantization bit: 16 bit

Apple Lossless (.m4a/.mp4/.M4A/.MP4):
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz
- Quantization bit: 16 bit, 24 bit

DSD (.dsf/.dff/.DSF/.DFF):
- Supported formats: DSF/DSDIFF
- Supported sampling rates: 2.8 MHz, 5.6 MHz, 11.2 MHz

- When playing files recorded with VBR (Variable bit-rate), the playback time may not be displayed correctly.
- Remote playback does not support the gapless playback.

# Play Queue

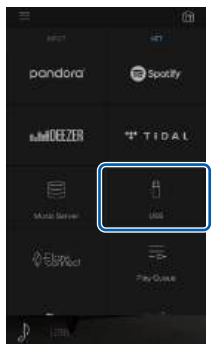
When downloading Onkyo Controller (available on iOS or Android™) to mobile devices, such as a smartphone and tablet, you can save your favorite playlist (Play Queue information) among music files stored in the USB storage device connected to this unit and music files stored in PC or NAS connected to the same network as this unit, and you can play the music on the playlist. The Play Queue information is effective until the power cord of this unit is removed from the outlet.

## Initial Setup

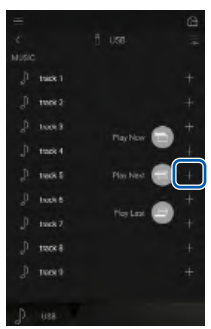
1. Connect this unit to your home network by the network settings on this unit.
2. Download Onkyo Controller from App Store or Google Play™ Store.
3. Connect the mobile device to the network where this unit is connected.
4. Start up Onkyo Controller, and select this unit.

## Adding Play Queue Information

1. Select the "INPUT" input on the application screen, and tap the "USB" icon. Or, select the "NET" input, and tap the "USB" icon or "Music Server" icon. (Depending on the model, the icon names may be different.)




2. Tapping the "+" icon of the track you wan to add will open the pop-up to add the Play Queue information.

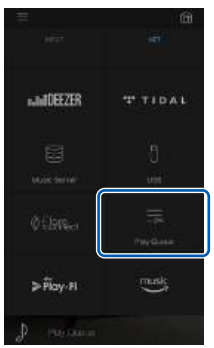


3. Touch the "Play Now", "Play Next" or "Play Last" icon to add the track to Play Queue.

- If there are no tracks on the Play Queue list, only "Play Now" is displayed.

## Sort and Delete

1. Select the "NET" input, tap the "Play Queue" icon, and enter the Play Queue service screen.



2. Tap the "≡" icon of the track to sort, and drag the icon to the destination.

3. To delete a track, slide the track to the left until the trash icon changes to "". If the device is on iOS, slide the "≡" icon to the left. Releasing your finger will delete the track from Play Queue.

## Playing Back

Playback starts when you select "Play Now" for Play Queue addition, or select the track in the Play Queue service screen.

# Amazon Music

Registering this unit with Amazon Music allows you to enjoy the music distribution service provided by Amazon. You can register this unit on the screen of Onkyo Controller by downloading Onkyo Controller (available on iOS or Android™) to mobile devices such as a smartphone and tablet.

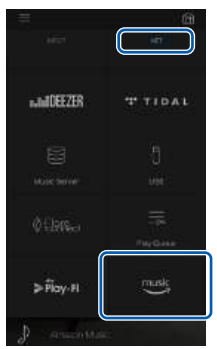
- To play Amazon Music, you need to have your Amazon account and sign up for Amazon Prime or Amazon Music Unlimited. For more information, see the Amazon website.

Amazon Music is now available in several countries. If Amazon Music is not available in your country, please visit https://music.amazon.com/ for more info.

## Registering This Unit with Amazon Music

- You can register this unit with Amazon Music using Onkyo Controller. The registration cannot be performed by operation of this unit.

1. Connect this unit to your home network by the network settings on this unit.
2. Download Onkyo Controller using your mobile device.
3. Connect the mobile device to the network where this unit is connected.
4. Start up Onkyo Controller to automatically display this unit. Tap and select this unit displayed.
5. Tap "NET" or "NETWORK" on the upper part of the Onkyo Controller's screen to switch to the network menu. Then tap the "Amazon Music" icon to display the login screen of Amazon Music. (Depending on the model, the icon names may be different.)
   - If the login screen is not displayed but an update or installation screen is displayed instead, perform the update or installation according to the on-screen instructions.



Available services may differ depending on your area.

6. Enter the Amazon account information such as email address and password to log in to Amazon. When the login is successful and this unit is registered, the Amazon Music menu is displayed.
   For playback, proceed to step 3 in the next section.

## Playing Amazon Music

1. Start up Onkyo Controller. This unit is automatically displayed after startup. Then, tap and select this unit displayed.
2. Tap "NET" or "NETWORK" on the upper part of the screen to switch to the network screen. Then tap the "Amazon Music" icon.
3. Select the content to play from the menu screen of Amazon Music to start playback.
   - To play Amazon Music using the remote controller, operate the input selector on the remote controller to display the network menu, and select "Amazon Music" from the menu.

# Connecting the Sonos System for Playback

Connecting this unit and Sonos Connect allows you to send the music or music sources on the Sonos App to this unit. Through Sonos Connect, you can play this unit with the same group of another Sonos device on the network or can play only on this unit. Also, if you start to play music from Sonos App, this unit is automatically turned on and the link function to switch input works.

- When "5. Hardware" - "Power Management" - "Network Standby" is set to "Off" in the Setup menu, turn this unit on manually, and press the NET button on the remote controller. In the factory default setting, the Network Standby function ( →p150) is set to On.

## Necessary Equipment

- Sonos Connect
- RCA audio cable (supplied with Sonos Connect)

## How to Connect This Unit and Sonos Connect

1. Connect the Sonos Connect to the AUDIO IN jack of this unit with the RCA audio cable supplied with the Sonos Connect. Any input jacks other than the PHONO jack can be used.
   - A digital cable can also be connected. For details, refer to the instruction manual of Sonos.
   - You can change the name of the input selector displayed on this unit to easier-to-understand name. For example, the input connected to Sonos Connect can be changed from "CD" (or another input selector) to "SONOS". Press the ☼ button on the remote controller, select "4. Source" - "Name Edit" and then change the name.

## Setting Up

A setup is required to play Sonos on this unit. Make the setting according to the following procedure.

1. Press the ☼ button on the remote controller, select "5. Hardware" - "Works with SONOS", and press the ENTER button.
2. Select the following items with the cursors ▲ / ▼ and set each item.
   **Input Selector:**
   Enable the interlocking function with the Sonos Connect. With the cursors ◀ / ▶, select the input selector to which the Sonos Connect is connected.
   **Connected Device:**
   Press the ENTER button to display Sonos devices connected to the same network as the network of this unit. Select the Sonos Connect connected to the unit and press the ENTER button.
   - Products (e.g. Play:3 unequipped with an output terminal) other than the Sonos Connect are also displayed in the device list and selectable. In that case, when playback on the Sonos side starts, the input is switched, however, audio is not output. Select the room name of the connected Sonos Connect.
   - Up to 32 devices can be displayed on the Sonos product list screen. If you cannot find the Sonos Connect to be interlocked, return to the previous screen, turn off the product you want to interlock, and try again.

**Output Zone:**
With the cursors ◀ / ▶, select the ZONE where you want to listen to the music.
"MAIN": Outputs audio only to the main room (where this unit is located).
"Zone 2": Outputs audio only to the separate room (ZONE 2).
"Main/Zone 2": Outputs audio to both the main room and separate room (ZONE 2).
"Zone 3": Outputs audio only to the separate room (ZONE 3).
"Main/Zone 3": Outputs audio to both the main room and separate room (ZONE 3).
"Zone 2/Zone 3": Outputs audio to both the separate rooms (ZONE 2 and ZONE 3).
“Main/Zone 2/Zone 3”: Outputs audio to the main room and both separate rooms (ZONE 2 and ZONE 3).

## Playing Sonos on This Unit

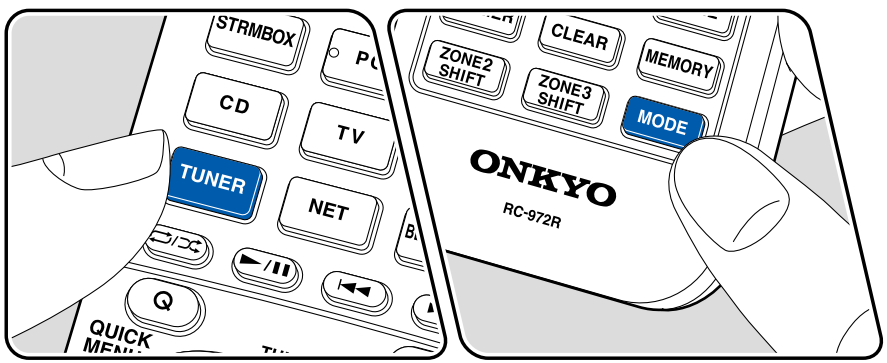
1. Select desired tracks using Sonos App and send the tracks to the room where this unit is located (or to the group). It is recommended to give an easy-to-remember name to the combination of this unit and Sonos Connect, such as TV Room or Living Room where this unit is located.

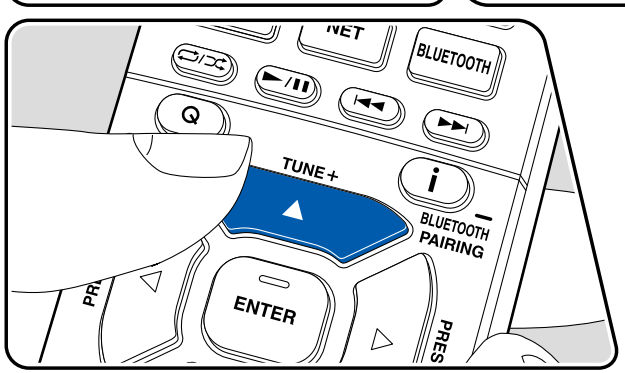
- If the input selector of this unit is not automatically switched even after the start of music playback, stop the playback once and start again.
- You can set the volume beforehand for playing back the Sonos Connect. Press the ☼ button on the remote controller, and select "5. Hardware" - "Works with SONOS" - "Preset Volume" ( →p150) to make the setting.

# Listening To the AM/FM Radio

You can receive AM and FM radio stations on this unit with the built-in tuner.

## Tuning into a Radio Station



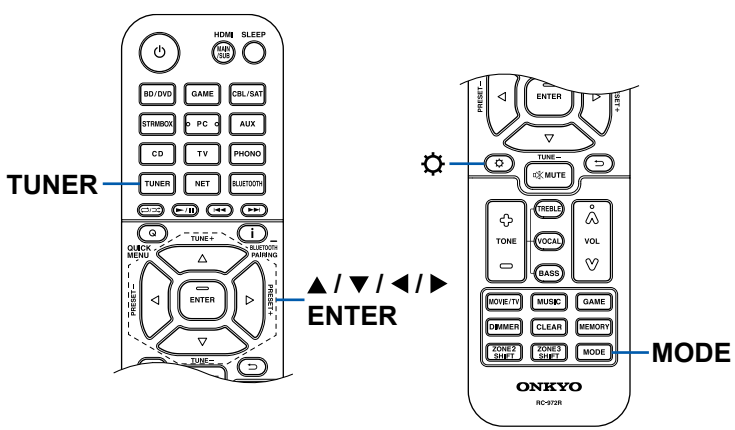

Perform the following procedure when this unit is on.

### Tuning Automatically

1. Press TUNER repeatedly to select either "AM" or "FM".
2. Press MODE repeatedly to display "TunMode: Auto" on the display.

TunMode:Auto

3. When you press the cursors ▲ / ▼, automatic tuning starts, and searching stops when a station is found. When tuned in to a radio station, the "TUNED" indicator on the display lights up. When tuned in to an FM radio station, the "FM ST" indicator lights up.

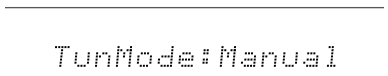


**When FM broadcasts reception is poor:** Perform the procedure for "Tuning Manually" ( →p89). Note that if you tune manually, the reception for FM broadcasts will be monaural rather than stereo, irrespective of the sensitivity of the reception.

## Tuning Manually

Note that if you tune manually, the reception for FM broadcasts will be monaural rather than stereo, irrespective of the sensitivity of the reception.

1. Press TUNER repeatedly to select either "AM" or "FM".
2. Press MODE repeatedly to display "TunMode: Manual" on the display.



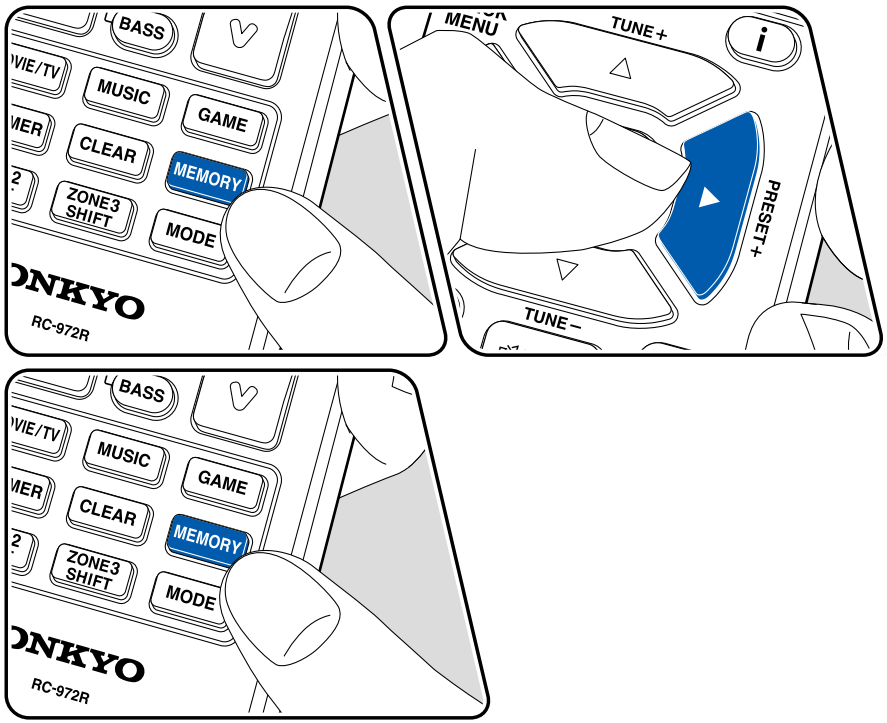

3. While pressing the cursors ▲ / ▼, select the desired radio station.
   - Each time you press the cursors ▲ / ▼, the frequency changes by 1 step. If the button is held down, the frequency changes continuously, and if the button is released, the frequency stops changing.

## Frequency step setting

Press ☼, and using the cursors and ENTER, select "7. Miscellaneous" - "Tuner" - "AM/FM Frequency Step" or "AM Frequency Step", and then select the frequency step for your area. Note that when this setting is changed, all radio presets are deleted.

❑ Presetting a Radio Station ( →p90)

# Presetting a Radio Station

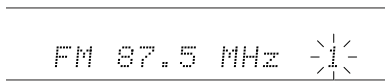



## Registration Procedure

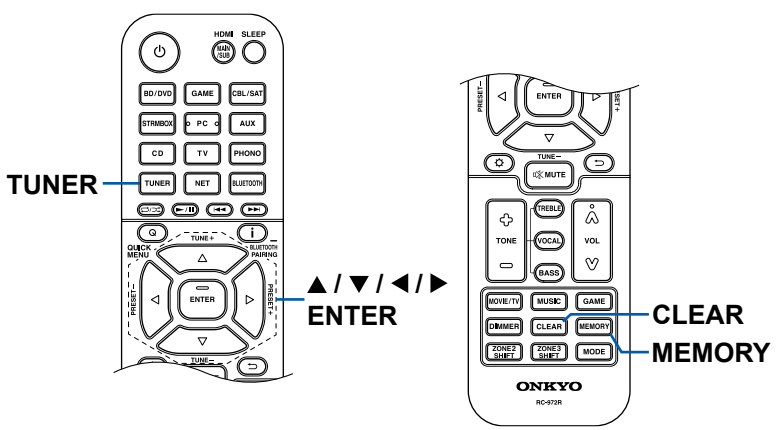
You can preset up to 40 of your favorite AM/FM radio stations.

After tuning in to the AM/FM radio station you want to register, perform the following procedure.

1. Press MEMORY so that the preset number on the display blinks.




2. While the preset number is blinking (approx. 8 seconds), repeatedly press the cursors ◀ / ▶ to select a number between 1 and 40.
3. Press MEMORY again to register the station.
   When the station is registered, the preset number stops blinking. Repeat this steps to register your favorite AM/FM radio stations.



## Selecting a Preset Radio Station

1. Press TUNER.
2. Press the cursors ◀ / ▶ to select a preset number.

## Deleting a Preset Radio Station

1. Press TUNER.
2. Press the cursors ◀ / ▶ to select the preset number to delete.
3. After pressing MEMORY, press CLEAR while the preset number is blinking, and delete the preset number. When deleted, the number on the display disappears.

❑ Using RDS (Asian models) ( →p92)

# Using RDS (Asian models)

RDS stands for Radio Data System, and is a method of transmitting data in FM radio signals. In regions where RDS can be used, when you tune in to a radio station broadcasting program information, the radio station name is displayed on the display. When you press the i button on the remote controller in this state, you can use the following functions.

## Display Text Information (Radio Text)

1. While the name of the station is being displayed on the display, press the i button on the remote controller once.
   The Radio Text (RT), which is text information delivered by the station, is displayed scrolling across the display. "No Text Data" is displayed when no text information is delivered.

## Search for Stations by Program Type

1. While the name of the station is being displayed on the display, press the i button on the remote controller twice.
   - If none of the Program Types are set for the radio station under reception, "None" is displayed.
2. Press the cursor buttons ◀ / ▶ on the remote controller to select the Program Type you want to search for, and then press the ENTER button to start the search.
   - The Program Types displayed are as follows: None / News (News reports) / Affairs (Current affairs) / Info (Information) / Sport / Educate (Education) / Drama / Culture / Science (Science and technology) / Varied / Pop M (Pop music) / Rock M (Rock music) / Easy M (Middle of the road music) / Light M (Light classics) / Classics (Serious classics) / Other M (Other music) / Weather / Finance / Children (Children's programmes) / Social (Social affairs) / Religion / Phone In / Travel / Leisure / Jazz (Jazz music) / Country (Country music) / Nation M (National music) / Oldies (Oldies music) / Folk M (Folk music) / Document (Documentary)
   - The information displayed may not match the content delivered by the station.
3. When a station is found, the station blinks on the display. Pressing the ENTER button in this state will receive that station. If you don't press the ENTER button, the unit starts to search for another station.
   - If no stations are found, the message "Not Found" is displayed.

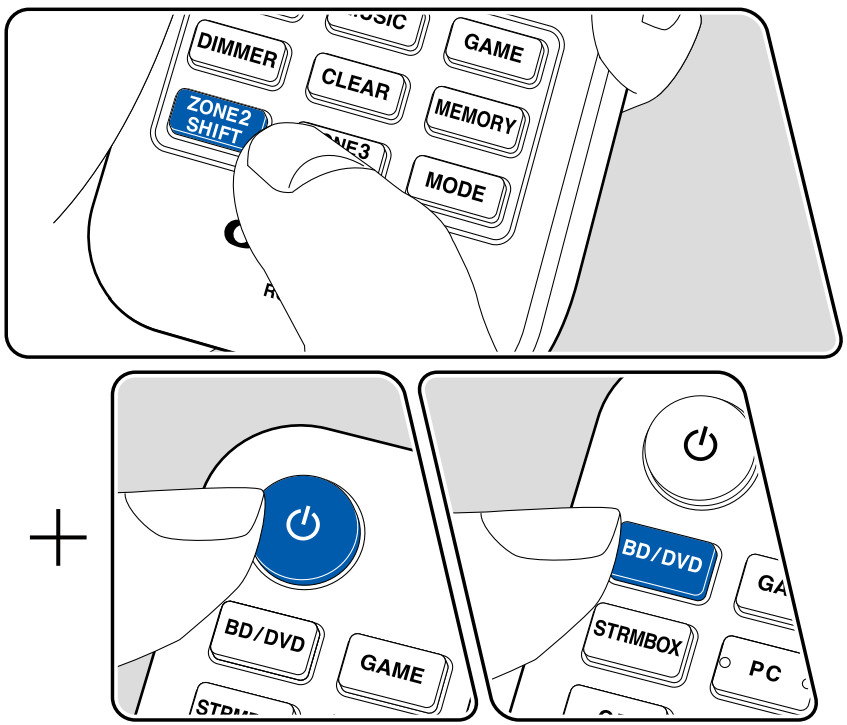
- Unusual characters may be displayed when the unit receives unsupported characters. This is not a malfunction. Also, if the signal from a station is weak, information may not be displayed.

## Multi-zone

You can enjoy 2-ch audio in the separate room (ZONE 2/ZONE 3) while performing playback in the main room (where this unit is located). The same source can be played back in the main room and ZONE 2/ZONE 3 simultaneously. Also, different sources can be played back in both rooms. For the "NET" or "BLUETOOTH" input selector, you can select only the same source for the main room and separate room. If you select "NET" in the main room and then select "BLUETOOTH" in the separate room, the main room setting switches to "BLUETOOTH". You cannot select different stations of AM/FM broadcasts for the main room and separate room. Using Onkyo Controller is convenient for operations of multi-zone playback. You can use it on mobile devices, such as a smartphone and tablet to which Onkyo Controller (available on iOS or Android™) has been downloaded.

❑ Playing Back (ZONE 2) ( →p94)

# Playing Back (ZONE 2)




In remote controller operation, while pressing and holding the ZONE 2 SHIFT button, press other buttons for operation.

1. While pressing and holding the ZONE 2 SHIFT button on the remote controller, point the remote controller at this unit and press ⏻.
   - "Z2" on the display of the main unit lights up.

2. While pressing and holding the ZONE 2 SHIFT button on the remote controller, press the input selector of the input source you want to play in the separate room. To control on the main unit, press the ZONE 2 button, and then within 8 seconds, press the input selector button of the input to be played in the separate room. To play the same source in the main room and separate room, press the ZONE 2 button of the main unit twice.
3. When using the ZONE 2 LINE OUT connection, adjust the sound volume on the pre-main amplifier in the separate room. As for the ZONE speaker output, adjust the volume with the volume button while pressing and holding the ZONE 2 SHIFT button on the remote controller. To do this on the main unit, press the ZONE 2 button, and then within 8 seconds, adjust the volume using the MASTER VOLUME dial.
   - Information of a connected device can be displayed on the TV in the separate room. Press the i button while pressing and holding the ZONE 2 SHIFT button on the remote controller.

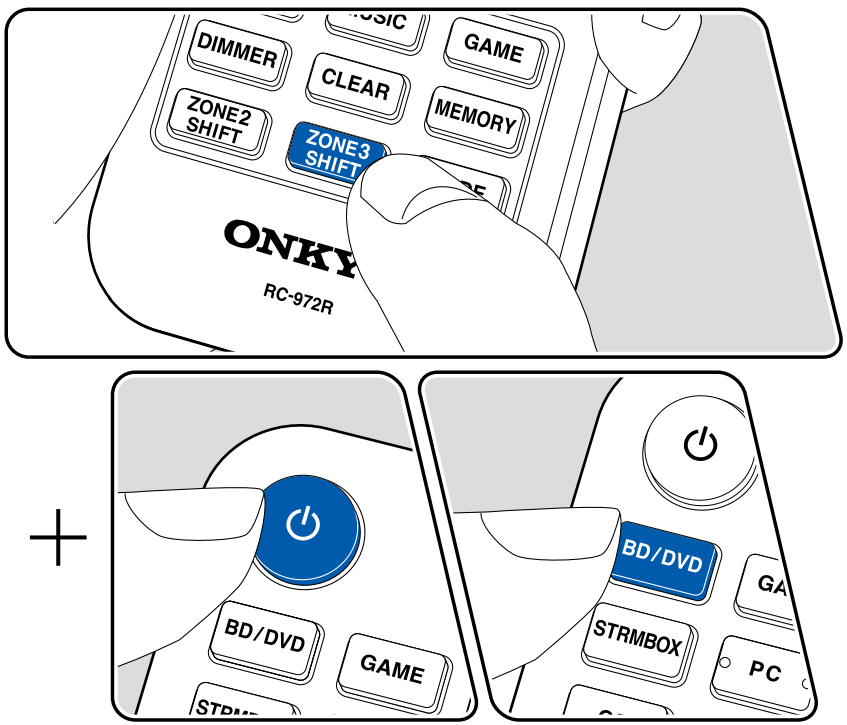
- If you turn the unit to standby during multi-zone playback, the Z2 indicator is dimmed, and the playback mode is switched to playback in a separate room only. Setting ZONE 2 to on while the unit is in standby also switches the playback mode to playback in the separate room only.
- The audio from externally connected AV components can be output to ZONE 2 only when the audio is analog or 2ch PCM signal. When the AV component is connected to this unit with an HDMI cable, digital coaxial cable or digital optical cable, change the audio output of the AV component to the PCM output.
- When video and audio via HDMI input are output to ZONE 2, set "1. Input/ Output Assign" - "TV Out / OSD" - "Zone 2 HDMI" ( →p131) to "Use" on the Setup menu.

- DSD audio signals cannot be output to ZONE 2 with the "NET" input selector.
- If ZONE 2 is on, power consumption during standby will increase.

**To disable the function:** While pressing and holding the ZONE 2 SHIFT button on the remote controller, press ⏻.

## ❑ Playing Back (ZONE 3) ( →p96)

# Playing Back (ZONE 3)




In remote controller operation, while pressing and holding the ZONE 3 SHIFT button, press other buttons for operation. Set "2. Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Zone Speaker" in the Setup menu ( →p135) to "Zone 2/Zone 3".

1. While pressing and holding the ZONE 3 SHIFT button on the remote controller, point the remote controller at this unit and press ⏻.
   - "Z3" on the display of the main unit lights up.

2. While pressing and holding the ZONE 3 SHIFT button on the remote controller, press the input selector of the input source you want to play in the separate room. To control on the main unit, press the ZONE 3 button, and then within 8 seconds, press the input selector button of the input to be played in the separate room. To play the same source in the main room and separate room, press the ZONE 3 button of the main unit twice.
3. Adjust the volume with the volume button while pressing and holding the ZONE 3 SHIFT button on the remote controller. To do this on the main unit, press the ZONE 3 button, and then within 8 seconds, adjust the volume using the MASTER VOLUME dial.

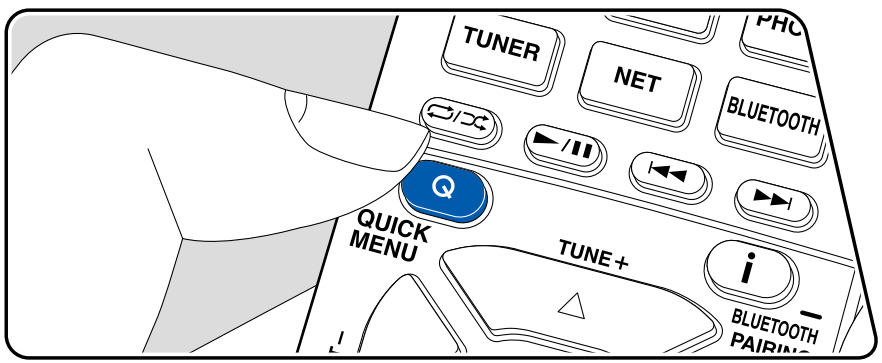
- If you turn the unit to standby during multi-zone playback, the Z3 indicator is dimmed, and the playback mode is switched to playback in a separate room only. Setting ZONE 3 to on while the unit is in standby also switches the playback mode to playback in the separate room only.
- For ZONE 3 output, audio from externally connected AV components can be output only when it is an analog audio signal.
- DSD audio signals cannot be output to ZONE 3 with the "NET" input selector.
- If ZONE 3 is on, power consumption during standby will increase.

**To disable the function:** While pressing and holding the ZONE 3 SHIFT button on the remote controller, press ⏻.

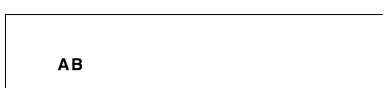
# ZONE B Playback

While performing playback through speakers (ZONE A) connected to the unit, you can enjoy the audio of the same source with the pre-main amplifier, etc. (ZONE B) ( →p59) connected to the ZONE B LINE OUT jack at the same time.

## Playing Back




1. Press the Q button on the remote controller and select "Audio" - "Zone B".
   - In the following cases, "Zone B" cannot be selected.
     – When ZONE 2 is On
     – When "2. Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Zone 2 Lineout" on the Setup menu is set to "Zone 2" ( →p136)
2. Select the audio output destination.
   **Off:** Outputs audio only from ZONE A. "A" on the display of the main unit lights up.
   **On(A+B):** Outputs audio from both ZONE A and ZONE B. "A"and "B" on the display of the main unit light up.
   **On(B):** Outputs audio only from ZONE B. "B" on the display of the main unit lights up.

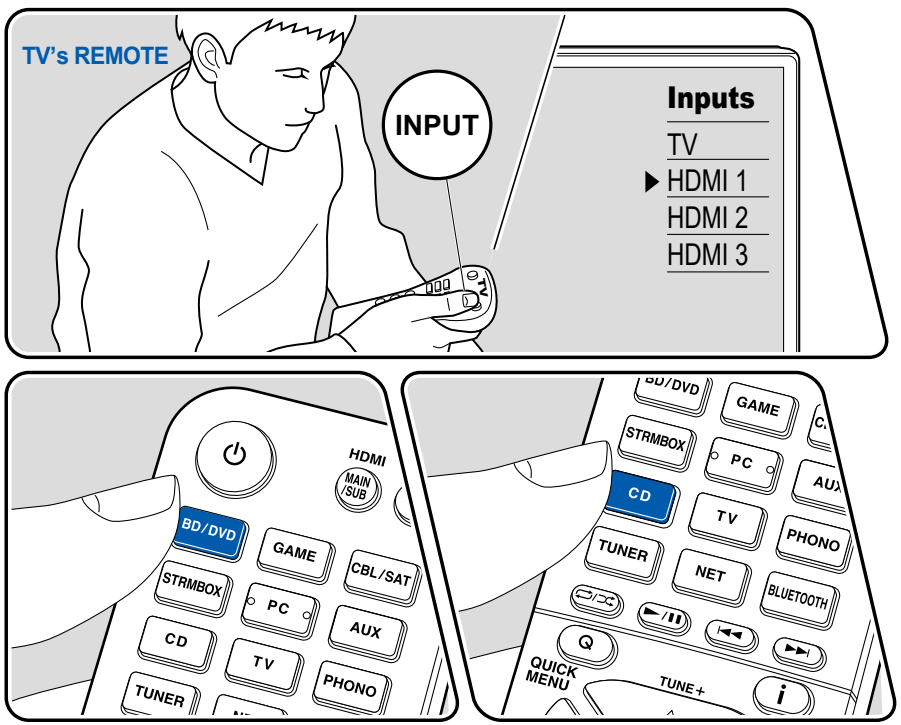



3. Start play on the AV component.
4. Adjust the sound volume on the pre-main amplifier, etc. of ZONE B.

- When "Zone 2 Lineout" is set to "Zone B", and "Audio" - "Zone B" on the Quick Menu is set to "On (A+B)", the ZONE A output is set as below.
  – Sound quality cannot be adjusted.
  – "2. Speaker" - "Crossover" - "Double Bass" on the Setup menu ( →p137) is fixed to "On".
  – The effect for "2. Speaker" - "Distance" on the Setup menu ( →p137) is disabled.
- If "On(A+B)" is selected as an audio output destination, you can select only the "Stereo" listening mode for ZONE A when using the 2.1ch speaker layout. When using a speaker layout of 3.1ch or more, you can select only the "AllCh Stereo" listening mode.

## Convenience functions

# Displaying Your Favorite Video on TV While Playing Music




While listening to the music from a CD or BLUETOOTH-enabled device, you can display video on TV from an AV component such as a Blu-ray Disc player.

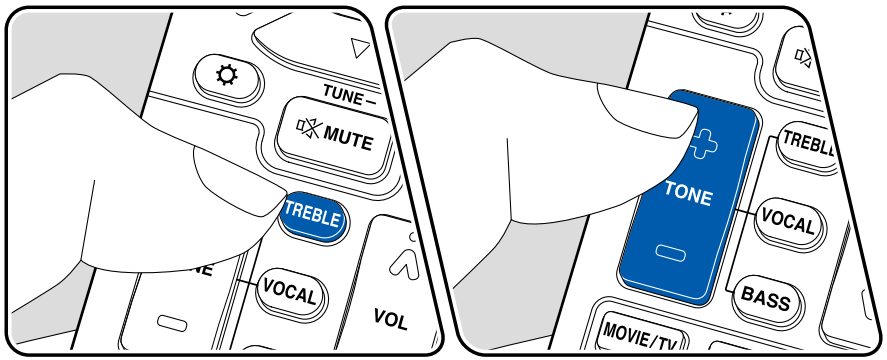
- For audio playback, you can select an input selector to which video input is not assigned, such as "CD", "PHONO", "TUNER", "NET" and "BLUETOOTH".
- When "OSD Language" ( →p131) is set to Chinese, the audio from "NET" and "BLUETOOTH" cannot be played.

Perform the following procedure when this unit is on.

1. Switch the input on the TV to the input connected to the unit.
2. Press an input selector such as BD/DVD button connected to the AV component of which the video is to be displayed on TV.
   - This operation is not necessary if the same input selector has been selected in the previous operation.
3. Press an input selector of the audio you want to play, such as the CD or BLUETOOTH button and perform playback operation.
4. Perform the playback operation of the AV component such as a Blu-ray Disc player. To play the audio of NET or BLUETOOTH, the following step 5 operation is required.
5. To play the audio of NET or BLUETOOTH, press the MODE button to switch the TV display from the NET or BLOOTOOTH playback screen to the video of the AV component. Pressing the MODE button again will return to the NET or BLOOTOOTH playback screen.
   - When the TV display is switched to the video of the AV component, the playback screen of NET or BLUETOOTH is displayed on the corner of the screen as Mini Player. The setting for Mini Player can be changed on the Setup Menu so that it automatically turns off in 30 seconds after displayed. ( →p132 "Mini Player OSD")

**Setting the video source to be displayed on TV beforehand:** When playing the audio of "TUNER", "NET" and "BLUETOOTH", you can set the input selector to be displayed on TV beforehand using "Video Select" ( →p144) on the Setup Menu. If a value other than "Last" is set, step 2 in the operation procedure is not required.

# Adjusting the tone




## Adjusting TREBLE/BASS

You can adjust the sound quality of the speakers.

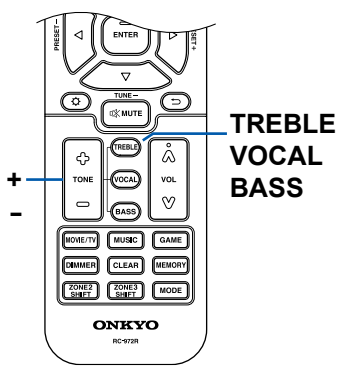
1. Press TREBLE or BASS to select the content to adjust.
   TREBLE: Enhances or moderates the high-tone range of the speakers.
   BASS: Enhances or moderates the low-tone range of the speakers.
2. Press + or - to adjust.

## Adjusting VOCAL

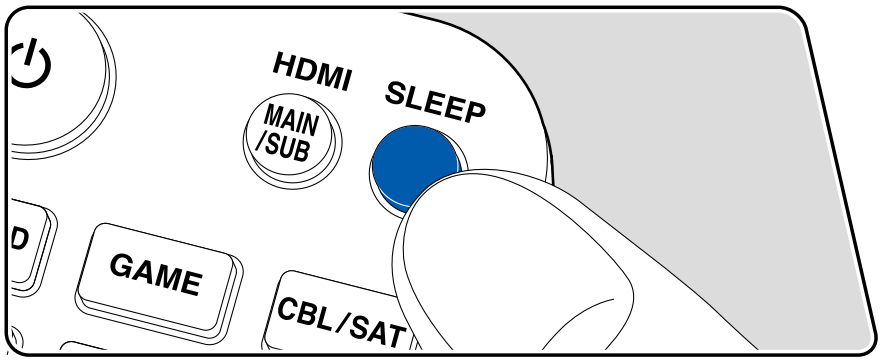
Emphasizes movie lines and music vocals to listen to them more easily. It is effective to movie lines in particular. Also, it exerts the effect even if the center speaker is not used. Select a desired level from "1" (low) to "5" (high).

1. Press VOCAL.
2. Press + or - to adjust.

- Depending on the input source or listening mode setting, selection is not possible, or the desired effect may not be achieved.



## Sleep Timer




You can allow the unit to enter standby automatically when the specified time has elapsed. Press the SLEEP button on the remote controller, and select any of "30 min", "60 min" and "90 min".
"Off": The unit does not automatically enter standby mode.

You can also set this by pressing the ☼ button on the remote controller and selecting "5. Hardware" - "Power Management" - "Sleep Timer" ( →p149) on the Setup menu.

# Listening Mode

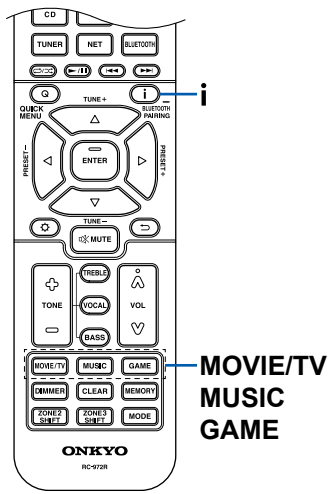
This unit is equipped with a variety of listening modes, and you can select the optimum listening mode for movies, TV, music, and games by pressing MOVIE/TV, MUSIC, and GAME.

## Selecting a Listening mode

1. Press one from among MOVIE/TV, MUSIC, and GAME during playback.
2. Press the selected button repeatedly to switch the modes displayed on the display of the main unit.

DTS

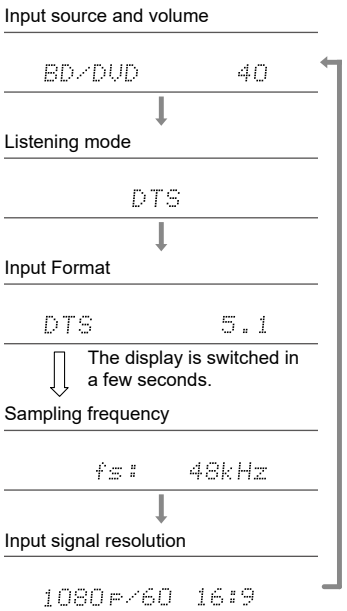
- Each of MOVIE/TV, MUSIC and GAME buttons stores the listening mode that was selected last. If content incompatible of the listening mode selected last is played, the most standard listening mode for the content is automatically selected.
- For details of the effects of each listening mode, refer to "Listening Mode Effects" ( →p106).
- For listening modes selectable for each audio format of input signals, refer to "Input Formats and Selectable Listening Modes" ( →p112).



## Checking the input format and listening mode

Repeatedly pressing the i button on the remote controller switches the display of the main unit in the following order.

- The display content for the BLUETOOH input is different.
- Not all the information is necessarily displayed.



# Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes

See the following table for selectable listening modes for each speaker layout.

| Listening mode | Speaker layout (ch) 2.1 | 3.1 | 4.1 | 5.1 | 6.1 | 7.1 | 2.1.2 | 3.1.2 | 4.1.2 | 5.1.2 | 6.1.2 | 7.1.2 | 4.1.4 | 5.1.4 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| DD (Dolby Audio - DD) | | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*2) | ✔(*2) | | ✔(*2) | ✔(*2) | ✔(*2) | ✔(*2) | ✔(*2) | ✔(*2) | ✔(*2) |
| DD+ (Dolby Audio - DD+) | | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) |
| DTHD (Dolby Audio - TrueHD) | | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) |
| Atmos | | | | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ |
| Atmos 2.0/2.1 | ✔ | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Atmos 3.0/3.1 | | ✔ | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Atmos 4.0/4.1 | | | ✔ | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Atmos 5.0/5.1 | | | | ✔ | | | | | | | | | | |
| Atmos 6.0/6.1 | | | | | ✔ | | | | | | | | | |
| Atmos 7.0/7.1 | | | | | | ✔ | | | | | | | | |
| Atmos 2.0.2/2.1.2 | | | | | | | ✔ | | | | | | | |
| Atmos 3.0.2/3.1.2 | | | | | | | | ✔ | | | | | | |
| Dsur (Dolby Audio - Surr) | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ |
| Dsur 2.0/2.1 (Dolby Audio - Surr) | ✔ | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Dsur 3.0/3.1 (Dolby Audio - Surr) | | ✔ | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Dsur 4.0/4.1 (Dolby Audio - Surr) | | | ✔ | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Dsur 5.0/5.1 (Dolby Audio - Surr) | | | | ✔ | | | | | | | | | | |
| Dsur 6.0/6.1 (Dolby Audio - Surr) | | | | | ✔ | | | | | | | | | |
| Dsur 7.0/7.1 (Dolby Audio - Surr) | | | | | | ✔ | | | | | | | | |
| Dsur 2.0.2/2.1.2 (Dolby Audio - Surr) | | | | | | | ✔ | | | | | | | |
| Dsur 3.0.2/3.1.2 (Dolby Audio - Surr) | | | | | | | | ✔ | | | | | | |

| Listening mode | Speaker layout (ch) 2.1 | 3.1 | 4.1 | 5.1 | 6.1 | 7.1 | 2.1.2 | 3.1.2 | 4.1.2 | 5.1.2 | 6.1.2 | 7.1.2 | 4.1.4 | 5.1.4 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| DTS | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | | ✔(*3) | ✔(*3) | ✔(*3) | ✔(*3) | ✔(*3) | ✔(*3) | ✔(*3) |
| ES Discrete (DTS-ES Discrete) | | | | | ✔ | ✔ | | | | | | | | |
| ES Matrix (DTS-ES Matrix) | | | | | ✔ | ✔ | | | | | | | | |
| DTS 96/24 | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | | ✔(*3) | ✔(*3) | ✔(*3) | ✔(*3) | ✔(*3) | ✔(*3) | ✔(*3) |
| DTS-HD HR (DTS-HD High Resolution) | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ |
| DTS-HD Master (DTS-HD Master Audio) | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ |
| DTS Express | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ |
| DTS:X | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ |
| DTS Neural:X | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ |

| Listening mode | Speaker layout (ch) 2.1 | 3.1 | 4.1 | 5.1 | 6.1 | 7.1 | 2.1.2 | 3.1.2 | 4.1.2 | 5.1.2 | 6.1.2 | 7.1.2 | 4.1.4 | 5.1.4 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Multich (Multichannel) | | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | | ✔(*3) | ✔(*3) | ✔(*3) | ✔(*3) | ✔(*3) | ✔(*3) | ✔(*3) |
| DSD | | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*2) | ✔(*2) | | ✔(*2) | ✔(*2) | ✔(*2) | ✔(*2) | ✔(*2) | ✔(*2) | ✔(*2) |
| Direct | ✔ | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) | ✔(*1) |
| Stereo | ✔ | ✔(*4) | ✔(*4) | ✔(*4) | ✔(*4) | ✔(*4) | ✔(*4) | ✔(*4) | ✔(*4) | ✔(*4) | ✔(*4) | ✔(*4) | ✔(*4) | ✔(*4) |
| Mono | ✔ | ✔(*4) | ✔(*4) | ✔(*4) | ✔(*4) | ✔(*4) | ✔(*4) | ✔(*4) | ✔(*4) | ✔(*4) | ✔(*4) | ✔(*4) | ✔(*4) | ✔(*4) |
| Full Mono | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ |
| THX Cinema | | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ |
| THX Sel Cin | | | | | ✔ | ✔ | | | | | ✔ | ✔ | | |
| THX Music | | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ |
| THX Sel Mus | | | | | ✔ | ✔ | | | | | ✔ | ✔ | | |
| THX Games | | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ |
| THX Sel Gam | | | | | ✔ | ✔ | | | | | ✔ | ✔ | | |
| AllCh Stereo | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ |
| Orchestra | | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ |
| Studio-Mix | | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ |
| TV Logic | | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ |
| Unplugged | | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ |
| Game-Action | | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ |
| Game-Rock | | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ |
| Game-RPG | | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ |
| Game-Sports | | | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ | ✔ |
| T-D (Theater-Dimensional) | ✔ | ✔ | ✔(*4) | ✔(*5) | ✔(*4) | ✔(*5) | ✔(*4) | ✔(*5) | ✔(*4) | ✔(*5) | ✔(*4) | ✔(*5) | ✔(*4) | ✔(*5) |

*1: Reproduced with the sound field according to the number of channels of input signals.
*2: Not output from surround back speakers or height speakers.
*3: Not output from height speakers.
*4: Output only from front speakers.
*5: Output only from front speakers and center speaker.

# Listening Mode Effects

## Updating of listening modes

Listening modes such as Dolby Atmos 2.0 and Dolby DSur 2.0 are added when the firmware is updated after purchase or the firmware is switched in the product production process. For details of firmware update, see "Additional Function (Firmware Update)" ( →p6).

**In alphabetical order**

## ■ AllCh Stereo

This mode is ideal for background music. Stereo sound is played through the surround speakers as well as the front speakers, creating a stereo image.

## ■ Direct

This listening mode can be selected for all input signals. Processing that affects sound quality is shut down, and sound closer to the original is reproduced. The sound is reproduced with the sound field based on the number of channels in the input signal. For example, a 2ch signal is output only from the front speakers. Note that the sound adjustment is not available when this mode is selected.

## ■ Dolby Atmos

**(Firmware version before supporting Dolby Atmos 2.0, etc.)**

Selectable at the time of inputting Dolby Atmos audio format when surround back speakers or height speakers are connected. This mode faithfully reproduces the stereophonic sound design recorded in the Dolby Atmos audio format.
Unlike existing surround systems, Dolby Atmos does not rely on channels, but rather enables the accurate placement of sound objects that have independent motion in a 3D space with even greater clarity. Dolby Atmos is an optional audio format for Blu-ray Discs and achieves a more stereophonic sound field by introducing a sound field above the listener.

- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via an HDMI cable and set the audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

## ■ Dolby Atmos

**(Firmware version supporting Dolby Atmos 2.0, etc.)**

Since this mode calculates the positional data of audio recorded in Dolby Atmos audio in real-time and outputs it from appropriate speakers, you can enjoy the natural and stereophonic sound field of Dolby Atmos with any speaker layout including connection of only front speakers. Also, the Dolby Atmos sound design can be reproduced more faithfully by connecting surround back speakers or height speakers. You can select this mode when inputting the Dolby Atmos audio format. Unlike existing surround systems, Dolby Atmos does not rely on channels, but rather enables the accurate placement of sound objects that have independent motion in a 3D space with even greater clarity. Dolby Atmos is an optional audio format for Blu-ray Discs and achieves a more stereophonic sound field by introducing a sound field above the listener.

According to the speaker layout, the following listening modes are displayed.

- Dolby Atmos 2.0/2.1: When only front speakers are installed
- Dolby Atmos 3.0/3.1: When front speakers and center speaker are installed
- Dolby Atmos 4.0/4.1: When front speakers and surround speakers are installed
- Dolby Atmos 5.0/5.1: When front speakers, center speaker and surround speakers are installed
- Dolby Atmos 6.0/6.1: When front speakers, surround speakers and surround back speakers are installed
- Dolby Atmos 7.0/7.1: When front speakers, center speaker, surround speakers and surround back speakers are installed
- Dolby Atmos 2.0.2/2.1.2: When front speakers and height speakers are installed
- Dolby Atmos 3.0.2/3.1.2: When front speakers, center speaker and height speakers are installed
- Dolby Atmos: Selectable in the "4.1.2ch", "5.1.2ch", "6.1.2ch", "7.1.2ch", "4.1.4ch" or "5.1.4ch" setting with surround speakers and height speakers installed.

- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via an HDMI cable and set the audio output on the player to Bitstream output.
- When "Speaker Virtualizer" ( →p141) is set to "Off" (Default: On), modes

other than Atmos cannot be selected.

## ■ DD (Dolby Audio - DD)

This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the Dolby Digital audio format.
Dolby Digital is a multi-channel digital format developed by Dolby Laboratories, Inc. and is widely adopted for use in movie production. It is also a standard audio format for DVD-Video and Blu-ray Discs. It is possible to record a maximum of 5.1 channels on a DVD-Video or Blu-ray Disc; two front channels, one center channel, two surround channels, and the LFE channel dedicated to the bass region (sound elements for the subwoofer).

- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via a digital cable and set the audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

## ■ DD+ (Dolby Audio - DD+)

This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the Dolby Digital Plus audio format.
The Dolby Digital Plus format has been improved based on Dolby Digital, increasing the number of channels and endeavoring to improve sound quality by giving more flexibility in data bit rates. Dolby Digital Plus is an optional audio format based on 5.1ch for Blu-ray Discs. It is possible to record a maximum of 7.1 channels with additional channels such as the surround back channel.

- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via an HDMI cable and set the audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

## ■ DSur (Dolby Audio - Surr)

**( Firmware version before supporting DSur 2.0, etc.)**

This listening mode expands actual channels to more channels for playback according to the configuration of the connected speakers by expanding the input signals from 2ch or 5.1ch to 5.1ch, 7.1ch or 5.1.2ch.

- This mode cannot be selected when DTS signal is input.

## ■ DSur (Dolby Audio - Surr)

**( Firmware version supporting DSur 2.0, etc.)**

This listening mode expands 2ch or 5.1ch input signals to 5.1ch, 7.1ch or 5.1.2ch. This mode expands actual channels to more channels for playback according to the configuration of the connected speakers. Also, even if there is no speaker for expansion, for example when only front speakers are connected, audio of surround channel or height channel is virtually created for expansion playback.

- This mode cannot be selected when DTS signal is input.

According to the speaker layout, the following listening modes are displayed.

- DSur 2.0/2.1: When only front speakers are installed
- DSur 3.0/3.1: When front speakers and center speaker are installed
- DSur 4.0/4.1: When front speakers and surround speakers are installed
- DSur 5.0/5.1: When front speakers, center speaker and surround speakers are installed
- DSur 6.0/6.1: When front speakers, surround speakers and surround back speakers are installed
- DSur 7.0/7.1: When front speakers, center speaker, surround speakers and surround back speakers are installed
- DSur 2.0.2/2.1.2: When front speakers and height speakers are installed
- DSur 3.0.2/3.1.2When front speakers, center speaker and height speakers are installed
- DSur: Selectable in the "4.1.2ch", "5.1.2ch", "6.1.2ch", "7.1.2ch", "4.1.4ch" or "5.1.4ch" setting with surround speakers and height speakers installed.

- When "Speaker Virtualizer" ( →p141) is set to "Off" (Default: On), modes other than DSur cannot be selected.

## ■ DTHD (Dolby Audio - TrueHD)

This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the Dolby TrueHD audio format.
The Dolby TrueHD audio format is a "lossless" format expanded based on the lossless compression technology referred to as MLP, and it faithfully reproduces the master audio recorded in the studio. Dolby TrueHD is an optional audio format based on 5.1ch for Blu-ray Discs. It is possible to record a maximum of 7.1 channels with additional channels such as the surround back channel. 7.1ch is recorded at 96 kHz/24 bit, and 5.1ch is recorded at 192 kHz/24 bit.

- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via an HDMI cable and set the audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

## ■ DSD

This mode is suitable for playing sources recorded in DSD.

- This unit supports the DSD signal input from the HDMI input terminal. However, depending on the connected player, better sound may be obtained by setting the output on the player side to the PCM output.
- This listening mode cannot be selected if the output setting on your Blu-ray Disc/DVD player is not set to DSD.

## ■ DTS

This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the DTS audio format.
The DTS audio format is a multi-channel digital format developed by DTS, Inc. This format is an optional audio format for DVD-Video and a standard format for Blu-ray Discs.It enables recording of 5.1 channels; two front channels, one center channel, two surround channels, and the LFE channel dedicated to the bass region (sound elements for the subwoofer). The content is recorded with a rich volume of data, with a maximum sampling rate of 48 kHz, at a resolution of 24 bits and a bit rate of 1.5 Mbps.

- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via a digital cable and set the audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

## ■ DTS 96/24

This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the DTS 96/24 audio format.
The DTS 96/24 format is an optional audio format for DVD-Video and Blu-ray Discs. It enables recording of 5.1 channels; two front channels, one center channel, two surround channels, and the LFE channel dedicated to the bass region (sound elements for the subwoofer). Detailed reproduction is achieved by recording the content at a sampling rate of 96 kHz and at a resolution of 24 bits.

- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via a digital cable and set the audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

## ■ DTS Express

This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the DTS Express audio format.
DTS Express is an optional audio format based on 5.1ch for Blu-ray Discs. It is possible to record a maximum of 7.1 channels with additional channels such as the surround back channel. It also supports low bit rates.

- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via an HDMI cable and set the audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

## ■ DTS-HD HR (DTS-HD High Resolution)

This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the DTS-HD High Resolution Audio audio format.
DTS-HD High Resolution Audio is an optional audio format based on 5.1ch for Blu-ray Discs. It is possible to record a maximum of 7.1 channels with additional channels such as the surround back channel at a sampling rate of 96 kHz and at a resolution of 24 bits.

- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via an HDMI cable and set the audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

## ■ DTS-HD MSTR (DTS-HD Master Audio)

This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the DTS-HD Master Audio audio format.
DTS-HD Master Audio is an optional audio format based on 5.1ch for Blu-ray Discs. It is possible to record a maximum of 7.1 channels with additional channels such as the surround back channel using the lossless audio reproduction technology. 96 kHz/24 bit is supported for 7.1ch, and 192 kHz/24 bit is supported for 5.1ch.

- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via an HDMI cable and set the audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

## ■ DTS Neural:X

This listening mode expands actual channels to more channels for playback to suit the configuration of the connected speakers by expanding the input signals from 2 channels or 5.1 channels to 5.1 channels or 7.1 channels respectively.

- This mode cannot be selected when Dolby signal is input.

## ■ DTS:X

This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the DTS:X audio format.
The DTS:X audio format is a combination of the mixing method based on

traditional channel based formats (5.1ch and 7.1ch) and object based dynamic audio mixing, and it is characterized by the precise positioning of sounds and the ability to express sound movement.

- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via an HDMI cable and set the audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

## ■ ES Discrete (DTS-ES Discrete)

This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the DTS-ES Discrete audio format.
DTS-ES Discrete is an optional audio format based on 5.1ch for DVD-Video and Blu-ray Discs. It is possible to record a maximum of 6.1 channels with a monaural surround back channel added.

- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via a digital cable and set the audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

## ■ ES Matrix (DTS-ES Matrix)

This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the DTS-ES Matrix audio format.
DTS-ES Matrix is an optional audio format based on 5.1ch for DVD-Video and Blu-ray Discs. A monaural surround back channel is inserted to this format by matrix encoding. During playback, 6.1 channel-playback is achieved by the matrix decoder on this unit.

- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via a digital cable and set the audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

## ■ Full Mono

In this mode, all speakers output the same sound in mono, so the sound you hear is the same regardless of where you are within the listening room.

## ■ Game-Action

This mode is suitable for games with a lot of action.

## ■ Game-Rock

This mode is suitable for games with rock content.

## ■ Game-RPG

This mode is suitable for role-playing games.

## ■ Game-Sports

This mode is suitable for sports games.

## ■ Mono

In this mode, monaural audio is played from the center speaker at the time of inputting an analog signal or PCM signal. If there is no center speaker connected, monaural audio is played from the front speakers.

## ■ Multich (Multichannel)

This mode is suitable to play sources recorded in multichannel PCM.

## ■ Orchestra

This mode is suitable for classical or operatic music. This mode emphasizes the surround channels in order to widen the sound image, and simulates the natural reverberation of a large hall.

## ■ Stereo

In this mode, sound is output from the right and left front speakers and subwoofer.

## ■ Studio-Mix

This mode is suitable for rock or pop music. This mode creates a lively sound field with a powerful acoustic image as if you are at a club or rock concert.

## ■ T-D (Theater-Dimensional)

In this mode, you can enjoy a virtual playback of multichannel surround sound even with only two or three speakers. This works by controlling how sounds reach the listener's left and right ears.

- This mode cannot be selected when "Speaker Virtualizer" ( →p141) is set to "Off" (Default: On).

## ■ THX

THX is a series of specifications for the accurate reproduction of movies propounded by the film director George Lucas. THX listening modes include the THX Cinema mode, etc. Using technology such as THX Loudness Plus and Timbre Matching, the sound of a movie theater is reproduced accurately.

THX technology:
A movie soundtrack is mixed in a large-scale theater specially made for mixing that is called a dubbing stage on the assumption that the soundtrack is played in such theaters with similar equipment and conditions. These soundtracks are recorded as is, even when recording to a DVD-Video, for example, without making any modifications to suit a home theater environment. THX technology is able to reproduce the movie theater sound accurately in a home theater environment by minimizing acoustic and spatial deviation.

• THX Loudness Plus
THX Loudness Plus is a new volume control technology mounted on THX Ultra and THX Select-certified AV receivers. With THX Loudness Plus, home theater audience can experience the rich details of surround sound at any volume level. If the volume is turned down below the reference level, elements of sound in a certain range are lost, or the sound is perceived differently by audience. THX Loudness Plus compensates for the tonal and spatial shifts that occur when the volume is reduced, by intelligently adjusting ambient surround channel levels and frequency response.

• Re-EQ
The speakers for the front channel in a movie theater are installed behind the screen. For this reason the high range is enhanced in the sound track of the front channel in view of acoustic characteristics such as the necessity to penetrate the screen. Re-EQ adjusts the soundtrack with the enhanced high range to make it suitable for a home theater.

• Timbre Matching
The perception of human ears differs depending on the sound direction. Movie theaters have many surround speakers installed, so they are excellent at surrounding the viewers with natural sound, but home theaters have only two surround speakers installed. The Timbre Matching function filters the signals sent to the surround speakers, and adjusts the tonal characteristics of front speakers and surround speakers to create smooth sound movement from front speakers to surround speakers.

• Adaptive Decorrelation
While movie theaters have many surround speakers to enable the experience where viewers are surrounded with sound, home theaters normally have only two surround speakers. Such two surround speakers give a headphone-like sound, not a broad and embracing surround sound. If a listener moves away from the middle position between the surround speakers, the sound from the surround speakers is absorbed into the sound from the nearby speakers, and cannot be distinguished any more. Adaptive Decorrelation changes the time axis and phase between the surround channels so that you can enjoy the same spatial sound with two surround speakers as in a movie theater .

• ASA (Advanced Speaker Array)
ASA is a technology patented by THX to provide a broad surround sound experience by adjusting the sounds of two surround speakers on the sides and two surround speakers at the back. When installing the surround back speakers, be sure to select the distance between the two surround back speakers in the THX Audio settings. This setting optimizes the surround sound environment.

THX listening modes:
– THX Cinema: Use this mode in a home theater environment to play the soundtrack that was recorded on the assumption that it is played in a movie theater or similar large area. In this mode, THX Loudness Plus is set to the theater level, and Re-EQ, Timbre Matching and Adaptive Decorrelation are all enabled.
– THX Games: Use this mode for high-fidelity spatial reproduction of game sound. THX Loudness Plus is set to a level suited to the audio level of the game, and Timbre Matching is enabled.
– THX Music: This mode mainly adjusts the playback of music sources that are mastered to a much higher quality obviously than movie audio. In this mode, THX Loudness Plus is set to a level suited to the playback of music, and Timbre Matching is enabled.
– THX Sel Cin (THX Select Cinema): The THX Select Cinema mode provides a high-quality surround sound experience by expanding movie sources recorded in 5.1ch for 7.1ch playback. In this mode, the THX ASA processing technology gives smooth transition between side and back surround sounds, creating the

best atmosphere and directional sense of surround sound.

– THX Sel Gam (THX Select Games): Select the THX Select Games mode to play game sound recorded in a multichannel format. In this mode, the THX ASA processing technology enables the playback of game sound in a 360-degree sound field which was recorded in PCM, DTS, Dolby Digital and other 5.1ch formats.

– THX Sel Mus (THX Select Music): Select THX Select Music to play music sources recorded in a multichannel format. In this mode, the THX ASA processing technology creates a broad and stable back sound field when playing music sources recorded in 5.1ch, such as DTS, Dolby Digital, and DVD-Audio.

## ■ TV Logic

Suitable for TV shows produced in a TV studio. This mode gives clarity to voices by enhancing the entire surround sounds, and creates a realistic acoustic image.

## ■ Unplugged

Suitable for acoustic instruments, vocals and jazz. This mode emphasizes the front sound field image, giving the impression of being in front of the stage.

# Input Formats and Selectable Listening Modes

You can select a variety of listening modes according to the audio format of the signal to be input.

- List of listening modes selectable with the MOVIE/TV button ( →p112)
- List of listening modes selectable with the MUSIC button ( →p116)
- List of listening modes selectable with the GAME button ( →p121)
- Selectable listening modes when headphones are connected are Mono, Direct, and Stereo only.

## ■ MOVIE/TV button

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| Analog | Direct |
| | Mono |
| | DSur |
| | DTS Neural:X |
| | THX Cinema*1 |
| | TV Logic*2 |
| | AllCh Stereo*3 |
| | Full Mono*3 |
| | T-D*4 |

*1 Surround speakers need to be installed.
*2 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*3 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
*4 Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| PCM<br>Music files (except DSD) | Direct |
| | Mono |
| | DSur |
| | DTS Neural:X*1 |
| | THX Cinema*2 |
| | TV Logic*3 |
| | AllCh Stereo*4 |
| | Full Mono*4 |
| | T-D*5 |

*1 Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.
*2 Surround speakers need to be installed.
*3 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*4 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
*5 Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

❑ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p103)

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| Multich PCM | Direct |
| | Multich[*1] |
| | DSur |
| | DTS Neural:X |
| | THX Cinema[*2] |
| | THX Sel Cin[*3] |
| | TV Logic[*4] |
| | AllCh Stereo[*5] |
| | Full Mono[*5] |
| | T-D[*6] |

[*1] A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
[*2] Surround speakers need to be installed.
[*3] Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
[*4] Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
[*5] A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
[*6] Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DSD<br>• You cannot select any mode other than Direct, AllCh Stereo and Full Mono if the sampling rate is 5.6/11.2 MHz. | Direct |
| | DSD[*1 *2] |
| | DSur |
| | DTS Neural:X |
| | THX Cinema[*3] |
| | THX Sel Cin[*4] |
| | TV Logic[*5] |
| | AllCh Stereo[*6] |
| | Full Mono[*6] |
| | T-D[*7] |

[*1] Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural or 2 ch.
[*2] A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
[*3] Surround speakers need to be installed.
[*4] Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
[*5] Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
[*6] A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
[*7] Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| Atmos[*1] | Direct |
| | Atmos |
| | TV Logic |
| | AllCh Stereo |
| | Full Mono |
| | T-D[*2] |

[*1] With the firmware version before supporting Atmos 2.0, etc., you can select the DD+ or DTHD listening mode when surround back speakers or height speakers are not connected.
[*2] Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DD | Direct |
| | DD[*1 *2] |
| | DSur |
| | THX Cinema[*3] |
| | THX Sel Cin[*4] |
| | TV Logic[*5] |
| | AllCh Stereo[*6] |
| | Full Mono[*6] |
| | T-D[*7] |

[*1] Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
[*2] A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
[*3] Surround speakers need to be installed.
[*4] Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
[*5] Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
[*6] A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
[*7] Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

## ❑ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p103)

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DD+ | Direct |
| | DD+[*1] [*2] [*3] |
| | DSur |
| | THX Cinema[*4] |
| | THX Sel Cin[*5] |
| | TV Logic[*6] |
| | AllCh Stereo[*7] |
| | Full Mono[*7] |
| | T-D[*8] |

[*1] Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
[*2] A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
[*3] If the input source is Blu-ray Disc and the speaker layout is 5.1 ch or less, DD+ cannot be selected. Instead, the listening mode for DD can be selected.
[*4] Surround speakers need to be installed.
[*5] Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
[*6] Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
[*7] A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
[*8] Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DTHD | Direct |
| | DTHD[*1] [*2] |
| | DSur |
| | THX Cinema[*3] |
| | THX Sel Cin[*4] |
| | TV Logic[*5] |
| | AllCh Stereo[*6] |
| | Full Mono[*6] |
| | T-D[*7] |

[*1] Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
[*2] A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
[*3] Surround speakers need to be installed.
[*4] Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
[*5] Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
[*6] A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
[*7] Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DTS | Direct |
| | DTS[*1] [*2] |
| | DTS Neural:X[*3] |
| | THX Cinema[*4] |
| | THX Sel Cin[*5] |
| | TV Logic[*6] |
| | AllCh Stereo[*7] |
| | Full Mono[*7] |
| | T-D[*8] |

[*1] Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
[*2] A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
[*3] Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.
[*4] Surround speakers need to be installed.
[*5] Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
[*6] Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
[*7] A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
[*8] Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

## ❑ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes

( →p103)

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DTS 96/24 | Direct |
| | DTS 96/24*1 *2 |
| | DTS Neural:X*3 |
| | THX Cinema*4 |
| | THX Sel Cin*5 |
| | TV Logic*6 |
| | AllCh Stereo*7 |
| | Full Mono*7 |
| | T-D*8 |

*1 Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
*2 A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
*3 Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.
*4 Surround speakers need to be installed.
*5 Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
*6 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*7 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
*8 Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DTS Express | Direct |
| | DTS Express*1 *2 |
| | DTS Neural:X*3 |
| | THX Cinema*4 |
| | THX Sel Cin*5 |
| | TV Logic*6 |
| | AllCh Stereo*7 |
| | Full Mono*7 |
| | T-D*8 |

*1 Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
*2 A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
*3 Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.
*4 Surround speakers need to be installed.
*5 Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
*6 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*7 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
*8 Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DTS-HD HR | Direct |
| | DTS-HD HR*1 *2 |
| | DTS Neural:X*3 |
| | THX Cinema*4 |
| | THX Sel Cin*5 |
| | TV Logic*6 |
| | AllCh Stereo*7 |
| | Full Mono*7 |
| | T-D*8 |

*1 Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
*2 A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
*3 Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.
*4 Surround speakers need to be installed.
*5 Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
*6 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*7 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
*8 Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

## ❑ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p103)

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DTS-HD MSTR | Direct |
| | DTS-HD MSTR*1 *2 |
| | DTS Neural:X*3 |
| | THX Cinema*4 |
| | THX Sel Cin*5 |
| | TV Logic*6 |
| | AllCh Stereo*7 |
| | Full Mono*7 |
| | T-D*8 |

*1 Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
*2 A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
*3 Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.
*4 Surround speakers need to be installed.
*5 Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
*6 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*7 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
*8 Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DTS-ES | Direct |
| | DTS*1 |
| | ES Matrix*2 |
| | ES Discrete*2 |
| | DTS Neural:X |
| | THX Cinema*3 |
| | TV Logic*4 |
| | AllCh Stereo*5 |
| | Full Mono*5 |
| | T-D*6 |

*1 This can only be selected when no surround back speaker is connected.
*2 Surround back speakers need to be installed.
*3 Surround speakers need to be installed.
*4 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*5 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
*6 Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DTS:X | Direct |
| | DTS:X |
| | TV Logic*1 |
| | AllCh Stereo*2 |
| | Full Mono*2 |
| | T-D*3 |

*1 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*2 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
*3 Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

## ■ MUSIC button

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| Analog | Direct |
| | Stereo |
| | DSur |
| | DTS Neural:X |
| | THX Music*1 |
| | Orchestra*2 |
| | Unplugged*2 |
| | Studio-Mix*2 |
| | AllCh Stereo*3 |
| | Full Mono*3 |

*1 Surround speakers need to be installed.
*2 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*3 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.

❑ **Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p103)**

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| PCM<br>Music files (except DSD) | Direct |
| | Stereo |
| | DSur |
| | DTS Neural:X*1 |
| | THX Music*2 |
| | Orchestra*3 |
| | Unplugged*3 |
| | Studio-Mix*3 |
| | AllCh Stereo*4 |
| | Full Mono*4 |

*1 Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.
*2 Surround speakers need to be installed.
*3 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*4 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| Multich PCM | Direct |
| | Stereo |
| | Multich*1 |
| | DSur |
| | DTS Neural:X |
| | THX Music*2 |
| | THX Sel Mus*3 |
| | Orchestra*4 |
| | Unplugged*4 |
| | Studio-Mix*4 |
| | AllCh Stereo*5 |
| | Full Mono*5 |

*1 A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
*2 Surround speakers need to be installed.
*3 Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
*4 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*5 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DSD<br>• You cannot select any mode other than Direct, Stereo, AllCh Stereo and Full Mono if the sampling rate is 5.6/11.2 MHz. | Direct |
| | Stereo |
| | DSD*1 *2 |
| | DSur |
| | DTS Neural:X |
| | THX Music*3 |
| | THX Sel Mus*4 |
| | Orchestra*5 |
| | Unplugged*5 |
| | Studio-Mix*5 |
| | AllCh Stereo*6 |
| | Full Mono*6 |

*1 Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural or 2 ch.
*2 A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
*3 Surround speakers need to be installed.
*4 Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
*5 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*6 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.

## ❑ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p103)

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| Atmos*1 | Direct |
| | Stereo |
| | Atmos |
| | Orchestra |
| | Unplugged |
| | Studio-Mix |
| | AllCh Stereo |
| | Full Mono |

*1 With the firmware version before supporting Atmos 2.0, etc., you can select the DD+ or DTHD listening mode when surround back speakers or height speakers are not connected.

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DD | Direct |
| | Stereo |
| | DD*1 *2 |
| | DSur |
| | THX Music*3 |
| | THX Sel Mus*4 |
| | Orchestra*5 |
| | Unplugged*5 |
| | Studio-Mix*5 |
| | AllCh Stereo*6 |
| | Full Mono*6 |

*1 Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
*2 A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
*3 Surround speakers need to be installed.
*4 Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
*5 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*6 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DD+ | Direct |
| | Stereo |
| | DD+*1 *2 *3 |
| | DSur |
| | THX Music*4 |
| | THX Sel Mus*5 |
| | Orchestra*6 |
| | Unplugged*6 |
| | Studio-Mix*6 |
| | AllCh Stereo*7 |
| | Full Mono*7 |

*1 Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
*2 A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
*3 If the input source is Blu-ray Disc and the speaker layout is 5.1 ch or less, DD+ cannot be selected. Instead, the listening mode for DD can be selected.
*4 Surround speakers need to be installed.
*5 Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
*6 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*7 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DTHD | Direct |
| | Stereo |
| | DTHD*1 *2 |
| | DSur |
| | THX Music*3 |
| | THX Sel Mus*4 |
| | Orchestra*5 |
| | Unplugged*5 |
| | Studio-Mix*5 |
| | AllCh Stereo*6 |
| | Full Mono*6 |

*1 Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
*2 A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
*3 Surround speakers need to be installed.
*4 Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
*5 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*6 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.

## ❑ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p103)

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DTS | Direct |
| | Stereo |
| | DTS[*1] [*2] |
| | DTS Neural:X[*3] |
| | THX Music[*4] |
| | THX Sel Mus[*5] |
| | Orchestra[*6] |
| | Unplugged[*6] |
| | Studio-Mix[*6] |
| | AllCh Stereo[*7] |
| | Full Mono[*7] |

[*1] Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
[*2] A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
[*3] Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.
[*4] Surround speakers need to be installed.
[*5] Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
[*6] Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
[*7] A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DTS 96/24 | Direct |
| | Stereo |
| | DTS 96/24[*1] [*2] |
| | DTS Neural:X[*3] |
| | THX Music[*4] |
| | THX Sel Mus[*5] |
| | Orchestra[*6] |
| | Unplugged[*6] |
| | Studio-Mix[*6] |
| | AllCh Stereo[*7] |
| | Full Mono[*7] |

[*1] Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
[*2] A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
[*3] Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.
[*4] Surround speakers need to be installed.
[*5] Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
[*6] Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
[*7] A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DTS Express | Direct |
| | Stereo |
| | DTS Express[*1] [*2] |
| | DTS Neural:X[*3] |
| | THX Music[*4] |
| | THX Sel Mus[*5] |
| | Orchestra[*6] |
| | Unplugged[*6] |
| | Studio-Mix[*6] |
| | AllCh Stereo[*7] |
| | Full Mono[*7] |

[*1] Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
[*2] A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
[*3] Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.
[*4] Surround speakers need to be installed.
[*5] Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
[*6] Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
[*7] A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.

## ❑ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p103)

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DTS-HD HR | Direct |
| | Stereo |
| | DTS-HD HR[*1] [*2] |
| | DTS Neural:X[*3] |
| | THX Music[*4] |
| | THX Sel Mus[*5] |
| | Orchestra[*6] |
| | Unplugged[*6] |
| | Studio-Mix[*6] |
| | AllCh Stereo[*7] |
| | Full Mono[*7] |

[*1] Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
[*2] A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
[*3] Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.
[*4] Surround speakers need to be installed.
[*5] Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
[*6] Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
[*7] A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DTS-HD MSTR | Direct |
| | Stereo |
| | DTS-HD MSTR[*1] [*2] |
| | DTS Neural:X[*3] |
| | THX Music[*4] |
| | THX Sel Mus[*5] |
| | Orchestra[*6] |
| | Unplugged[*6] |
| | Studio-Mix[*6] |
| | AllCh Stereo[*7] |
| | Full Mono[*7] |

[*1] Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
[*2] A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
[*3] Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.
[*4] Surround speakers need to be installed.
[*5] Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
[*6] Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
[*7] A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DTS-ES | Direct |
| | Stereo |
| | DTS[*1] |
| | ES Matrix[*2] |
| | ES Discrete[*2] |
| | DTS Neural:X |
| | THX Music[*3] |
| | Orchestra[*4] |
| | Unplugged[*4] |
| | Studio-Mix[*4] |
| | AllCh Stereo[*5] |
| | Full Mono[*5] |

[*1] This can only be selected when no surround back speaker is connected.
[*2] Surround back speakers need to be installed.
[*3] Surround speakers need to be installed.
[*4] Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
[*5] A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.

## ❑ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p103)

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DTS:X | Direct |
| | Stereo |
| | DTS:X |
| | Orchestra*1 |
| | Unplugged*1 |
| | Studio-Mix*1 |
| | AllCh Stereo*2 |
| | Full Mono*2 |

*1 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*2 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.

## ■ GAME button

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| Analog | Direct |
| | DSur |
| | DTS Neural:X |
| | THX Games*1 |
| | Game-RPG*2 |
| | Game-Action*2 |
| | Game-Rock*2 |
| | Game-Sports*2 |
| | AllCh Stereo*3 |
| | Full Mono*3 |
| | T-D*4 |

*1 Surround speakers need to be installed.
*2 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*3 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
*4 Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| PCM<br>Music files (except DSD) | Direct |
| | DSur |
| | DTS Neural:X*1 |
| | THX Games*2 |
| | Game-RPG*3 |
| | Game-Action*3 |
| | Game-Rock*3 |
| | Game-Sports*3 |
| | AllCh Stereo*4 |
| | Full Mono*4 |
| | T-D*5 |

*1 Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.
*2 Surround speakers need to be installed.
*3 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*4 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
*5 Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

❑ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p103)

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| Multich PCM | Direct |
| | Multich*1 |
| | DSur |
| | DTS Neural:X |
| | THX Games*2 |
| | THX Sel Gam*3 |
| | Game-RPG*4 |
| | Game-Action*4 |
| | Game-Rock*4 |
| | Game-Sports*4 |
| | AllCh Stereo*5 |
| | Full Mono*5 |
| | T-D*6 |

*1 A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
*2 Surround speakers need to be installed.
*3 Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
*4 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*5 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
*6 Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DSD<br>• You cannot select any mode other than Direct, AllCh Stereo and Full Mono if the sampling rate is 5.6/11.2 MHz. | Direct |
| | DSD*1 *2 |
| | DSur |
| | DTS Neural:X |
| | THX Games*3 |
| | THX Sel Gam*4 |
| | Game-RPG*5 |
| | Game-Action*5 |
| | Game-Rock*5 |
| | Game-Sports*5 |
| | AllCh Stereo*6 |
| | Full Mono*6 |
| | T-D*7 |

*1 Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural or 2 ch.
*2 A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
*3 Surround speakers need to be installed.
*4 Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
*5 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*6 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
*7 Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| Atmos*1 | Direct |
| | Atmos |
| | Game-RPG |
| | Game-Action |
| | Game-Rock |
| | Game-Sports |
| | AllCh Stereo |
| | Full Mono |
| | T-D*2 |

*1 With the firmware version before supporting Atmos 2.0, etc., you can select the DD+ or DTHD listening mode when surround back speakers or height speakers are not connected.
*2 Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

## ❑ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p103)

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DD | Direct |
| | DD[*1] [*2] |
| | DSur |
| | THX Games[*3] |
| | THX Sel Gam[*4] |
| | Game-RPG[*5] |
| | Game-Action[*5] |
| | Game-Rock[*5] |
| | Game-Sports[*5] |
| | AllCh Stereo[*6] |
| | Full Mono[*6] |
| | T-D[*7] |

[*1] Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
[*2] A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
[*3] Surround speakers need to be installed.
[*4] Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
[*5] Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
[*6] A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
[*7] Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DD+ | Direct |
| | DD+[*1] [*2] [*3] |
| | DSur |
| | THX Games[*4] |
| | THX Sel Gam[*5] |
| | Game-RPG[*6] |
| | Game-Action[*6] |
| | Game-Rock[*6] |
| | Game-Sports[*6] |
| | AllCh Stereo[*7] |
| | Full Mono[*7] |
| | T-D[*8] |

[*1] Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
[*2] A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
[*3] If the input source is Blu-ray Disc and the speaker layout is 5.1 ch or less, DD+ cannot be selected. Instead, the listening mode for DD can be selected.
[*4] Surround speakers need to be installed.
[*5] Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
[*6] Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
[*7] A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
[*8] Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DTHD | Direct |
| | DTHD[*1] [*2] |
| | DSur |
| | THX Games[*3] |
| | THX Sel Gam[*4] |
| | Game-RPG[*5] |
| | Game-Action[*5] |
| | Game-Rock[*5] |
| | Game-Sports[*5] |
| | AllCh Stereo[*6] |
| | Full Mono[*6] |
| | T-D[*7] |

[*1] Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
[*2] A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
[*3] Surround speakers need to be installed.
[*4] Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
[*5] Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
[*6] A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
[*7] Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

## ❑ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes

( →p103)

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DTS | Direct |
| | DTS[*1 *2] |
| | DTS Neural:X[*3] |
| | THX Games[*4] |
| | THX Sel Gam[*5] |
| | Game-RPG[*6] |
| | Game-Action[*6] |
| | Game-Rock[*6] |
| | Game-Sports[*6] |
| | AllCh Stereo[*7] |
| | Full Mono[*7] |
| | T-D[*8] |

[*1] Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
[*2] A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
[*3] Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.
[*4] Surround speakers need to be installed.
[*5] Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
[*6] Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
[*7] A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
[*8] Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DTS 96/24 | Direct |
| | DTS 96/24[*1 *2] |
| | DTS Neural:X[*3] |
| | THX Games[*4] |
| | THX Sel Gam[*5] |
| | Game-RPG[*6] |
| | Game-Action[*6] |
| | Game-Rock[*6] |
| | Game-Sports[*6] |
| | AllCh Stereo[*7] |
| | Full Mono[*7] |
| | T-D[*8] |

[*1] Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
[*2] A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
[*3] Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.
[*4] Surround speakers need to be installed.
[*5] Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
[*6] Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
[*7] A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
[*8] Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DTS Express | Direct |
| | DTS Express[*1 *2] |
| | DTS Neural:X[*3] |
| | THX Games[*4] |
| | THX Sel Gam[*5] |
| | Game-RPG[*6] |
| | Game-Action[*6] |
| | Game-Rock[*6] |
| | Game-Sports[*6] |
| | AllCh Stereo[*7] |
| | Full Mono[*7] |
| | T-D[*8] |

[*1] Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
[*2] A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
[*3] Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.
[*4] Surround speakers need to be installed.
[*5] Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
[*6] Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
[*7] A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
[*8] Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

## ❑ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes

( →p103)

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DTS-HD HR | Direct |
| | DTS-HD HR[*1] [*2] |
| | DTS Neural:X[*3] |
| | THX Games[*4] |
| | THX Sel Gam[*5] |
| | Game-RPG[*6] |
| | Game-Action[*6] |
| | Game-Rock[*6] |
| | Game-Sports[*6] |
| | AllCh Stereo[*7] |
| | Full Mono[*7] |
| | T-D[*8] |

[*1] Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
[*2] A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
[*3] Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.
[*4] Surround speakers need to be installed.
[*5] Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
[*6] Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
[*7] A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
[*8] Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DTS-HD MSTR | Direct |
| | DTS-HD MSTR[*1] [*2] |
| | DTS Neural:X[*3] |
| | THX Games[*4] |
| | THX Sel Gam[*5] |
| | Game-RPG[*6] |
| | Game-Action[*6] |
| | Game-Rock[*6] |
| | Game-Sports[*6] |
| | AllCh Stereo[*7] |
| | Full Mono[*7] |
| | T-D[*8] |

[*1] Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
[*2] A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
[*3] Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.
[*4] Surround speakers need to be installed.
[*5] Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
[*6] Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
[*7] A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
[*8] Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DTS-ES | Direct |
| | DTS[*1] |
| | ES Matrix[*2] |
| | ES Discrete[*2] |
| | DTS Neural:X |
| | THX Games[*3] |
| | Game-RPG[*4] |
| | Game-Action[*4] |
| | Game-Rock[*4] |
| | Game-Sports[*4] |
| | AllCh Stereo[*5] |
| | Full Mono[*5] |
| | T-D[*6] |

[*1] This can only be selected when no surround back speaker is connected.
[*2] Surround back speakers need to be installed.
[*3] Surround speakers need to be installed.
[*4] Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
[*5] A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
[*6] Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

## ❑ Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes

( →p103)

| Input Format | Listening Mode |
|---|---|
| DTS:X | Direct |
| | DTS:X |
| | Game-RPG*1 |
| | Game-Action*1 |
| | Game-Rock*1 |
| | Game-Sports*1 |
| | AllCh Stereo*2 |
| | Full Mono*2 |
| | T-D*3 |

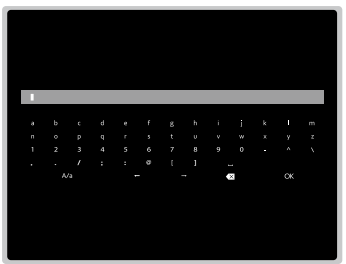
*1 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*2 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
*3 Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

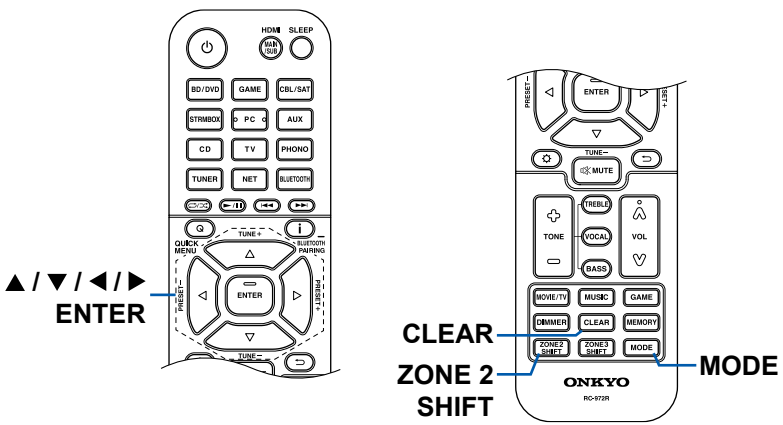
❑ **Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes ( →p103)**

# Inputting Characters

You can input characters or symbols on the keyboard displayed on the TV screen such as when inputting a password for Wi-Fi Setup ( →p146) or naming a preset radio station ( →p143).

1. Select a character or symbol with the cursors ▲ / ▼ / ◀ / ▶ on the remote controller and press the ENTER button.
2. When saving characters after input, select "OK" and press the ENTER button.






- Select "A/a" to switch between upper and lower cases. (Can also be switched with the MODE button on the remote controller.)
- To enter a space, select "␣".
- To delete a character on the left of the cursor, select "⌫".
- To delete all the input characters, press the CLEAR button on the remote control.
- On the ZONE 2 playback screen, operate the remote controller while pressing and holding the ZONE 2 SHIFT button. To delete all the input characters, only press the CLEAR button without pressing the ZONE 2 SHIFT button.

# Setup Menu

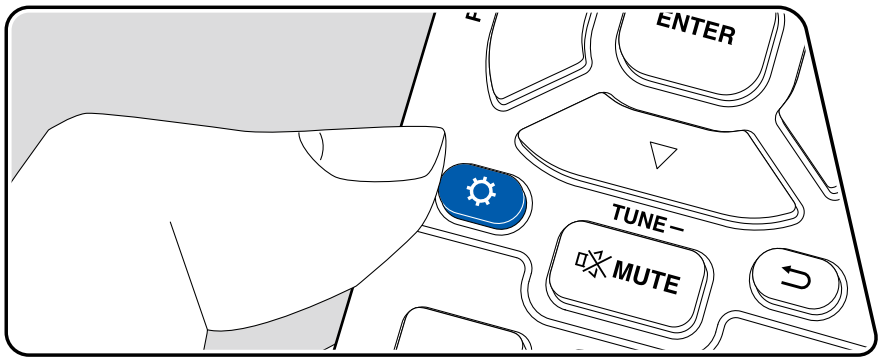
## Menu list

You can configure advanced settings to have a more enjoyable experience with this unit. For operation details, refer to "Menu operations" ( →p130).

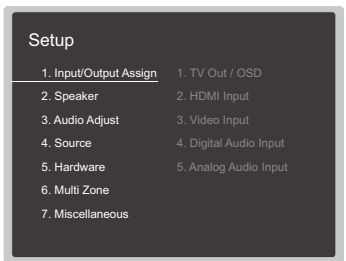
| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **1. Input/Output Assign** | **1. TV Out / OSD** | Make settings for TV output and On-Screen Displays (OSD) that appear on the TV. | p131 |
| | **2. HDMI Input** | Change input assignment between the input selectors and HDMI IN jacks. | p132 |
| | **3. Video Input** | Change input assignment between the input selectors and COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks and the VIDEO IN jacks. | p133 |
| | **4. Digital Audio Input** | Change input assignment between the input selectors and DIGITAL IN COAXIAL/OPTICAL jacks. | p134 |
| | **5. Analog Audio Input** | Change input assignment between the input selectors and AUDIO IN jacks. | p134 |
| **2. Speaker** | **1. Configuration** | Change the settings of connection environment of the speakers. | p135 |
| | **2. Crossover** | Change the settings of crossover frequencies. | p136 |
| | **3. Distance** | Set the distance from each speaker to the listening position. | p137 |
| | **4. Level Calibration** | Adjust the volume level of each speaker. | p138 |
| | **5. Dolby Enabled Speaker** | Change the settings of Dolby Enabled Speakers. | p139 |
| | **6. Equalizer Settings** | You can adjust the output volume of the range for each connected speaker. | p139 |
| | **7. THX Audio** | Change the THX Audio settings. | p140 |
| | **8. Speaker Virtualizer** | The Speaker Virtualizer function can be switched between On and Off. | p141 |
| **3. Audio Adjust** | **1. Multiplex/Mono** | Change the settings of multiplex audio playback. | p141 |
| | **2. Dolby** | Change the setting of when Dolby signals are input. | p142 |
| | **3. DTS** | Change the setting of when DTS signals are input. | p142 |
| | **4. LFE Level** | Set the low-frequency effect (LFE) level for Dolby Digital series, DTS series, Multichannel PCM, and DSD signals. | p142 |
| | **5. Volume** | Change the Volume settings. | p143 |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **4. Source** | **1. My Input Volume** | Set a volume value for each input selector. | p143 |
| | **2. Name Edit** | Set an easy name for each input. | p143 |
| | **Audio Select** | Select the prioritized input terminal when multiple audio sources are connected to one input selector. | p144 |
| | **Video Select** | When "TUNER", "NET", or "BLUETOOTH" input is selected, you can set the input from which video is displayed on the TV. | p144 |
| **5. Hardware** | **1. HDMI** | Change the settings for the HDMI functions. | p145 |
| | **2. Network** | Change the settings for the Network functions. | p146 |
| | **3. Bluetooth** | Change the settings for the Bluetooth function. | p148 |
| | **4. Power Management** | Change the settings for the power-save function. | p149 |
| | **5. 12V Trigger** | Change the settings for 12V Trigger OUT jack. | p150 |
| | **6. Works with SONOS** | Change the settings to connect with the Sonos Connect. | p150 |
| **6. Multi Zone** | **1. Zone 2** | Change the settings for Zone 2. | p152 |
| | **2. Zone 3** | Change the settings for Zone 3. | p152 |
| | **3. Remote Play Zone** | Change the settings for remote play. | p152 |
| **7. Miscellaneous** | **1. Tuner** | Change the frequency step for the tuner. | p153 |
| | **2. Remote ID** | Change the remote controller ID. | p153 |
| | **3. Firmware Update** | Change the settings for Firmware Update. | p153 |
| | **4. Initial Setup** | Make the initial setup from the setup menu. | p153 |
| | **5. Lock** | Lock the Setup menu so that the settings cannot be changed. | p153 |
| | **6. Factory Reset** | All the settings are restored to factory defaults. | p154 |

# Menu operations




Use the on-screen displays (OSD) that appear on the TV to make the settings.
Press ☼ on the remote controller to display the Setup menu.




Select the item with the cursors ▲ / ▼ of the remote controller, and press the ENTER button to confirm your selection.
Use the cursors ◀ / ▶ to change the default values.

- To return to the previous screen, press the ⮌ button.
- To exit the settings, press the ☼ button.

# 1. Input/Output Assign

## ■ 1. TV Out / OSD

Make settings for TV output and On-Screen Displays (OSD) that appear on the TV.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| HDMI Out | MAIN | Select the HDMI jack to be connected with the TV.<br>"MAIN": When connecting the TV to the HDMI OUT MAIN jack<br>"SUB": When connecting the TV to the HDMI OUT SUB jack<br>"MAIN+SUB": When connecting to both the MAIN and SUB jacks<br>• If devices with different resolutions are connected to HDMI OUT MAIN jack and SUB jack, images are output with the lower resolution. |
| Dolby Vision | MAIN | To output Dolby Vision video from the player to a TV that supports Dolby Vision, select either the HDMI OUT MAIN jack or HDMI OUT SUB jack to which the Dolby Vision-supported TV is connected. This setting is only necessary if you have set "HDMI Out" to "MAIN+SUB" and you have connected a TV to both the MAIN and SUB jacks.<br>"MAIN": To output Dolby Vision video to a Dolby Vision-supported TV connected to the HDMI OUT MAIN jack.<br>"SUB": To output Dolby Vision video to a Dolby Vision-supported TV connected to the HDMI OUT SUB jack.<br>• After selecting "MAIN" or "SUB", if the video on the TV does not appear correctly, set this to "Off". |
| 1080p -> 4K Upscaling | Off | When a TV supporting 4K is used, video signals input with 1080p can be automatically output with 4K.<br>"Off": When this function is not used<br>"Auto": When this function is used<br>If your TV does not support 4K, set it to "Off".<br>• If the TV does not support the 4K resolution with the same frequency as the frequency of HDMI input video signals, upscaling to 4K is not correctly performed. Check the frequency of 4K resolution supported by the TV, and change the resolution of the video signals input from the AV component. |
| Super Resolution | 2 | When "1080p -> 4K Upscaling" is set to "Auto", select the correction level of the input video signals from "Off" and "1" (weak) to "3" (strong). |
| Zone 2 HDMI | Not Use | Make the setting when you output to the Zone 2 TV connected to the HDMI OUT ZONE 2/SUB jack.<br>"Use": Enable this function<br>"Not Use": Disable this function<br>• When video and audio via HDMI input are output to ZONE 2, set it to "Use". |
| OSD Language | English | Select the on-screen display language from the following.<br>(North American models) English, German, French, Spanish, Italian, Dutch, Swedish<br>(Asian models) English, German, French, Spanish, Italian, Dutch, Swedish, Russian, Chinese |
| Impose OSD | On | Set whether or not to display information such as volume adjustment or switching of input on the TV screen.<br>"On": OSD is displayed on the TV.<br>"Off": OSD is not displayed on the TV.<br>• OSD may not be displayed depending on the input signal even if "On" is selected. In this case, change the resolution of the connected device. |

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Mini Player OSD | Always On | You can display on the TV the images from another input selected last while playing the audio from NET or BLUETOOTH input. After switching the input to NET or BLUETOOTH, play the images and audio. And then when you press MODE on the remote controller, the image is displayed in full-screen mode, and the audio information (Mini Player) for NET or BLUETOOTH is displayed in the corner of the screen. You can set whether to always display this Mini Player on the screen.<br>"Always On": The Mini Player is always displayed.<br>"Auto Off": The Mini Player turns off automatically in 30 seconds after displayed. If operation such as changing the volume is performed, it is displayed again for 30 seconds.<br>• Each time the MODE button is pressed, the image display/non-display can be switched.<br>• This setting cannot be selected if "Impose OSD" is set to "Off".<br>• This function cannot be used when "OSD Language" is set to Chinese. (Asian models) |
| Screen Saver | 3 minutes | Set the time to start the screen saver.<br>Select a value from "3 minutes", "5 minutes", "10 minutes" and "Off". |

## ■ 2. HDMI Input

Change input assignment between the input selectors and HDMI IN jacks.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| BD/DVD | HDMI 1 (HDCP 2.2) | "HDMI 1 (HDCP 2.2)" to "HDMI 6 (HDCP 2.2)": Assign a desired HDMI IN jack to the BD/DVD button. If you do not assign a jack, select "---". To select an HDMI IN jack already assigned to another input selector, change its setting to "---" first. |
| GAME | HDMI 2 (HDCP 2.2) | "HDMI 1 (HDCP 2.2)" to "HDMI 6 (HDCP 2.2)": Assign a desired HDMI IN jack to the GAME button. If you do not assign a jack, select "---". To select an HDMI IN jack already assigned to another input selector, change its setting to "---" first. |
| CBL/SAT | HDMI 3 (HDCP 2.2) | "HDMI 1 (HDCP 2.2)" to "HDMI 6 (HDCP 2.2)": Assign a desired HDMI IN jack to the CBL/SAT button. If you do not assign a jack, select "---". To select an HDMI IN jack already assigned to another input selector, change its setting to "---" first. |
| STRM BOX | HDMI 4 (HDCP 2.2) | "HDMI 1 (HDCP 2.2)" to "HDMI 6 (HDCP 2.2)": Assign a desired HDMI IN jack to the STRM BOX button. If you do not assign a jack, select "---". To select an HDMI IN jack already assigned to another input selector, change its setting to "---" first. |
| PC | HDMI 5 (HDCP 2.2) | "HDMI 1 (HDCP 2.2)" to "HDMI 6 (HDCP 2.2)": Assign a desired HDMI IN jack to the PC button. If you do not assign a jack, select "---". To select an HDMI IN jack already assigned to another input selector, change its setting to "---" first. |
| CD | --- | "HDMI 1 (HDCP 2.2)" to "HDMI 6 (HDCP 2.2)": Assign a desired HDMI IN jack to the CD button. If you do not assign a jack, select "---". To select an HDMI IN jack already assigned to another input selector, change its setting to "---" first. |

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| TV | --- | "HDMI 1 (HDCP 2.2)" to "HDMI 6 (HDCP 2.2)": Assign a desired HDMI IN jack to the TV button. If you do not assign a jack, select "---". To select an HDMI IN jack already assigned to another input selector, change its setting to "---" first. |
| PHONO | --- | "HDMI 1 (HDCP 2.2)" to "HDMI 6 (HDCP 2.2)": Assign a desired HDMI IN jack to the PHONO button. If you do not assign a jack, select "---". To select an HDMI IN jack already assigned to another input selector, change its setting to "---" first. |

## ■ 3. Video Input

Change input assignment between the input selectors and COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks and the VIDEO IN jacks. If you do not assign a jack, select "---".

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| BD/DVD | COMPONENT | "COMPONENT": Assign the COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks to the BD/DVD button.<br>"VIDEO 1", "VIDEO 2": Assign a desired VIDEO IN jack to the BD/DVD button. |
| GAME | --- | "COMPONENT": Assign the COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks to the GAME button.<br>"VIDEO 1", "VIDEO 2": Assign a desired VIDEO IN jack to the GAME button. |
| CBL/SAT | VIDEO 1 | "COMPONENT": Assign the COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks to the CBL/SAT button.<br>"VIDEO 1", "VIDEO 2": Assign a desired VIDEO IN jack to the CBL/SAT button. |
| STRM BOX | VIDEO 2 | "COMPONENT": Assign the COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks to the STRM BOX button.<br>"VIDEO 1", "VIDEO 2": Assign a desired VIDEO IN jack to the STRM BOX button. |
| PC | --- | "COMPONENT": Assign the COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks to the PC button.<br>"VIDEO 1", "VIDEO 2": Assign a desired VIDEO IN jack to the PC button. |
| CD | --- | "COMPONENT": Assign the COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks to the CD button.<br>"VIDEO 1", "VIDEO 2": Assign a desired VIDEO IN jack to the CD button. |
| TV | --- | "COMPONENT": Assign the COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks to the TV button.<br>"VIDEO 1", "VIDEO 2": Assign a desired VIDEO IN jack to the TV button. |
| PHONO | --- | "COMPONENT": Assign the COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks to the PHONO button.<br>"VIDEO 1", "VIDEO 2": Assign a desired VIDEO IN jack to the PHONO button. |

## ■ 4. Digital Audio Input

Change input assignment between the input selectors and DIGITAL IN COAXIAL/ OPTICAL jacks. If you do not assign a jack, select "---".

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| BD/DVD | COAXIAL | "COAXIAL", "OPTICAL": Assign a desired DIGITAL IN jack to the BD/DVD button. |
| GAME | --- | "COAXIAL", "OPTICAL": Assign a desired DIGITAL IN jack to the GAME button. |
| CBL/SAT | --- | "COAXIAL", "OPTICAL": Assign a desired DIGITAL IN jack to the CBL/SAT button. |
| STRM BOX | --- | "COAXIAL", "OPTICAL": Assign a desired DIGITAL IN jack to the STRM BOX button. |
| PC | --- | "COAXIAL", "OPTICAL": Assign a desired DIGITAL IN jack to the PC button. |
| CD | --- | "COAXIAL", "OPTICAL": Assign a desired DIGITAL IN jack to the CD button. |
| TV | OPTICAL | "COAXIAL", "OPTICAL": Assign a desired DIGITAL IN jack to the TV button. |
| PHONO | --- | "COAXIAL", "OPTICAL": Assign a desired DIGITAL IN jack to the PHONO button. |

- Supported sampling rates for PCM signals (stereo, mono) from a digital input are 32 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz/16bit, 20bit, and 24bit.

## ■ 5. Analog Audio Input

CChange input assignment between the input selectors and AUDIO IN jacks. If you do not assign a jack, select "---".

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| BD/DVD | AUDIO 1 | "AUDIO 1" to "AUDIO 6": Assign a desired AUDIO IN jack to the BD/DVD button. |
| GAME | AUDIO 2 | "AUDIO 1" to "AUDIO 6": Assign a desired AUDIO IN jack to the GAME button. |
| CBL/SAT | AUDIO 3 | "AUDIO 1" to "AUDIO 6": Assign a desired AUDIO IN jack to the CBL/SAT button. |
| STRM BOX | AUDIO 4 | "AUDIO 1" to "AUDIO 6": Assign a desired AUDIO IN jack to the STRM BOX button. |
| PC | --- | "AUDIO 1" to "AUDIO 6": Assign a desired AUDIO IN jack to the PC button. |
| CD | AUDIO 5 | "AUDIO 1" to "AUDIO 6": Assign a desired AUDIO IN jack to the CD button. |
| TV | AUDIO 6 | "AUDIO 1" to "AUDIO 6": Assign a desired AUDIO IN jack to the TV button. |
| PHONO | PHONO | The setting cannot be changed. |

# 2. Speaker

## ■ 1. Configuration

Change the settings of connection environment of the speakers.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Speaker Channels | 7.1.2 ch | Select "2.1 ch", "3.1 ch", "4.1 ch", "5.1 ch", "6.1 ch", "7.1 ch", "2.1.2 ch", "3.1.2 ch", "4.1.2 ch", "5.1.2 ch", "6.1.2 ch", "7.1.2 ch", "4.1.4 ch" or "5.1.4 ch" to suit the number of speaker channels connected. |
| Subwoofer | Yes | Set whether a subwoofer is connected or not.<br>"Yes": When a subwoofer is connected<br>"No": When a subwoofer is not connected |
| Height 1 Speaker | Top Middle | Set the speaker type if height speakers are connected to the HEIGHT 1 terminals. Select "Top Middle", "Top Rear", "Rear High", "Dolby Speaker (Front)", "Dolby Speaker (Surr)", "Dolby Speaker (Back)", "Front High" or "Top Front" according to the type and layout of the connected speakers.<br>• This setting cannot be selected under any of following conditions. Set the height speakers type to "Height 2 Speaker".<br>– "Bi-Amp" is set to "Yes"<br>– When "Speaker Channels" is set to "2.1.2 ch", "3.1.2 ch", "4.1.2 ch " or "5.1.2 ch", and "Zone Speaker" is set to "Zone 2"<br>• When two sets of height speakers are being used, "Top Rear", "Rear High", "Dolby Speaker (Surr)", and "Dolby Speaker (Back)" cannot be selected.<br>• "Dolby Speaker (Surr)" and "Dolby Speaker (Back)" can only be selected when surround speakers or surround back speakers are being used, respectively. You can check speakers that you are using on the figure displayed in "Speaker Channels".<br>• If an item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check that the settings in "Speaker Channels" matches the number of connected channels. |
| Height 2 Speaker | Rear High | Set the speaker type if height speakers are connected to the HEIGHT 2 terminals. Select "Front High", "Top Front", "Top Middle", "Top Rear", "Rear High", "Dolby Speaker (Front)" or "Dolby Speaker (Surr)" according to the type and layout of the connected speakers. However, the options selectable for the "Height 1 Speaker" the are as follows.<br>If "Height 1 Speaker" is set to "Front High": Select from "Top Middle", "Top Rear", "Rear High" or "Dolby Speaker (Surr)".<br>If "Height 1 Speaker" is set to "Top Front" or "Dolby Speaker (Front)": Select from "Top Rear", "Rear High" or "Dolby Speaker (Surr)".<br>If "Height 1 Speaker" is set to "Top Middle": Fixed to "Rear High".<br>• "Dolby Speaker (Surr)" can only be selected when surround speakers are being used. You can check speakers that you are using on the figure displayed in "Speaker Channels".<br>• If an item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check that the settings in "Speaker Channels" matches the number of connected channels. |
| Zone Speaker | No | Set whether speakers are connected to Zone 2 or Zone 3 speaker terminals.<br>"Zone 2": When speakers are connected to Zone 2 speaker terminals<br>"Zone 2/Zone 3": When connecting speaker to both ZONE 2 speaker terminal and ZONE 3 speaker terminals.<br>• This setting cannot be selected under any of following conditions.<br>– When the surround back speakers are used<br>– When 2 sets of height speakers are used<br>"No": When speakers are not connected to Zone 2 speaker terminals<br>• This setting cannot be selected when "Zone 2 Lineout" is set to "Zone B". |

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Zone 2 Lineout | Zone 2 | Set an output destination of the audio output from ZONE 2 LINE OUT/ZONE B LINE OUT jack.<br>"Zone 2": When connecting a pre-main amplifier in a separate room (ZONE 2)<br>"Zone B": When connecting a pre-main amplifier, transmitter of wireless headphones, etc. to ZONE B<br>• This setting is fixed to "Zone 2" when "Zone Speaker" is set to "Zone 2" or "Zone 2/Zone 3". |
| Bi-Amp | No | Set whether the front speakers are bi-amp connected.<br>"No": When front speakers are not bi-amp connected<br>"Yes": When front speakers are bi-amp connected<br>• This setting will be set to "No" in either of following cases.<br>– When 2 sets of height speakers are used<br>– When surround back speakers and height speakers are being used at the same time.<br>– When "Zone Speaker" is set to "Zone 2" or "Zone 2/Zone 3" |
| Speaker Impedance | 6 ohms or above | Set the impedance (Ω) of the connected speakers.<br>"4ohms": When any of the connected speakers have 4 Ω or more to less than 6 Ω impedance<br>"6 ohms or above": When all the connected speakers have an impedance of 6 Ω or more<br>• For impedance, check the indications on the back of the speakers or their instruction manual. |

## ■ 2. Crossover

Change the settings of crossover frequencies.

- As for the THX-certified speakers, the following settings are recommended.
  - – Crossover frequency → "80 Hz (THX)"
  - – "LPF of LFE" → "80 Hz"
  - – "Double Bass" → "Off"

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Front | 80 Hz (THX) | Select the crossover frequency from "40 Hz" to "200 Hz" to start outputting frequencies for each channel.<br>"Full Band": Full band will be output.<br>• If "Configuration" - "Subwoofer" is set to "No", "Front" is fixed to "Full Band", and the low pitched range of the other channels is output from the front speakers. Refer to the instruction manual of your speakers to make the setting. |
| Center | 80 Hz (THX) | Select the crossover frequency from "40 Hz" to "200 Hz" to start outputting frequencies for each channel.<br>"Full Band": Full band will be output.<br>• "Full Band" can be selected only when "Front" is set to "Full Band".<br>• If the item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check if the setting in "Configuration" - "Speaker Channels" matches the number of connected channels. |
| Height 1 | 80 Hz (THX) | Select the crossover frequency from "40 Hz" to "200 Hz" to start outputting frequencies for each channel.<br>"Full Band": Full band will be output.<br>• "Full Band" can be selected only when "Front" is set to "Full Band".<br>• If the item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check if the setting in "Configuration" - "Speaker Channels" matches the number of connected channels. |

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Height 2 | 80 Hz (THX) | Select the crossover frequency from "40 Hz" to "200 Hz" to start outputting frequencies for each channel.<br>"Full Band": Full band will be output.<br>• "Full Band" can be selected only when "Front" is set to "Full Band".<br>• If the item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check if the setting in "Configuration" - "Speaker Channels" matches the number of connected channels. |
| Surround | 80 Hz (THX) | Select the crossover frequency from "40 Hz" to "200 Hz" to start outputting frequencies for each channel.<br>"Full Band": Full band will be output.<br>• "Full Band" can be selected only when "Front" is set to "Full Band".<br>• If the item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check if the setting in "Configuration" - "Speaker Channels" matches the number of connected channels. |
| Surround Back | 80 Hz (THX) | Select the crossover frequency from "40 Hz" to "200 Hz" to start outputting frequencies for each channel.<br>"Full Band": Full band will be output.<br>• "Full Band" can be selected only when "Surround" is set to "Full Band".<br>• If the item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check if the setting in "Configuration" - "Speaker Channels" matches the number of connected channels. |
| LPF of LFE | 120 Hz | Set the low-pass filter for LFE (low-frequency effect) signals in order to pass only the lower frequency signals than the set value, and thus cancel unwanted noises. The low-pass filter is effective only on sources with LFE channel.<br>The value from "80 Hz" to "120 Hz" can be set.<br>"Off": When this function is not used |
| Double Bass | On | This can be selected only when "Configuration" - "Subwoofer" is set to "Yes" and "Front" is set to "Full Band".<br>Bass output is boosted by feeding bass sounds from the front right and left, and center speakers to the subwoofer.<br>"On": Bass output is boosted.<br>"Off": Bass output is not boosted.<br>• This function is not automatically set even if AccuEQ Room Calibration is performed. |

## ■ 3. Distance

Set the distance from each speaker to the listening position.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Front Left | 12.0 ft/3.60 m | Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position. |
| Center | 12.0 ft/3.60 m | Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position. |
| Front Right | 12.0 ft/3.60 m | Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position. |
| Height 1 Left | 9.0 ft/2.70 m | Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position.<br>• Depending on the use of the ZONE speakers, it may not be possible to select this setting. |
| Height 1 Right | 9.0 ft/2.70 m | Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position.<br>• Depending on the use of the ZONE speakers, it may not be possible to select this setting. |
| Height 2 Left | 9.0 ft/2.70 m | Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position.<br>• Depending on the use of the ZONE speakers, it may not be possible to select this setting. |
| Height 2 Right | 9.0 ft/2.70 m | Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position.<br>• Depending on the use of the ZONE speakers, it may not be possible to select this setting. |

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Surround Right | 7.0 ft/2.10 m | Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position. |
| Surr Back Right | 7.0 ft/2.10 m | Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position.<br>• Depending on the use of the ZONE speakers, it may not be possible to select this setting. |
| Surr Back Left | 7.0 ft/2.10 m | Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position.<br>• Depending on the use of the ZONE speakers, it may not be possible to select this setting. |
| Surround Left | 7.0 ft/2.10 m | Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position. |
| Subwoofer | 12.0 ft/3.60 m | Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position. |

- Default values vary depending on the regions.
- The unit of distance can be changed by pressing the MODE button on the remote controller. When using the unit "feet", the setting is available in increments of 0.1 ft from 0.1 ft to 30.0 ft. When using the unit "meter", the setting is available in increments of 0.03 m from 0.03 m to 9.00 m.

## ■ 4. Level Calibration

Adjust the volume level of each speaker.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Front Left | 0.0 dB | Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level. |
| Center | 0.0 dB | Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level. |
| Front Right | 0.0 dB | Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level. |
| Height 1 Left | 0.0 dB | Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level.<br>• Depending on the use of the ZONE speakers, it may not be possible to select this setting. |
| Height 1 Right | 0.0 dB | Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level.<br>• Depending on the use of the ZONE speakers, it may not be possible to select this setting. |
| Height 2 Left | 0.0 dB | Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level.<br>• Depending on the use of the ZONE speakers, it may not be possible to select this setting. |

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Height 2 Right | 0.0 dB | Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level.<br>• Depending on the use of the ZONE speakers, it may not be possible to select this setting. |
| Surround Right | 0.0 dB | Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level. |
| Surr Back Right | 0.0 dB | Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level.<br>• Depending on the use of the ZONE speakers, it may not be possible to select this setting. |
| Surr Back Left | 0.0 dB | Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level.<br>• Depending on the use of the ZONE speakers, it may not be possible to select this setting. |
| Surround Left | 0.0 dB | Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level. |
| Subwoofer | 0.0 dB | Select a value between "-15.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level. |

## ■ 5. Dolby Enabled Speaker

Change the settings of Dolby Enabled Speakers.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Dolby Enabled Speaker to Ceiling | 6.0 ft/1.80 m | Set the distance between the Dolby Enabled Speaker and the ceiling. Select between "0.1 ft/0.03 m" and "15.0 ft/4.50 m" (0.1 ft/0.03 m units).<br>• The unit of distance (ft/m) is displayed using the unit selected for the "Distance" setting. |
| AccuReflex | Off | You can enhance the reflection effect of Dolby Enabled Speakers from the ceiling.<br>"Off": When this function is not used<br>"On": When this function is used |

• This setting can be selected when "Configuration" - "Height 1 Speaker"/"Height 2 Speaker" is set to "Dolby Speaker".

## ■ 6. Equalizer Settings

You can adjust the output volume of the range for each connected speaker. Adjust the volume of different sound ranges for each speaker. You can set three different equalizers in Preset 1 to 3. The number of frequencies that can be selected for each speaker is up to five bands for the Subwoofer and nine bands for the other speakers.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Front | 0.0 dB | After selecting the speaker frequency between "25 Hz" and "16 kHz" with the cursors ◀ / ▶, adjust the volume of that frequency between "-6.0 dB" and "+6.0 dB" with ▲ / ▼. |
| Center | 0.0 dB | After selecting the speaker frequency between "25 Hz" and "16 kHz" with the cursors ◀ / ▶, adjust the volume of that frequency between "-6.0 dB" and "+6.0 dB" with ▲ / ▼. |

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Height 1 | 0.0 dB | After selecting the speaker frequency between "25 Hz" and "16 kHz" with the cursors ◀ / ▶, adjust the volume of that frequency between "-6.0 dB" and "+6.0 dB" with ▲ / ▼.<br>• Depending on the use of the ZONE speakers, it may not be possible to select this setting. |
| Height 2 | 0.0 dB | After selecting the speaker frequency between "25 Hz" and "16 kHz" with the cursors ◀ / ▶, adjust the volume of that frequency between "-6.0 dB" and "+6.0 dB" with ▲ / ▼.<br>• Depending on the use of the ZONE speakers, it may not be possible to select this setting. |
| Surround | 0.0 dB | After selecting the speaker frequency between "25 Hz" and "16 kHz" with the cursors ◀ / ▶, adjust the volume of that frequency between "-6.0 dB" and "+6.0 dB" with ▲ / ▼. |
| Surround Back | 0.0 dB | After selecting the speaker frequency between "25 Hz" and "16 kHz" with the cursors ◀ / ▶, adjust the volume of that frequency between "-6.0 dB" and "+6.0 dB" with ▲ / ▼.<br>• Depending on the use of the ZONE speakers, it may not be possible to select this setting. |
| Subwoofer | 0.0 dB | After selecting the speaker frequency between "25 Hz" and "160 Hz" with the cursors ◀ / ▶, adjust the volume of that frequency between "-6.0 dB" and "+6.0 dB" with ▲ / ▼.<br>• This cannot be selected if "Configuration" - "Subwoofer" is set to "No". |

• Depending on the input source or listening mode setting, the desired effect may not be achieved.

## ■ 7. THX Audio

Change the THX Audio settings.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Back Speaker Spacing | >4.0 ft/>1.2 m | Select the distance between the surround back speakers from "<1.0 ft/<0.3 m", "1.0 - 4.0 ft/0.3 - 1.2 m", and ">4.0 ft/>1.2 m".<br>• The unit of distance (ft/m) is displayed using the unit selected for the "Distance" setting.<br>• The setting cannot be changed if "Configuration" - "Zone Speaker" is set to a selection item other than "No" and Zone 2 is on.<br>• If the item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check if the setting in "Configuration" - "Speaker Channels" matches the number of connected channels. |
| THX Ultra / Select Subwoofer | No | Set whether a THX-certified subwoofer is connected or not.<br>"Yes": When a THX-certified subwoofer is connected<br>"No": When a THX-certified subwoofer is not connected<br>• The setting cannot be changed if "Configuration" - "Subwoofer" is set to "No" |
| BGC | Off | Correct an emphasized bass sound when listening to music near the wall or boundary of the room due to layout limitation of the listening room. The THX Select receivers can adjust the balance of bass sound.<br>"On": When this function is used<br>"Off": When this function is not used<br>• In the following cases, the setting cannot be changed:<br>– "Configuration" - "Subwoofer" is set to "No".<br>– "THX Ultra / Select Subwoofer" is set to "No". |

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Loudness Plus | On | When this is set to "On", you can enjoy even subtle nuances of audio expression at low volume. This is only available when the THX listening mode is selected.<br>**THX Loudness Plus**<br>THX Loudness Plus is a new volume control technology mounted on THX Ultra and THX Select-certified receivers.<br>With THX Loudness Plus, home theater audience can experience the rich details of surround sound at any volume level.<br>If the volume is turned down below the reference level, elements of sound in a certain range are lost or the sound is perceived differently by the listener. THX Loudness Plus compensates for the tonal and spatial shifts that occur when the volume level is reduced, by intelligently adjusting the levels of the surround channels and their frequency response in the environment.<br>This enables users to experience the true impact of soundtracks regardless of the volume setting.<br>THX Loudness Plus is automatically applied when listening in any THX listening mode. In the newly developed THX Cinema, THX Music and THX Games modes, the optimum THX Loudness Plus setting is applied according to the type of content. |

## ■ 8. Speaker Virtualizer

The Speaker Virtualizer function can be switched between On and Off.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Speaker Virtualizer | On | "On": Listening modes such as T-D that have virtual speaker effects can be selected.<br>"Off": Listening modes such as T-D that have virtual speaker effects cannot be selected. |

# 3. Audio Adjust

## ■ 1. Multiplex/Mono

Change the settings of multiplex audio playback.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Multiplex Input Channel | Main | Set the audio channel or language to be output when playing multiplex audio or multilingual broadcasts, etc.<br>"Main": Main channel only<br>"Sub": Sub channel only<br>"Main/Sub": Main and sub channels are output at the same time.<br>• For multiplex audio broadcasts, pressing the i button on the remote controller will display "1+1" on the main unit's display. |
| Mono Input Channel | Left + Right | Set the input channel when playing in Mono listening mode digital signals such as Dolby Digital or analog/PCM signals recorded in 2 channels.<br>"Left": Left channel only<br>"Right": Right channel only<br>"Left + Right": Left and right channels |
| Mono Output Speaker | Center | Set the speaker to output monaural audio in the Mono listening mode.<br>"Center": Audio is output from the center speaker.<br>"Left/Right": Audio is output from the front L/R speakers.<br>• If the item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check if the setting in "2. Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Speaker Channels" matches the number of connected channels. |

## ■ 2. Dolby

Change the setting of when Dolby signals are input.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Loudness Management | On | When playing Dolby TrueHD, enable the dialog normalization function which keeps the volume of dialog at a certain level. Note that when this setting is Off, the Late Night function that allows you to enjoy surround at low volumes is fixed to off when playing Dolby Digital Plus/Dolby TrueHD.<br>"On": When this function is used<br>"Off": When this function is not used |
| Center Spread* | Off | Adjust the width of the sound field of the front channel when playing in Dolby Audio - Surr listening mode.<br>"On": The sound field is spread to left and right.<br>"Off": The sound field is centralized.<br>• Depending on the speaker settings, "Off" is applied. |

* This function will not be selectable if the firmware is updated after purchase or the firmware is switched in the product production process. For details of firmware update, see "Additional Function (Firmware Update)" ( →p6).

## ■ 3. DTS

Change the setting of when DTS signals are input.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| DTS Auto Surround | On | When inputting DTS signals that include extended channel information, the optimum listening mode is automatically selected according to the extended information contained in the input signal and the speaker configuration of this unit when playing in the straight decoding listening mode.<br>"On": When this function is used<br>"Off": Audio is played using the same number of channels in the input signal according to the speaker configuration of this unit.<br>• If this function is set to "Off", the ES Matrix and ES Discrete listening modes cannot be selected. |
| Dialog Control | 0 dB | You can increase the volume of dialog portion of the audio up to 6 dB by 1 dB step so that you can hear the dialog easily in noisy atmosphere.<br>• This cannot be set for content other than DTS:X.<br>• Depending on the content, this function may not be selected. |

## ■ 4. LFE Level

Set the low-frequency effect (LFE) level for Dolby Digital series, DTS series, Multichannel PCM, and DSD signals.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| LFE Level | 0 dB | Select the low-frequency effect (LFE) level of each signal from "0 dB" to "-∞ dB". If the low-frequency effect sound is too strong, select "-20 dB" or "-∞ dB". |

## ■ 5. Volume

Change the Volume settings.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Volume Display | Absolute | Switch the volume display between the absolute value and relative value. The absolute value 82.0 is equivalent to the relative value 0.0dB.<br>"Absolute": Absolute value such as "0.5" and "99.5"<br>"Relative": Relative value such as "-81.5dB" and "+18.0dB"<br>• If the absolute value is set to 82.0, "82.0Ref" appears on the display. |
| Mute Level | -∞dB | Set the volume lowered from the listening volume when muting is on. Select a value from "-∞dB", "-40dB" and "-20dB". |
| Maximum Volume | Off | Set the maximum value to prevent the volume from becoming too loud. Select a value from "Off", and "50" to "99". (When "Volume Display" is set to "Absolute") |
| Power On Volume | Last | Set the volume level of when the power is turned on. Select a value from "Last" (Volume level before entering standby mode), "Min", "0.5" to "99.5" and "Max". (When "Volume Display" is set to "Absolute")<br>• You cannot set a higher value than that of "Maximum Volume". |
| Headphone Level | 0.0 dB | Adjust the output level of headphones. Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB". |

# 4. Source

## ■ 1. My Input Volume

Set a volume value for each input selector.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| My Input Volume | Last | Select a value from "Last", "Min", "0.5" to "49.5" and "Max". (When "Volume Display" is set to "Absolute")<br>• The volume level when the power is turned on is the value set for "Power On Volume".<br>• To set the volume to the current volume, press the button of the input selector you wish to set for approx. 3 seconds. |

## ■ 2. Name Edit

Set an easy name for each input. The set name appears on the main unit's display. Select the input selector to make the setting.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Name Edit | Input name | 1. Select a character or symbol with the cursors, and press ENTER.<br>Repeat this operation to input up to 10 characters.<br>"A/a": Switches between upper and lower cases. (Pressing MODE on the remote controller also toggles between upper and lower cases)<br>"←" "→": Moves the cursor in the arrow direction.<br>"⌫": Removes a character on the left of the cursor.<br>"␣": Enters a space.<br>• Pressing CLEAR on the remote controller will remove all the input characters.<br>2. After inputting, select "OK" with the cursors, and press ENTER.<br>The input name will be saved.<br>To restore the name to the default value, press CLEAR on the remote controller on the input screen. Then while nothing is entered, select "OK", and press ENTER. |

• To name a preset radio station, press TUNER on the remote controller, select AM/FM, and select the preset number.

• This cannot be set if the "NET" or "BLUETOOTH" input is selected.

## ■ Audio Select

Select the priority for input selection when multiple audio sources are connected to one input selector, for example, connections to both the "BD/DVD" HDMI IN jack and the "BD/DVD" AUDIO IN jack. The setting can be made for each input selector button. Select the input selector to make the setting. Note that some of the default values cannot be changed.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Audio Select | BD/DVD:<br>HDMI<br>GAME:<br>HDMI<br>CBL/SAT:<br>HDMI<br>STRM BOX:<br>HDMI<br>PC:<br>HDMI<br>AUX:<br>HDMI<br>CD:<br>Analog<br>PHONO:<br>Analog<br>TV:<br>OPTICAL | ARC: When giving priority to the input signal from ARC-compatible TV.<br>• This item can be selected only when "5. Hardware" - "HDMI" - "Audio Return Channel" is set to "On" and also the "TV" input is selected.<br>"HDMI": When giving priority to the input signal from HDMI IN jacks<br>• This item can be selected only when the input to be set is assigned to the HDMI jack in the "1. Input/Output Assign" - "HDMI Input" setting.<br>"COAXIAL": When giving priority to the input signal from DIGITAL IN COAXIAL jacks<br>• This item can be selected only when the input to be set is assigned to the COAXIAL jack in the "1. Input/Output Assign" - "Digital Audio Input" setting.<br>"OPTICAL": When giving priority to the input signal from DIGITAL IN OPTICAL jacks<br>• This item can be selected only when the input to be set is assigned to the OPTICAL jack in the "1. Input/Output Assign" - "Digital Audio Input" setting.<br>"Analog": When giving priority to the input signal from AUDIO IN jacks<br>• This item can be selected only when the input to be set is assigned to the AUDIO IN jack in the "1. Input/Output Assign" - "Analog Audio Input" setting. |
| PCM Fixed Mode | Off | Select whether to fix input signals to PCM (except multi-channel PCM) when you select "HDMI", "COAXIAL", or "OPTICAL" in the "Audio Select" setting. Set this item to "On" if noise is produced or truncation occurs at the beginning of a track when playing PCM sources. Select "Off" normally.<br>• Each time the "Audio Select" setting is changed, the setting is restored to "Off". |

• The setting cannot be changed when "TUNER", "NET", or "BLUETOOTH" input is selected.

## ■ Video Select

When "TUNER", "NET", or "BLUETOOTH" input is selected, you can set the input from which video is displayed on the TV.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Video Select | Last | "Last": Select the video input played last<br>"BD/DVD", "GAME", "CBL/SAT", "STRM BOX", "PC", "AUX", "CD", "TV", "PHONO": Play the video of each input.<br>• This setting is effective for an input selector assigned in "1. Input/Output Assign" - "HDMI Input". |

• If the OSD language is set to Chinese, you can select this setting only when "TUNER" is selected as input. (Asian models)

# 5. Hardware

## ■ 1. HDMI

Change the settings of the HDMI function.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| HDMI CEC | Off | Setting this to "On" enables the input selection link and other link functions with HDMI-connected CEC-compatible device.<br>"On": When this function is used<br>"Off": When this function is not used<br>When this setting is changed, turn off and then on again the power of all connected devices.<br>• Depending on the TV to use, a link setting may be required on the TV.<br>• This function is effective only when the device is connected to the HDMI OUT MAIN terminal.<br>• Setting this to "On" and closing the operation screen will display the name of the connected CEC-compatible device and "CEC On" on the main unit's display.<br>• When this function is set to "On", the power consumption in standby state increases, however, the increase in power consumption is minimized by automatically entering the HYBRID STANDBY mode where only the essential circuits operate.<br>• If you operate the MASTER VOLUME dial on the main unit when this setting is "On" and audio is output from the TV speakers, audio will be output also from the speakers connected to this unit. To output audio from only either of them, change the setting of this unit or TV, or reduce the volume of this unit.<br>• If abnormal behavior is observed when this is set to "On", set it to "Off".<br>• If a connected device is not CEC-compatible, or if you are not sure whether it is compatible, set it to "Off". |
| HDMI Standby Through | Off | When this is set to anything other than "Off", you can play the video and audio of an HDMI-connected player on the TV even if the unit is in standby mode. Also, only "Auto" and "Auto(Eco)" can be selected if "HDMI CEC" is set to "On". If you select anything else, set "HDMI CEC" to "Off".<br>• When this function is set to a value other than "Off", the power consumption in standby state increases, however, the increase in power consumption is minimized by automatically entering the HYBRID STANDBY mode where only the essential circuits operate.<br>"BD/DVD", "GAME", "CBL/SAT", "STRM BOX", "PC", "AUX", "CD", "TV", "PHONO": For example, if you select "BD/DVD", you can play the device connected to the "BD/DVD" jack on the TV even if the unit is in standby mode. Select this setting if you have decided which player to use with this function.<br>"Last": You can play on the TV the video and audio of the input selected immediately before the unit is switched to standby. When "Last" is selected, you can switch the input of the unit using the remote controller or the Onkyo Controller even in the standby mode.<br>"Auto", "Auto (Eco)": Select either of the settings if the connected player conforms to the CEC standard. You can play the video and audio of the player on the TV using the CEC link function, irrespective of what input is selected immediately before the unit is switched to standby.<br>• To play a non-CEC compliant player on the TV, turn the unit on and switch the input.<br>• When using a CEC-compliant TV, you can reduce the power consumption in standby mode by selecting "Auto (Eco)". |

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Audio TV Out | Off | You can enjoy audio through the speakers of the TV while this unit is on.<br>"On": When this function is used<br>"Off": When this function is not used<br>• This setting is fixed to "Auto" if you set "1. Input/ Output Assign" - "TV Out/OSD" - "HDMI Out" or "HDMI" - "HDMI Out" in the "Quick Menu" to "MAIN" or "MAIN+SUB" and set "HDMI CEC" to "On". If you change this setting, set "HDMI CEC" to "Off".<br>• Listening mode cannot be changed while "Audio TV Out" is set to "On" and audio is being output from the TV.<br>• Depending on your TV or input signal of the connected device, audio may not be output from the TV even if this is set to "On". In such a case, audio is output from the speakers of the unit.<br>• Audio is output from this unit if you operate the MASTER VOLUME dial on this unit when audio that is input to this unit is output from your TV speakers. If you do not want to output audio, change the setting of this unit or TV, or reduce the volume of this unit. |
| Audio Return Channel | Off | You can enjoy the sound of the HDMI-connected ARC-compatible TV through the speakers connected to the unit.<br>"On": When enjoying the TV sound through the speakers of this unit<br>"Off": When not using the ARC function |
| Auto Lip Sync | On | Automatically corrects desynchronization between the video and audio signals based on the information from the HDMI Lip-Sync-compatible TV.<br>"On": When enabling the automatic correction function<br>"Off": When not using the automatic correction function |

## 2. Network

Change the settings of the Network function.

- When LAN is configured with a DHCP, set "DHCP" to "Enable" to configure the setting automatically. ("Enable" is set by default) To assign fixed IP addresses to each components, you must set "DHCP" to "Disable", assign an address to this unit in the "IP Address" setting, and set information related to your LAN, such as Subnet Mask and Gateway.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Wi-Fi | Off(Wired) | Connect the unit to the network via a wireless LAN router.<br>"On": Wireless LAN connection<br>"Off(Wired)": Wired LAN connection<br>• When switching between "On" and "Off(Wired)", stop the Network service. Also, when group playback is in process, cancel the group playback once, and then switch the setting. |
| Wi-Fi Setup | - | Configure wireless LAN settings by pressing ENTER with "Start" displayed. |
| Wi-Fi Status | - | The information of the connected access point is displayed.<br>"SSID": SSID of the connected access point.<br>"Signal": Signal strength of the connected access point.<br>"Status": Status of the connected access point. |
| MAC Address | - | Check the MAC address of this unit.<br>This value is specific to the component and cannot be changed. |
| DHCP | Enable | "Enable": Auto configuration by DHCP<br>"Disable": Manual configuration without DHCP<br>• If you select "Disable", set "IP Address", "Subnet Mask", "Gateway", and "DNS Server" manually. |
| IP Address | 0.0.0.0 | Displays/Sets the IP address. |
| Subnet Mask | 0.0.0.0 | Displays/Sets the subnet mask. |
| Gateway | 0.0.0.0 | Displays/Sets the gateway. |
| DNS Server | 0.0.0.0 | Displays/Sets the primary DNS server. |
| Proxy URL | - | Displays/Sets the proxy server URL. |

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Proxy Port | 8080 | Displays/Sets the proxy server port number when you input "Proxy URL". |
| Friendly Name | Onkyo<br>TX-NR797<br>XXXXXX | Change the model name of this unit which is displayed on the device connected to the network to an easily recognized name.<br>1. Press ENTER to display the Edit screen.<br>2. Select a character or symbol with the cursors, and press ENTER.<br>Repeat this operation to input up to 31 characters.<br>"A/a": Switches between upper and lower cases. (Pressing MODE on the remote controller also toggles between upper and lower cases)<br>"←" "→": Moves the cursor in the arrow direction.<br>"⌫": Removes a character on the left of the cursor.<br>"␣": Enters a space.<br>• Pressing CLEAR on the remote controller will remove all the input characters.<br>3. After inputting, select "OK" with the cursors, and press ENTER.<br>The input name will be saved. |

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| AirPlay Device Name | Onkyo<br>TX-NR797<br>XXXXXX | Change the model name of this unit which is displayed on the AirPlay-connected device to an easily recognized name.<br>1. Press ENTER to display the Edit screen.<br>2. Select a character or symbol with the cursors, and press ENTER.<br>Repeat this operation to input up to 31 characters.<br>"A/a": Switches between upper and lower cases. (Pressing MODE on the remote controller also toggles between upper and lower cases)<br>"←" "→": Moves the cursor in the arrow direction.<br>"⌫": Removes a character on the left of the cursor.<br>"␣": Enters a space.<br>• Pressing CLEAR on the remote controller will remove all the input characters.<br>3. After inputting, select "OK" with the cursors, and press ENTER.<br>The input name will be saved.<br>• This function cannot be used when registering this unit to Home App. |

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| AirPlay Password | | You can set a password of up to 31 digits so that only users that have input can use AirPlay®.<br>1. Press ENTER to display the Edit screen.<br>2. Select a character or symbol with the cursors, and press ENTER.<br>Repeat this operation to input up to 31 characters.<br>"A/a": Switches between upper and lower cases. (Pressing MODE on the remote controller also toggles between upper and lower cases)<br>"←" "→": Moves the cursor in the arrow direction.<br>"⌫": Removes a character on the left of the cursor.<br>"␣": Enters a space.<br>• To select whether to mask the password with "∗" or display it in plain text, press MEMORY on the remote controller.<br>• Pressing CLEAR on the remote controller will remove all the input characters.<br>3. After inputting, select "OK" with the cursors, and press ENTER.<br>The input password will be saved.<br>• This function cannot be used when registering this unit to Home App. |
| Privacy Statement | Not Accepted | When using a network service that requires a login name, email address, password, etc., you need to agree to the Privacy Statement of our company.<br>• This setting can be made after confirming the Privacy Statement. When you select "Privacy Statement" and press ENTER, the Privacy Statement is displayed.<br>• When “Not Accepted” is selected, you will log out from the network service you have logged in. |
| Network Check | - | You can check the network connection.<br>Press ENTER when "Start" is displayed. |

• Wait for a while if "Network" cannot be selected. It can be selected when the network function is activated.

## ■ 3. Bluetooth

Change the settings for the Bluetooth function.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Bluetooth | On | Select whether or not to use the BLUETOOTH function.<br>"On": Enables connection with a BLUETOOTH-enabled device by using the BLUETOOTH function. Select "On" also when making various BLUETOOTH settings.<br>"Off": When not using the BLUETOOTH function |
| Auto Input Change | On | When a BLUETOOTH-enabled device is played while it is connected to the unit, the input of the unit can be automatically switched to "BLUETOOTH".<br>"On": The input is automatically set to "BLUETOOTH" responding to the playback operation of the BLUETOOTH-enabled device.<br>"Off": The function is disabled.<br>• If the input is not switched automatically, set this to "Off", and change the input manually. |
| Auto Reconnect | On | This function automatically reconnects to the BLUETOOTH-enabled device connected last when you change the input to "BLUETOOTH".<br>"On": When this function is used<br>"Off": When this function is not used<br>• This may not work with some BLUETOOTH-enabled devices. |

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Pairing Information | - | You can initialize the pairing information stored on this unit.<br>Pressing ENTER when "Clear" is displayed initializes the pairing information stored on this unit.<br>• This function does not initialize the pairing information on the BLUETOOTH-enabled device. When pairing the unit again with the device, be sure to clear the pairing information on the BLUETOOTH-enabled device beforehand. For information on how to clear the pairing information, refer to the instruction manual of the BLUETOOTH-enabled device. |
| Device | - | Displays the name of the BLUETOOTH-enabled device connected to the unit.<br>• The name is not displayed when "Status" is "Ready" and "Pairing". |
| Status | - | Displays the status of the BLUETOOTH-enabled device connected to the unit.<br>"Ready": Not paired<br>"Pairing": Paired<br>"Connected": Successfully connected |

• Wait for a while if "Bluetooth" cannot be selected. It can be selected when the BLUETOOTH function is activated.

## 4. Power Management

Change the settings for the power-save function.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Sleep Timer | Off | You can allow the unit to enter standby automatically when the specified time has elapsed. Select a value from "30 minutes", "60 minutes" and "90 minutes".<br>"Off": The unit does not automatically enter standby mode. |
| Auto Standby | On/Off | This setting allows the unit to enter standby mode automatically after 20 minutes of inactivity without any video or audio input. (When "USB Power Out at Standby" or "Network Standby" is enabled, the unit enters the HYBRID STANDBY mode which minimizes the increase in power consumption.)<br>"On": The unit automatically enters standby mode ("AUTO STBY" lights up).<br>"Off": The unit does not automatically enter standby mode.<br>• "Auto Standby" is displayed on the main unit's display and TV screen 30 seconds before entering standby mode.<br>• "Auto Standby" does not work when ZONE 2/ ZONE 3 is active.<br>• Default values vary depending on the regions. |
| Auto Standby in HDMI Standby Through | On/Off | Enable or disable "Auto Standby" while "HDMI Standby Through" is on.<br>"On": The setting is enabled.<br>"Off": The setting is disabled.<br>• This setting cannot be set to "On" if "Auto Standby" and "HDMI Standby Through" are set to "Off".<br>• Default values vary depending on the regions. |

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| USB Power Out at Standby | Off | When this function is set to "On", electricity can be supplied to the device connected to the USB port even if this unit is in standby mode .<br>• When this function is set to "On", the power consumption in standby state increases, however, the increase in power consumption is minimized by automatically entering the HYBRID STANDBY mode where only the essential circuits operate. |
| Network Standby | On | When this function is set to "On", the network function works even in standby state, and you can turn on the power of the unit via network using an application such as Onkyo Controller that can control this unit.<br>• When this function is set to "On", the power consumption in standby state increases, however, the increase in power consumption is minimized by automatically entering the HYBRID STANDBY mode where only the essential circuits operate. Note that even if this function is set to "Off", when any of the HDMI CEC ( →p145), HDMI Standby Through ( →p145), USB Power Out at Standby ( →p150) and Bluetooth Wakeup ( →p150) functions is enabled, this function will be in "On" state regardless of the setting.<br>• When connection to the network is lost, "Network Standby" may be disabled to reduce power consumption. In such a case, turn the unit on by using the power button on the remote controller or main unit. |
| Bluetooth Wakeup | Off | This function wakes up the unit on standby by connecting a BLUETOOTH-enabled device.<br>"On": When this function is used<br>"Off": When this function is not used<br>• When this function is set to "On", the power consumption in standby state increases, however, the increase in power consumption is minimized by automatically entering the HYBRID STANDBY mode where only the essential circuits operate.<br>• This setting is fixed to "Off" if "Bluetooth" - "Auto Input Change" is set to "Off". |

• Wait for a while if "Network Standby" and "Bluetooth Wakeup" cannot be selected. It can be selected when the network function is activated.

## ■ 5. 12V Trigger

Set when outputting the control signal (maximum 12 V/100 mA) through the 12V TRIGGER OUT jack. You can enable power link operation when you connect the unit and the external devices equipped with 12V trigger input jack.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Zone | Main | Set which zone to output the 12V trigger when playing. If you select "All", then the 12V trigger is output to all zones that are playing. |

## ■ 6. Works with SONOS

Change the settings to connect with the Sonos Connect.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Input Selector | Off | Select the input selector to which the Sonos Connect is connected.<br>• Selecting "Off" disables the interlock function with Sonos. |
| Connected Device | - | Displays the Sonos Connect connected to the same network as the network of this unit. Press the ENTER button to select the connected Sonos Connect.<br>• Products (e.g. Play:3 unequipped with an output terminal) other than the Sonos Connect are also displayed in the device list and selectable. In that case, when playback on the Sonos side starts, the input is switched, however, audio is not output. Select the room name of the connected Sonos Connect.<br>• Up to 32 devices can be displayed on the Sonos product list screen. If you cannot find the Sonos Connect to be interlocked, return to the previous screen, turn off the product you want to interlock, and try again.<br>• To use this function, set "Input Selector" beforehand. |
| Output Zone | Main | Select the zone where you want to listen to the music.<br>"Main": Outputs audio only to the main room (where this unit is located).<br>"Zone 2": Outputs audio only to the separate room (ZONE 2).<br>"Main/Zone 2": Outputs audio to both the main room and separate room.<br>"Zone 3": Outputs audio only to the separate room (ZONE 3).<br>"Main/Zone 3": Outputs audio to both the main room and separate room (ZONE 3).<br>"Zone 2/Zone 3": Outputs audio to both the separate rooms (ZONE 2 and ZONE 3).<br>“Main/Zone 2/Zone 3”: Outputs audio to the main room and both separate rooms (ZONE 2 and ZONE 3).<br>• To use this function, set "Input Selector" beforehand. |
| Preset Volume | Main:<br>Last<br>Zone 2:<br>Last<br>Zone 3:<br>Last | You can set the volume beforehand for playing back the Sonos Connect. You can set volumes for the main room (where this unit is located) and separate room (ZONE 2 or ZONE 3) respectively. Select a value from "Last" (Volume level before entering standby mode), "Min", "0.5" to "99.5" and "Max".<br>• To use this function, set "Input Selector" beforehand. |

# 6. Multi Zone

## ■ 1. Zone 2

Change the settings for Zone 2.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Maximum Volume | Off | Set the maximum value for Zone 2 to prevent the volume from becoming too loud. Select a value from "Off", and "50" to "99". (When "3. Audio Adjust" - "Volume" - "Volume Display" is set to "Absolute") |
| Power On Volume | Last | Set the Zone 2 volume level of when the unit is turned on. Select a value from "Last" (Volume level when the unit was turned off), "Min", "0.5" to "99.5" and "Max". (When "3. Audio Adjust" - "Volume" - "Volume Display" is set to "Absolute")<br>• You cannot set a higher value than that of "Maximum Volume". |

## ■ 2. Zone 3

Change the settings for Zone 3.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Maximum Volume | Off | Set the maximum value for Zone 3 to prevent the volume from becoming too loud. Select a value from "Off", and "50" to "99". (When "3. Audio Adjust" - "Volume" - "Volume Display" is set to "Absolute") |
| Power On Volume | Last | Set the Zone 3 volume level of when the unit is turned on. Select a value from "Last" (Volume level when the unit was turned off), "Min", "0.5" to "99.5" and "Max". (When "3. Audio Adjust" - "Volume" - "Volume Display" is set to "Absolute")<br>• You cannot set a higher value than that of "Maximum Volume". |

## ■ 3. Remote Play Zone

Change the settings for remote play.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Remote Play Zone | Auto | When playing with AirPlay or Spotify Connect, or when using the Music Server function to play remotely from your PC, you can set whether to play in the main room (where this unit is located) or in a separate room (ZONE 2/ZONE 3).<br>"Auto": When the main room input is NET, music is played in the main room. When the separate room input is NET and the main room input is other than NET, then the music is played in the separate room.<br>"Main", "Zone 2", "Zone 3": Select when limiting the play zone to a particular room. For example, when playing only in the separate room, select "Zone 2" or "Zone 3".<br>• This function may not work if playback is already proceeding with the same network function. |

# 7. Miscellaneous

## ■ 1. Tuner

Change the frequency step for the tuner.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| AM/FM Frequency Step (North American models) | 10 kHz/0.2 MHz | Select a frequency step to suit your residential area.<br>Select "10 kHz/0.2 MHz" or "9 kHz/0.05 MHz".<br>• When this setting is changed, all radio presets are deleted. |
| AM Frequency Step (Asian models) | 9 kHz | Select a frequency step to suit your residential area.<br>Select "10 kHz" or "9 kHz".<br>• When this setting is changed, all radio presets are deleted. |

## ■ 2. Remote ID

Change the remote controller ID.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Remote ID | 1 | If multiple ONKYO products are installed in the same room, select the ID for the remote control used with this unit from "1", "2" and "3" to prevent interference between the unit and other ONKYO products. After changing the ID on the main unit, set the same ID on the remote controller as the main unit with the following procedure.<br><br>While pressing and holding the MODE button, press the following buttons for approx. 3 seconds.<br>• To change the remote controller ID to "1": MOVIE/TV<br>• To change the remote controller ID to "2": MUSIC<br>• To change the remote controller ID to "3": GAME |

## ■ 3. Firmware Update

Change the settings for Firmware Update.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Update Notice | Enable | Availability of a firmware update is notified via network.<br>"Enable": Notify updates<br>"Disable": Do not notify updates |
| Version | - | The current firmware version is displayed. |
| Update via NET | - | Press ENTER to select when updating the firmware via network.<br>• This setting cannot be selected if you do not have Internet access or there is no updatable firmware. |
| Update via USB | - | Press ENTER to select when updating the firmware via USB.<br>• This setting cannot be selected if a USB storage device is not connected or there is no updatable firmware in the USB storage device. |

• Wait for a while if "Firmware Update" cannot be selected. It can be selected when the network function is activated.

## ■ 4. Initial Setup

Make the initial setup from the setup menu.

• Wait for a while if "Initial Setup" cannot be selected. It can be selected when the network function is activated.

## ■ 5. Lock

Lock the Setup menu so that the settings cannot be changed.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Setup Parameter | Unlocked | Lock the Setup menu so that the settings cannot be changed.<br>"Locked": The menu is locked.<br>"Unlocked": The menu is unlocked. |

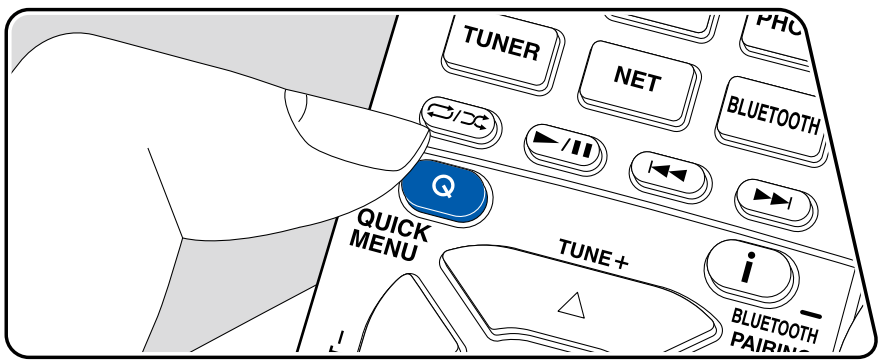
## ■ 6. Factory Reset

All the settings are restored to factory defaults.

| Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details |
|---|---|---|
| Factory Reset | - | All the settings are restored to factory defaults.<br>Select "Start" and press ENTER.<br>• If "Factory Reset" is performed, your settings are restored to the default values. Be sure to note down your setting contents beforehand. |

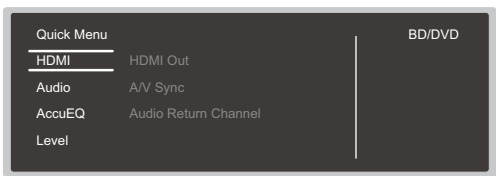
# Quick Menu

## Menu operations




You can quickly adjust the settings you frequently use, such as tone adjustments, etc.

You can make the settings on the TV screen during playback. Press Q on the remote controller to display the Quick Menu.




Select the item with the cursors ▲ / ▼ of the remote controller, and press the ENTER button to confirm your selection.
Use the cursors to change the settings.

- To return to the previous screen, press ⮌.
- To exit the settings, press Q.

### ■ HDMI

**HDMI Out:** Select the HDMI OUT jack to output video signals from "MAIN", "SUB", and "MAIN+SUB".
**A/V Sync:** If the video is behind the audio, you can delay the audio to offset the gap. The setting can be set for each input.
It cannot be set if the listening mode is Direct.
**Audio Return Channel:** You can enjoy the sound of the HDMI-connected ARC-compatible TV through the speakers connected to the unit. Select "On" when listening to the audio of TV using the speakers of this unit. Select "Off" when the ARC function is not used.

### ■ Audio

**Music Optimizer:** Improve the quality of the compressed audio. Playback sound

of lossy compressed files such as MP3 will be improved. The setting can be set for each input. This works in signals whose sampling frequencies are 48 kHz or less. The setting is not effective in the bitstream signals.
- It cannot be set if the listening mode is Direct.

**Late Night:** Enable small sounds to be easily heard in detail. It is useful when you need to reduce the volume while watching a movie late night. You can enjoy the effect only when playing the Dolby series and DTS series input signals.
- This function cannot be used in the following cases.
  - When playing Dolby Digital Plus or Dolby TrueHD with "Loudness Management" set to "Off"
  - When the input signal is DTS:X, and "Dialog Control" is not 0 dB

**Stereo Assign:** When the listening mode is set to "Stereo", the audio output destination can be set to "Surround", "Surround Back", "Height 1" or "Height 2" in addition to the normal right and left channels ("Front") of front speakers.
- This function cannot be used if the listening mode is set to modes other than "Stereo".
- You cannot select speakers that are not set with "2. Speaker" - "Configuration" on the Setup menu.

**Zone B:** Select a method of outputting audio to ZONE B from among "Off", "On(A+B)" and "On(B)".
- In the following cases, "Zone B" cannot be selected.
  - When ZONE 2 is On
  - When "2. Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Zone 2 Lineout" on the Setup menu is set to "Zone 2" ( →p136)

## ■ AccuEQ

**AccuEQ:** Enable or disable the equalizer function that corrects for sound distortion caused by the acoustic environment of the room. To enable this setting, normally select "On (All Ch)", and to disable only the front speakers, select "On (ex. L/R)". The setting can be set for each input.

**Manual Equalizer:** Select "Preset 1" to "Preset 3" configured in "2. Speaker" - "Equalizer Settings" on the Setup menu. When this is set to "Off", the same sound field setting is applied to all ranges.

**Re-EQ, Re-EQ(THX):** Adjusts the soundtrack with the enhanced high range so that it suits a home theater.
The following listening modes can be used for Re-EQ: Dolby Audio - DD, Dolby Audio - DD+, Dolby Audio - Surr, Dolby Audio - TrueHD, Multichannel, DTS, DTS-ES, DTS 96/24, DTS-HD High Resolution Audio, DTS-HD Master Audio, DTS Neural:X, DTS Express and DSD
In Re-EQ(THX), the following listening modes can be used: THX Cinema and THX Select Cinema.
- It cannot be set if the listening mode is Direct.

**EQ for Standing Wave :** Setting this "On" will control the effect of the standing wave generated by the sound wave reflected by wall or similar interfering with the original sound wave.

## ■ Level

**Front:** Adjust the speaker level of the front speakers while listening to the sound.
**Center :** Adjust the speaker level of the center speaker while listening to the sound.
**Subwoofer:** Adjust the speaker level of the subwoofer while listening to the sound.
- If you set the unit to the standby mode, the adjustments you made will be restored to the previous statuses.

# Web Setup

## Menu operations

You can make the settings for the network function of this unit using an Internet browser on a PC, smartphone, etc.

1. Press ☼ on the remote controller to display the Setup menu.
2. Select "5. Hardware" - "Network" with the cursors, and then take a note of the IP address displayed in "IP Address".
3. Start the Internet browser on your PC, smartphone, etc. and enter the IP address of this unit in the URL field.
4. Information for the unit (Web Setup screen) is displayed in the Internet browser.

5. After changing the settings, select "Save" to save the settings.

### Device Information

You can change the Friendly Name or AirPlay Device Name, set an AirPlay Password, etc.

Control4: Register this unit if you are using a Control4 system.

Firmware Update: Select the firmware file you have downloaded to your PC so you can update this unit.

### Network Setting

Status: You can see information for the network such as the MAC address and IP address of this unit.

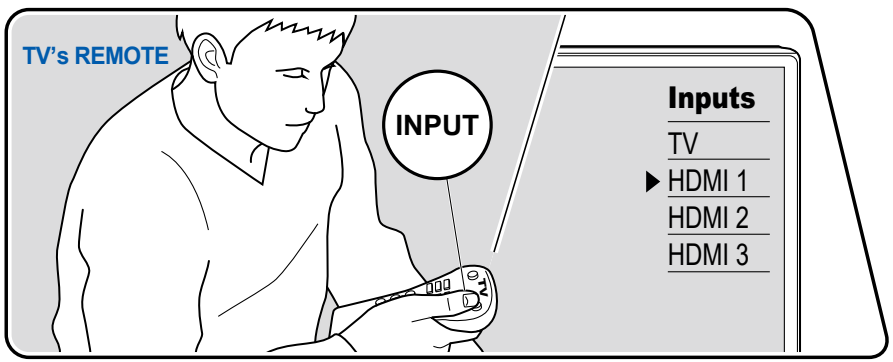
Network Connection: You can select a network connection method. If you select "Wireless", select an access point from "Wi-Fi Setup" to connect.

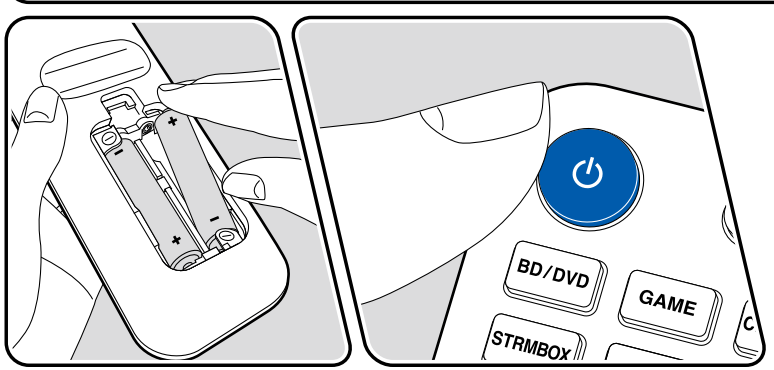
DHCP: You can change DHCP settings. If you select "Off", set "IP Address", "Subnet Mask", "Gateway" and "DNS Server" manually.

Proxy: Display and set the URL for the proxy server.

# Initial Setup with Auto Start-up Wizard

## Operations

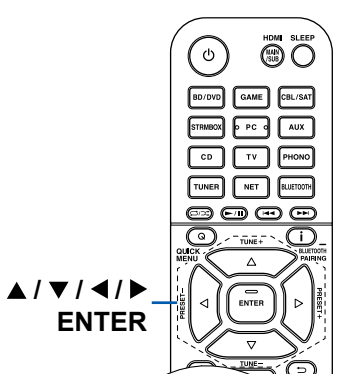


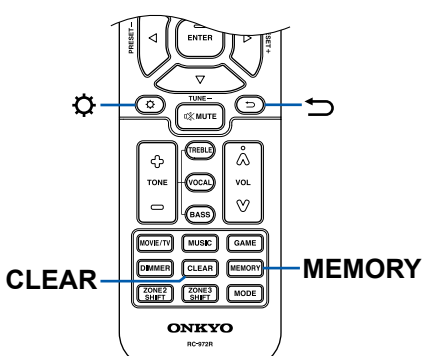




When you turn the unit on for the first time after purchase, the Initial Setup screen is automatically displayed on the TV to allow you to make settings required for startup using simple operations following on-screen guidance.

1. Switch the input of the TV to the input connected to the unit.
2. Put batteries into the remote controller of this unit.
3. Press ⏻ on the remote controller to turn the unit on.
4. When the language selection screen is displayed on TV, select the language with the cursors ▲ / ▼ and press ENTER.

- Select the item with the cursors of the remote controller, and press ENTER to confirm your selection. To return to the previous screen, press ⮌.
- If you have terminated the Initial Setup halfway, turn this unit to standby mode and turn the power on again. Then you can display the Initial Setup again. The Initial Setup appears on the screen each time the power is turned on unless the Initial Setup is completed or "Never Show Again" is selected on the first screen.
- To perform the Initial Setup again after the setting is completed, press ☼, select "7. Miscellaneous" - "Initial Setup", and press ENTER.



## ■ 1. Speaker Setup

1. Select the connected speaker configuration and press ENTER.
   Note that the image on the screen changes each time you select the number of channels in "Speaker Channels".

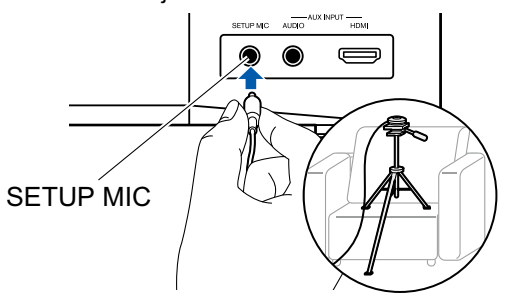
2. The speaker combination selected in step 1 is displayed. "Yes" is displayed for the selected speakers. If the setting is correct, press ENTER.
3. Select "Next" and press ENTER. Then a test tone is output from each speaker to confirm the connection. Selecting each speaker with the cursors ▲ / ▼ will output the test tone. Press ENTER after confirmation.
4. If there is no problem with the speaker connection, select "Next" and press ENTER. To return to "Speaker Setup", select "Back to Speaker Setup" and press ENTER.

## ■ 2. AccuEQ Room Calibration

Place the supplied speaker setup microphone at the listening position. The unit automatically measures the test tones output from each speaker, and sets the optimum volume level for each speaker, the crossover frequencies, and the distance from the listening position. This also reduces the effect of the standing wave in accordance with the viewing environment and automatically adjusts the equalizers for the speakers, and enables correction of sound distortion caused by the acoustic environment of the room.

- It takes between 3 and 12 minutes for calibration to be completed. Each speaker outputs the test tone at high volume during measurement, so be careful of your surroundings. Also, keep the room as quiet as possible during measurement.
- If you connect a subwoofer, check the power and volume of the subwoofer. Set the subwoofer volume to more than half.
- If the power of this unit suddenly turns off, the wires in the speaker cables have touched the rear panel or other wires, and the protection circuit is working. Twist the wires again securely, and make sure they do not stick out of the speaker terminals when connecting.
- When using THX certified speakers, THX recommends that the crossover frequency is set to "80Hz(THX)". Also, THX recommends that each speaker setting is manually adjusted according to the specific characteristics of each room.

1. Place the supplied speaker setup microphone at the listening position, and connect it to the SETUP MIC jack on the main unit.




When placing the speaker setup microphone on a tripod, refer to the illustration.

2. Confirm a test tone is output from the subwoofer and press ENTER.
3. Press ENTER to output test tones from each speaker, and the connected speakers and the noise in the surrounding environment are automatically measured.
4. The measurement results in step 3 are displayed. If there is no problem in the detection result of the speaker, select "Next" and press ENTER to output the test tone again to automatically set the settings such as volume level, crossover frequency, etc., to their optimum. (The test tone is automatically output when 10 seconds has elapsed without any operation.)
   - When an error message is displayed or when the connected speakers cannot be detected, perform re-measurement by selecting "Retry" and pressing ENTER.
   - When it cannot be resolved by performing the re-measurement, confirm if the speakers are connected correctly. If there is any problem with the

speaker connection, perform the connection after disconnecting the power cord.

5. Once the measurement is completed, it is possible to perform the measurement in 8 additional listening positions. To perform the measurement, select "Next" and press ENTER, then follow the instructions. To not perform the measurement, select "Finish (Calculate)" and press ENTER.
   - After each listening position is detected, select “Finish (Calculate)” and press ENTER to complete the detection process.
6. Disconnect the speaker setup microphone.

## ■ 3. Multi Zone Sound Check

Output test tones to ZONE 2 to enjoy audio in a separate room (ZONE 2) in addition to the main room.

## ■ 4. ARC Setup

To connect with an ARC-compatible TV, select "Yes". The ARC setting on this unit turns on, and you can listen to the TV's audio through this unit.

- Pressing "Yes" turns the HDMI CEC function on, and the power consumption in standby mode will increase.

## ■ 5. Network Connection

1. To make the network connection settings, select "Yes" and press ENTER.
   - A confirmation screen asking you whether to agree to the privacy statement is displayed during network setting. If you agree, select "Accept" and press ENTER.
2. Select the network connection method and press ENTER.
   **"Wired"**: Use a wired LAN to connect to a network.
   **"Wireless"**: Wi-Fi connection using an access point such as a wireless LAN router.

- There are two methods for Wi-Fi connection.
  **"Scan Networks"**: Search for an access point from this unit. Find out the SSID of the access point beforehand.
  **"Use iOS Device (iOS7 or later)"**: Share the Wi-Fi settings of your iOS device with this unit.
- If you select "Scan Networks", there are another two types of connection methods. Check the following.
  **"Enter Password"**:Enter the password (or key) of the access point to connect.
  **"Push Button"**: If the access point is equipped with an automatic setting button, you can connect without entering the password.
- If the SSID of the access point is not displayed, select "Other..." with the cursor ▶ on the SSID list screen, press ENTER, and then follow the on-screen instructions.

## Keyboard Input

To switch between upper and lower cases, select "A/a" on the screen, and press ENTER on the remote controller.
To select whether to mask the password with "∗" or display it in plain text, press MEMORY on the remote controller. Pressing CLEAR on the remote controller will delete all the input characters.

# Troubleshooting

## Before starting the procedure

Problems may be solved by simply turning the power on/off or disconnecting/connecting the power cord, which is easier than working on the connection, setting and operating procedure. Try the simple measures on both the unit and the connected device. If the problem is that the video or audio is not output or the HDMI linked operation does not work, disconnecting/connecting the HDMI cable may solve it. When reconnecting, be careful not to wind the HDMI cable since if wound the HDMI cable may not fit well. After reconnecting, turn off and on the unit and the connected device.

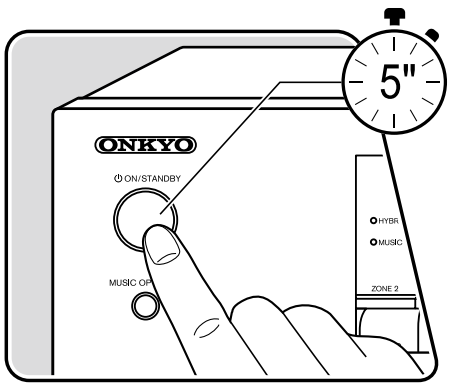
- The AV receiver contains a microPC for signal processing and control functions. In very rare situations, severe interference, noise from an external source, or static electricity may cause it to lockup. In the unlikely event that this happens, unplug the power cord from the wall outlet, wait at least 5 seconds, and then plug it back in.
- Our company is not responsible for damages (such as CD rental fees) due to unsuccessful recordings caused by the unit's malfunction. Before you record important data, make sure that the material will be recorded correctly.

**When the unit is operating erratically** **162**
Try restarting the unit 162
Resetting the unit (this resets the unit settings to the default) 163
**Troubleshooting** **164**
■ Power 164
■ Audio 164
■ Listening Modes 166
■ Video 167
■ Linked operation 167
■ Tuner 168
■ BLUETOOTH function 168
■ Network function 169
■ USB storage device 170
■ Wireless LAN Network 170
■ ZONE B function 171
■ Multi-zone function 171
■ Remote Controller 171
■ Display 171
■ Others 172

# When the unit is operating erratically

## ❑ Try restarting the unit

Restarting this unit may solve the problem. After turning the unit to standby mode, press and hold the ⏻ ON/STANDBY button of the main unit for at least 5 seconds, and then restart the unit. (The settings on this unit are kept.) If the problem persists after restarting the unit, unplug and plug the power cords of this unit and connected devices or HDMI cable .

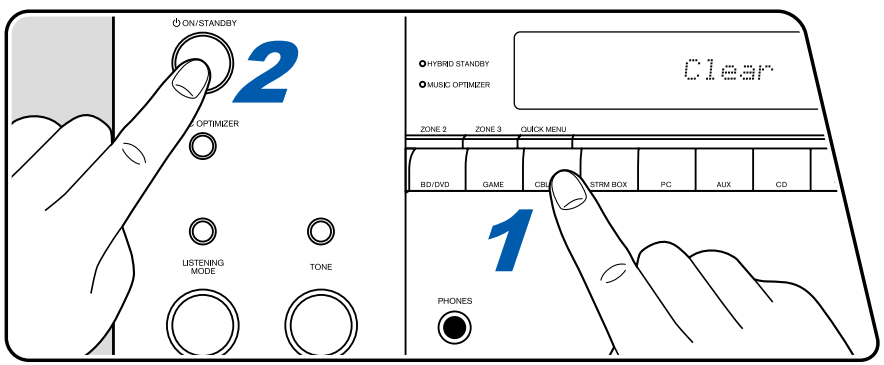


## ❑ Resetting the unit (this resets the unit settings to the default)

If the restart of the unit does not solve the problem, reset the unit, and restore all the settings to the factory default at the time of purchase. This may solve the problem.
If the unit is reset, your settings are restored to the default values. Be sure to note down your setting contents before performing the following operations.

1. While pressing and holding CBL/SAT of the input selector on the main unit with the unit turned on, press the ⏻ ON/STANDBY button.
2. "Clear" is displayed on the display, and the unit returns to the standby state. Do not remove the power cord until "Clear" disappears from the display.

To reset the remote controller, while pressing and holding MODE, press the CLEAR button at least 3 seconds.



# Troubleshooting

## ■ Power

### ❑ When the power is turned on, "AMP Diag Mode" appears on the display of the main unit.

- The protection circuit function may have operated. If the unit suddenly enters the standby state and "AMP Diag Mode" appears on the display of the main unit when the power is turned on again, this function is diagnosing whether or not the main unit is malfunctioning or there is an abnormality with the speaker cable connection. When the diagnosis is complete, the following messages are displayed.

| | |
|---|---|
| CH SP WIRE | If the unit returns to the normal ON state after "CH SP WIRE" appears on the display, the speaker cable may have been short-circuited. After setting the power of this unit to standby state, connect the speaker cable again. Twist the wires exposed from the tip of the speaker cable so that the wires do not stick out of the speaker terminal. |
| NG:∗∗∗∗∗ | If the operation has stopped with "NG" displayed on the display, set the power of this unit to standby state immediately and remove the power plug from the outlet. The unit may be malfunctioning. Consult a dealer. |

### ❑ The unit turns off unexpectedly

- If "5. Hardware" - "Power Management" - "Auto Standby" on the Setup menu is activated, the unit automatically enters the standby mode. (→p149)
- The protection circuit function may have operated due to an abnormal rise in temperature of the unit. In such a case, the power turns off repeatedly even if the power is turned on each time. Secure sufficient ventilation space around the unit, wait for a while until the temperature of the unit decreases. Then, turn the power on again.

**WARNING**: If smoke, smell or abnormal noise is produced by the unit, unplug the power cord from the outlet immediately, and contact the dealer or our company's support.

## ■ Audio

- Make sure that the speaker setup microphone is no longer connected.
- Confirm that the connection between the output jack on the connected device and the input jack on this unit is correct.
- Make sure that none of the connecting cables are bent, twisted, or damaged.
- If the MUTE indicator on the display blinks, press 🔇 on the remote controller to cancel muting.
- While headphones are connected to the PHONES jack, no sound is output from the speakers.
- When "4. Source" - "Audio Select" - "PCM Fixed Mode" on the Setup menu is set to "On", audio is not played if signals other than PCM are input. Change the setting to Off.

Check the following if the problem persists after you have confirmed the above.

### ❑ No sound from the TV

- Change the input selector on this unit to the position of the terminal to which the TV is connected.
- If the TV does not support the ARC function, along with the connection by an HDMI cable, connect the TV with this unit using a digital optical cable or analog audio cable. (→p52)

## ❑ No sound from a connected player

- Change the input selector on this unit to the position of the jack to which the player is connected.
- Check the digital audio output setting on the connected device. On some game consoles, such as those supporting DVD, the default setting may be off.
- For some DVD-Video discs, you need to select an audio output format from a menu.

## ❑ A speaker produces no sound

- Make sure that the polarity (+/-) of the speaker cables is correct, and that no bare wires are in contact with the metal part of speaker terminals. ( →p36)
- Make sure that the speaker cables are not shorting out.
- Check "Connect the Speaker Cables" ( →p36) to see if the speaker connections have been made correctly. Settings for the speaker connection environment need to be made in "Speaker Setup" in Initial Setup. Check "Initial Setup with Auto Start-up Wizard" ( →p158).
- Depending on the input signal and listening mode, not much sound may be output from speakers. Select another listening mode to see if sound is output.
- If surround back speakers are installed, be sure to install surround speakers as well.
- A maximum of 7.1 ch playback is possible when Bi-Amping connection is used. Be sure to remove the jumper bar on the speakers when using Bi-Amping connection.

## ❑ The subwoofer produces no sound

If the setting of the front speakers is "Full Band", the low range elements will be output from the front speakers instead of from the subwoofer during 2 ch audio input of TV or music. To output the sound from the subwoofer, make one of the following settings.

1. Change the setting for the front speakers to a setting of crossover frequency value other than "Full Band".
   The range below the specified frequency will be output from the subwoofer instead of from the front speakers. If your front speakers have a high low-range reproduction capability, changing this setting is not recommended.
2. Change "Double Bass" to "On".
   The low range elements of the front speakers will be output from both the front speakers and the subwoofer. Due to this, the bass sound may be emphasized too much. In such a case, do not change the setting, or make the setting with the above option 1.

- For the setting details, refer to "2. Speaker" - "Crossover" on the Setup menu. ( →p136)
- If the input signals do not contain subwoofer audio elements (LFE), the subwoofer may produce no sound.

## ❑ Noise can be heard

- Using cable ties to bundle audio pin cables, power cords, speaker cables, etc. may degrade the audio performance. Do not bundle the cords.
- An audio cable may be picking up interference. Change the position of the cables.

## ❑ The beginning of audio received by an HDMI IN cannot be heard

- Since it takes longer to identify the format of an HDMI signal than it does for other digital audio signals, audio output may not start immediately.

### ❑ Sound suddenly reduces

- When using the unit for extended periods with the temperature inside the unit exceeding a certain temperature, the volume may be reduced automatically to protect the circuits.

### ❑ Sound suddenly changes

- If ZONE 2 is set to on while ZONE B is set to "On(B)", the volume of ZONE A is restored to the default value.
- When "My Input Volume" is set, the volume is set for each input selector. Check "4. Source" - "My Input Volume" on the Setup menu ( →p143).

## ■ Listening Modes

- To enjoy digital surround playback in formats such as Dolby Digital, you need to make a connection for audio signals with an HDMI cable, digital coaxial cable or digital optical cable. Also, audio output need to be set to Bitstream output on the connected Blu-ray Disc player, etc.
- Press i on the remote controller several times to switch the display of the main unit, and you can check the input format.

Check the following if the problem persists after you have confirmed the above.

### ❑ Cannot select a desired listening mode

- Depending on the connection status of the speaker, some listening modes may not be selected. Check "Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes" ( →p103) or "Input Formats and Selectable Listening Modes" ( →p112) of "Listening Mode".

### ❑ Cannot listen to the sound in Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Atmos or DTS-HD Master Audio format

- If the audio in Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Atmos or DTS-HD Master Audio format cannot be output correctly in the source format, set "BD video supplementary sound" (or reencode, secondary sound, video additional audio, etc.) to "Off" in the setting of a connected Blu-ray Disc player, etc. After changing the setting, switch the listening mode to that for each source, and confirm.

### ❑ About DTS signals

- With media that switches suddenly from DTS to PCM, PCM playback may not start immediately. In such a case, stop playback on the player side for approx. 3 seconds or more. Then, resume playback. The playback will be performed normally.
- DTS playback may not be performed normally on some CD and LD players even if the player and this unit are digitally connected. If some processing (e.g., output level adjustment, sampling frequency conversion, or frequency characteristic conversion) has been executed for the DTS signal being output, this unit cannot recognize it as a genuine DTS signal, and noise may occur.
- While playing a DTS-compatible disc, if a pause or skip operation is performed on your player, noise may occur for a short period. This is not a malfunction.

## ■ Video

- Confirm that the connection between the output jack on the connected device and the input jack on this unit is correct.
- Make sure that none of the connecting cables are bent, twisted, or damaged.
- When the TV image is blurry or unclear, the power cord or connection cables of the unit may have interfered. In such a case, keep distance between TV antenna cable and cables of the unit.
- Check the switching of the input screen on the monitor side such as a TV.

Check the following if the problem persists after you have confirmed the above.

### ❑ No image appears

- If a 4K high-quality video is played, use a Premium High Speed HDMI Cable or Premium High Speed HDMI Cable with Ethernet whose package has a "PREMIUM Certified Cable" label.
- Change the input selector on this unit to the position of the jack to which the player is connected.

### ❑ No image from a device connected to HDMI IN jack

- To display video from the connected player on the TV while the unit is in standby, you need to enable "5. Hardware" - "HDMI" - "HDMI Standby Through" on the Setup menu. For details of the HDMI Standby Through function, check "5. Hardware" - "HDMI" on the Setup menu. (→p145)
- To output video to a TV connected to the HDMI OUT SUB jack, press the Q button on the remote controller to display "Quick Menu" and select "HDMI" - "HDMI Out", or press the HDMI MAIN/SUB button on the remote controller and select the HDMI OUT jack.
- Check if "Resolution Error" is displayed on the main unit display when video input via HDMI IN jack is not displayed. In this case, the TV does not support the resolution of the video input from the player. Change the setting on the player.
- Normal operation with an HDMI-DVI adapter is not guaranteed. In addition, video signals output from a PC are not guaranteed.

### ❑ Images flicker

- The output resolution of the player may not be compatible with the resolution of the TV. If the player is connected to this unit with an HDMI cable, change the output resolution on the player. Also this may be solved by changing the screen mode on the TV.

### ❑ Video and audio are out of synch

- Depending on the settings on your TV and connection environment, the video may be behind the audio. Press Q on the remote controller to display "Quick Menu", select "HDMI" - "A/V Sync", and make the adjustment. (→p155)

## ■ Linked operation

### ❑ HDMI linked operation does not work with CEC-compliant devices, such as a TV

- In the Setup menu of the unit, set "5. Hardware" - "HDMI" - "HDMI CEC" to "On". (→p145)
- It is also necessary to set HDMI linking on the CEC-compliant device. Check the instruction manual.

## ■ Tuner

### ❑ Poor reception or much noise

- Recheck the antenna connection. (→p60)
- Move the antenna away from the speaker cord or power cord.
- Move the unit away from your TV or PC.
- Passing cars or airplanes in the vicinity can cause interference.
- If radio waves are blocked by concrete walls, etc., radio reception may be poor.
- Change the reception mode to mono (→p89).
- Operating the remote controller during AM reception may cause noise.
- FM reception may be clearer if you use the antenna jack on the wall used for the TV.

## ■ BLUETOOTH function

- Unplug and plug the power cord of the unit, or turn off and on the BLUETOOTH-enabled device. Restart of the BLUETOOTH-enabled device may be effective.
- BLUETOOTH-enabled devices must support the A2DP profile.
- Because a radio wave interference will occur, this unit may not be used near devices such as a microwave oven or cordless phone which use the radio wave in the 2.4 GHz range.
- A metallic object near the unit can affect on the radio wave, and BLUETOOTH connection may not be possible.

Check the following if the problem persists after you have confirmed the above.

### ❑ Cannot connect with this unit

- Check if the BLUETOOTH function of the BLUETOOTH-enabled device is enabled. (→p148)

### ❑ Music playback is unavailable on the unit even after successful BLUETOOTH connection

- When the audio volume of your BLUETOOTH-enabled device is set low, the audio may not be played back. Turn up the volume of the BLUETOOTH-enabled device.
- Depending on the BLUETOOTH-enabled device, the Send/Receive selector switch may be equipped. Select Send mode.
- Depending on the characteristics or specifications of the BLUETOOTH-enabled device, music may not be played back on this unit.

### ❑ Sound is interrupted

- There may a problem with the BLUETOOTH-enabled device. Check the information on a web page.

### ❑ The audio quality is poor after connection with a BLUETOOTH-enabled device

- The BLUETOOTH reception is poor. Move the BLUETOOTH-enabled device closer to the unit, or remove any obstacle between the BLUETOOTH-enabled device and this unit.

## ■ Network function

- If you cannot select a network service, start up the network function to select it. It may take approx. one minute to start it up.
- When the NET indicator is blinking, this unit is not properly connected to the home network.
- Unplug and plug the power cords of this unit and the router, or restart the router.
- If the desired router is not displayed in the access point list, it may be set to hide SSID, or the ANY connection may be off. Change the setting and try again.

Check the following if the problem persists after you have confirmed the above.

### ❑ Cannot access the Internet radio

- In the case the service provider has terminated the service, the network service or contents may not be used on this unit.
- Check if your modem and router are properly connected, and they are both turned on.
- Check if the LAN side port on the router is properly connected to this unit.
- Check if connecting to Internet from other devices is possible. If it is not possible, turn off all devices connected to the network, wait for a while, and then turn on the devices again.
- Depending on ISP, setting the proxy server is required.
- Check if the router and modem you are using are supported by your ISP.

### ❑ Cannot access the network server

- This unit needs to be connected to the same router as the network server.
- This unit supports the Windows Media® Player 11 or 12 network servers, or NASes that support the home network function.
- Windows Media® Player may require some settings. Refer to "Playing back files on a PC and NAS (Music Server)". (→p78)
- When using a PC, only the music files registered in the library of Windows Media® Player can be played.

### ❑ Sound is interrupted when playing music files on the network server

- Check if the network server meets the requirements for operation.
- When the PC is serving as the network server, quit application software other than the server software (Windows Media® Player 12, etc.).
- If the PC is downloading or copying large files, the playback sound may be interrupted.

## ■ USB storage device

### ❑ USB storage device is not displayed

- Check if the USB storage device or USB cable is securely inserted to the USB port of the unit. (→p75)
- Disconnect the USB storage device once from the unit, and then reconnect it.
- Performance of the hard disk that receive power from the USB port of the unit is not guaranteed.
- Depending on the type of content, the playback may not be performed normally. Check the types of supported file formats.
- Operations of USB storage devices equipped with security functions are not guaranteed.

## ■ Wireless LAN Network

- Unplug and plug the power cords of this unit and the wireless LAN router, check the power-on status of the wireless LAN router, or restart the wireless LAN router.

Check the following if the problem persists after you have confirmed the above.

### ❑ Cannot access wireless LAN network

- The wireless LAN router setting may be switched to Manual. Restore the setting to Auto.
- Try the manual set-up. The connection may succeed.
- When the wireless LAN router is in stealth mode (mode to hide SSID) or when the ANY connection is off, the SSID is not displayed. Change the setting and try again.
- Check if the SSID and encryption settings (WEP, etc.) are correct. Match the network settings with the settings of this unit.
- Connection to an SSID that includes multi-byte characters is not supported. Set the SSID of the wireless LAN router using single-byte alphanumeric characters only, and try again.

### ❑ Connected to an SSID different from the selected SSID

- Some wireless LAN routers allow you to set multiple SSIDs for one unit. If connecting to such a router using the automatic setting button, you may end up connecting to an SSID different from the SSID you want to connect to. If this occurs, use the connection method requiring you to enter a password

### ❑ Playback sound is interrupted, or communication is not possible

- You may not receive radio waves due to poor radio wave conditions. Shorten the distance from the wireless LAN router, or remove obstacles to improve visibility, and connect again. Install the unit away from microwave ovens or other access points. It is recommended to install the wireless LAN router and the unit in the same room.
- If there is a metallic object near the unit, wireless LAN connection may not be possible because the metal affects the radio wave.
- When other wireless LAN devices are used near the unit, other symptoms may occur, such as interrupted playback and impossible communication. You can avoid those problems by changing the channel of your wireless LAN router. For instructions on changing channels, refer to the instruction manual supplied with your wireless LAN router.
- There may not be enough bandwidth available in wireless LAN. Use a wired LAN for connection.

## ■ ZONE B function

### ❑ Cannot output audio to ZONE B

- To output audio to ZONE B, set the audio output destination for "Audio" - "Zone B" on Quick menu to "On(A+B)" or "On(B)" and also set "2. Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Zone 2 Lineout" on the Setup menu to "Zone B". ( →p97)

## ■ Multi-zone function

### ❑ Cannot ZONE-output the audio of externally connected AV components

- To output audio from an externally connected AV component to ZONE 2, connect it to any of HDMI IN1 to IN3 jacks. If the AV component is not equipped with an HDMI jack, use a digital coaxial cable, digital optical cable or analog audio cable. Also, the audio from externally connected AV components can be output to ZONE 2 only when the audio is analog or 2ch PCM signal. When the AV component is connected to this unit with an HDMI cable, digital coaxial cable or digital optical cable, change the audio output of the AV component to the PCM output.
- When video and audio via HDMI input are output to ZONE 2, set "1. Input/Output Assign" - "TV Out / OSD" - "Zone 2 HDMI" ( →p131) to "Use" on the Setup menu.
- To output audio from an externally connected AV component to ZONE 3, use an analog audio cable for connection. Also, audio from externally connected AV components can be output to ZONE 3 only when it is an analog audio signal.

### ❑ Others

- If the audio signal is from the NET input selector, the zone output is not possible for DSD audio signals.

## ■ Remote Controller

- Make sure that the batteries are inserted with the correct polarity.
- Insert new batteries. Do not mix different types of batteries, or old and new batteries.
- Make sure that the sensor of the main unit is not subjected to direct sunlight or inverter-type fluorescent lights. Relocate it if necessary.
- If the main unit is installed in a rack or cabinet with colored-glass doors, or if the doors are closed, the remote controller may not work normally.

## ■ Display

### ❑ The display does not light up

- When the Dimmer function is working, the display may go dim. Press the DIMMER button, and change the brightness level of the display. ( →p15)

## ■ Others

### ❑ Strange noise can be heard from the unit

- If you have connected another device to the same outlet as this unit, strange noise may occur under the influence of the device. If the symptom is remedied by removing the power plug of the other device from the outlet, use different outlets for this unit and the device.

### ❑ The message "Noise Error" appears during AccuEQ Room Calibration

- This can be caused by a malfunction in your speaker unit. Check the speaker output, etc.

### ❑ The measurement results of AccuEQ Room Calibration show different distances to the speakers from the actual ones

- Depending on the speakers you are using, some errors may occur in the measurement results. If this is the case, make the settings in "2. Speaker" - "Distance" in the Setup menu. (→p137)

### ❑ The measurement results of AccuEQ Room Calibration show that the volume level of the subwoofer has been corrected to the lower limit

- The volume level correction of the subwoofer may not have been completed. Lower the volume of the subwoofer before AccuEQ Room Calibration measurement.

# Reducing the Power Consumption in Standby State

When the following functions are enabled, the power consumption in standby state increases. To reduce the power consumption in standby state, check each setting and set the functions to "Off".

- HDMI CEC ( →p145)
- HDMI Standby Through ( →p145)
- USB Power Out at Standby ( →p150)
- Network Standby ( →p150)
- Bluetooth Wakeup ( →p150)

# About HDMI

## Compatible functions

HDMI (High Definition Multimedia Interface) is a digital interface standard for connecting TVs, projectors, Blu-ray Disc/DVD players, digital tuners, and other video components. Several separate video and audio cables have been required to connect AV components so far. With HDMI, a single cable can transmit control signals, digital video and digital audio (2-channel PCM, multichannel digital audio, and multichannel PCM).

HDMI CEC function:
By connecting a device that complies with CEC (Consumer Electronics Control) of the HDMI standard using an HDMI cable, a variety of linked operations between devices are possible. This function enables various linking operations with players, such as switching input selectors interlocking with a player, adjusting the volume of this unit using the remote controller of a TV, and automatically switching this unit to standby when the TV is turned off.
The unit is designed to link with products that comply with the CEC standard, however, linked operation is not always guaranteed with all CEC devices.
For linked functions to work properly, do not connect CEC-compliant devices exceeding the connectable number to the HDMI jack as shown below.

- Blu-ray Disc/DVD players: up to 3 units
- Blu-ray Disc/DVD recorders: up to 3 units
- Cable TV tuner, terrestrial digital tuner, and satellite broadcasting tuner: up to 4 units

We have confirmed the operations of the following devices. (As of January 2019)
Toshiba brand televisions; Sharp brand televisions; Onkyo and Integra brand RIHD-compatible players; Toshiba brand players and recorders; Sharp brand players and recorders (when used with a Sharp brand television)

ARC (Audio Return Channel):
By connecting an ARC-compliant TV with a single HDMI cable, you can output the audio and video from this unit to the TV, and also input the audio from the TV to this unit.

HDMI Standby Through:
Even if this unit is in standby mode, the input signals from AV components can be transmitted to the TV.

Deep Color:
By connecting devices supporting Deep Color, video signals input from the devices can be reproduced on the TV with even more colors.

x.v.Color™:
This technology reproduces even more realistic colors by expanding the color gamut.

3D:
You can transmit 3D video signals from AV components to the TV.

4K:
This unit supports 4K (3840×2160p) and 4K SMPTE (4096×2160p) video signals.

Lip Sync:
Automatically corrects desynchronization between the video and audio signals based on the information from the HDMI Lip-Sync-compatible TV.

Copyright Protection:
The HDMI jack of this unit conforms to the Revision 1.4 and Revision 2.2 standards of the HDCP (High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection), a copy protection system for digital video signals. Other devices connected to the unit must also conform to the HDCP standards.

## Supported Audio Formats

2 ch linear PCM:
32 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, 192 kHz, 16/20/24 bit

Multi-channel linear PCM:
Maximum 7.1 channels, 32 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, 192 kHz, 16/20/24 bit

Bitstream:
Dolby Atmos, Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD, DTS, DTS:X, DTS-HD High Resolution Audio, DTS-HD Master Audio, DTS 96/24, DTS-ES, DTS Express, IMAX DTS, IMAX DTS:X

DSD:
Supported sampling rates: 2.8 MHz

Your Blu-ray Disc/DVD player must also support the HDMI output of the above audio formats.

## Supported resolutions

HDMI IN1 to IN6:
- Copyright protection technology: HDCP1.4/HDCP2.2
- Color space (Color Depth):
  - 720×480i 60 Hz, 720×576i 50 Hz, 720×480p 60 Hz, 720×576p 50 Hz, 1920×1080i 50/60 Hz, 1280×720p 24/25/30/50/60 Hz, 1680×720p 24/25/30/50/60 Hz, 1920×1080p 24/25/30/50/60 Hz, 2560×1080p 24/25/30/50/60 Hz, 4K (3840×2160p) 24/25/30 Hz, 4K SMPTE (4096×2160p) 24/25/30 Hz : RGB/YCbCr4:4:4 (8/10/12 bit), YCbCr4:2:2 (12 bit)
  - 4K (3840×2160p) 50/60 Hz, 4K SMPTE (4096×2160p) 50/60 Hz : RGB/YCbCr4:4:4 (8 bit), YCbCr4:2:2 (12 bit), YCbCr4:2:0 (8/10/12 bit)

AUX INPUT HDMI (front):
- Copyright protection technology: HDCP1.4/HDCP2.2
- Color space (Color Depth):
  - 720×480i 60 Hz, 720×576i 50 Hz, 720×480p 60 Hz, 720×576p 50 Hz, 1920×1080i 50/60 Hz, 1280×720p 24/25/30/50/60 Hz, 1680×720p 24/25/30/50/60 Hz, 1920×1080p 24/25/30/50/60 Hz, 2560×1080p 24/25/30/50/60 Hz : RGB/YCbCr4:4:4 (8/10/12 bit), YCbCr4:2:2 (12 bit)
  - 4K (3840×2160p) 24/25/30 Hz, 4K SMPTE (4096×2160p) 24/25/30 Hz : RGB/YCbCr4:4:4 (8 bit), YCbCr4:2:2 (12 bit)
  - 4K (3840×2160p) 50/60 Hz, 4K SMPTE (4096×2160p) 50/60 Hz : YCbCr4:2:0 (8 bit)

# General Specifications

## ■ Amplifier Section

Rated Output Power (FTC) (North American)
With 8 ohm loads, both channels driven, from 20-20,000 Hz; rated 100 watts per channel minimum RMS power, with no more than 0.08% total harmonic distortion from 250 milliwatts to rated output.
Maximum Effective Output Power (North American)
220 W at 6 ohms, 1 kHz, 1 ch driven of 10% THD
Maximum Effective Output Power (JEITA)
9 ch × 185 W at 6 ohms, 1 kHz, 1 ch driven of 10% THD (Asian)
Dynamic Power (*)
* IEC60268-Short-term maximum output power
250 W (3 Ω, Front)
220 W (4 Ω, Front)
130 W (8 Ω, Front)
THD+N (Total Harmonic Distortion+Noise)
0.08% (20 Hz - 20,000 Hz, half power)
Input Sensitivity and Impedance
200 mV/47 kΩ (LINE (RCA))
3.5 mV/47 kΩ (PHONO MM)
Rated RCA Output Level and Impedance
1 V/470 Ω (SUBWOOFER PRE OUT)
200 mV/470 Ω (ZONE B/ZONE 2 LINE OUT)
Phono Maximum Input Signal Voltage
70 mV (MM 1 kHz 0.5%)
Frequency Response
10 Hz - 100 kHz/+1 dB, –3 dB (Direct)
Tone Control Characteristics
±10 dB, 20 Hz (BASS)
±10 dB, 20 kHz (TREBLE)
Signal to Noise Ratio
106 dB (IHF-A, LINE IN, SP OUT)
80 dB (IHF-A, PHONO IN, SP OUT)
Speaker Impedance
4 Ω - 16 Ω (Normal)
8 Ω - 16 Ω (Bi-Wiring)
Headphone Rated Output
85 mW + 85 mW (32 Ω, 1 kHz, 10% THD)
Supported impedance of Headphones
8 Ω - 600 Ω
Headphones Frequency Response
10 Hz - 100 kHz

## ■ Video Section

Signal level
1 Vp-p/75 Ω (Composite Video)
1 Vp-p/75 Ω (Component Video Y)
0.7 Vp-p/75 Ω (Component Video Pb/Pr)
Maximum resolution supported by component video
480i/576i

## ■ Tuner Section

FM Tuning Frequency Range
87.5 MHz - 107.9 MHz (North American)
87.5 MHz - 108.0 MHz, RDS (Others)
50 dB quieting sensitivity (FM MONO)
1.0 µV, 11.2 dBf (IHF, 75 Ω)
AM Tuning Frequency Range
530 kHz - 1710 kHz (North American)
522/530 kHz - 1611/1710 kHz (Others)
Preset Channel
40

## ■ Network Section

Ethernet LAN
10BASE-T/100BASE-TX

Wireless LAN
IEEE 802.11 a/b/g/n/ac standard
(Wi-Fi® standard)
5 GHz/2.4 GHz band

## ■ BLUETOOTH Section

Communication system
BLUETOOTH Specification version 4.2
Frequency band
2.4 GHz band
Modulation method
FHSS (Frequency Hopping Spread Spectrum)
Compatible BLUETOOTH profiles
A2DP 1.2
AVRCP 1.3
Supported Codecs
SBC
AAC
Transmission range (A2DP)
20 Hz - 20 kHz (Sampling frequency 44.1 kHz)
Maximum communication range
Line of sight approx. 15 m (*)
* The actual range will vary depending on factors such as obstacles between devices, magnetic fields around a microwave oven, static electricity, cordless phone, reception sensitivity, antenna's performance, operating system, software application, etc.

## ■ General

Power Supply
AC 120 V, 60 Hz (North American)
AC 220 - 240 V, 50/60 Hz (Others)
Power Consumption
750 W (North American)
760 W (Others)
0.15 W (Full Standby mode)
1.8 W (Network Standby (wired)) (North American)
2.0 W (Network Standby (wired)) (Others)
2.0 W (Network Standby (wireless))
1.8 W (Bluetooth Wakeup) (North American)
2.0 W (Bluetooth Wakeup) (Others)
0.15 W (HDMI CEC)
*2.8 W (Equipment with HiNA functionality Standby mode, Network disconnect and Network Standby ON) (North American)
3.0 W (Equipment with HiNA functionality Standby mode, Network disconnect and Network Standby ON) (Others)
2.9 W (Standby mode (ALL ON)) (North American)
3.1 W (Standby mode (ALL ON)) (Others)
75 W (No-sound)
6.2 W (HDMI Standby Through) (North American)
6.7 W (HDMI Standby Through) (Others)
* This equipment complies with European Commission Regulation (EC) No 1275/2008 as equipment with HiNA functionality.
If you do not to use the Network function, please set Network Standby setting to Off. You can reduce power consumption under standby mode.
Dimensions (W × H × D)
435 mm × 173.5 mm × 379.5 mm
17-1/8" × 6-13/16" × 14-15/16"
Weight
10.8 kg (23.8 lbs.)

## ■ HDMI

Input
IN1 (BD/DVD), IN2 (GAME), IN3 (CBL/SAT), IN4 (STRM BOX), IN5 (PC), IN6, AUX INPUT HDMI (front)
Output
OUT MAIN (ARC), OUT ZONE 2/SUB
Supported
Deep Color, x.v.Color™, Lip Sync, Audio Return Channel, 3D, 4K 60 Hz, CEC, Extended Colorimetry (sYCC601, Adobe RGB, Adobe YCC601), Content Type, HDR (HDR10, BT.2020, HLG), Dolby Vision
Audio Format
Dolby Atmos, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, DTS, DTS:X, DTS-HD Master Audio, DTS-HD High Resolution Audio, DTS 96/24, DTS-ES, DTS Express, IMAX DTS, IMAX DTS:X , DSD, PCM

HDCP version
2.2
Maximum Video Resolution
4K 60 Hz (YCbCr 4:4:4)

## ■ Video Inputs

Component
BD/DVD
Composite
IN1 (CBL/SAT), IN2 (STRM BOX)

## ■ Supported input resolutions

HDMI input
4K, 1080p/24, 1080p, 1080i, 720p, 480p/576p

- Signals are output from the HDMI OUT jack of this unit to the TV with the same resolution as the input resolution. When a TV supporting 4K is used, HDMI video signals with 1080p can be output with 4K.

## ■ Audio Inputs

Digital
OPTICAL (TV)
COAXIAL (BD/DVD)
Analog
BD/DVD, GAME, CBL/SAT, STRM BOX, CD, TV, PHONO, AUX (front)

## ■ Audio Outputs

Analog
ZONE B/ZONE 2 LINE OUT
2 SUBWOOFER PRE OUT
Speaker Outputs
FRONT L/R, CENTER, SURROUND L/R, HEIGHT 1 L/R or ZONE 2 L/R, HEIGHT 2 L/R or SURROUND BACK L/R or ZONE 3 L/R (North American models support banana plugs.)
Phones
PHONES (Front, ø 6.3 mm, 1/4")

## ■ Others

Setup Mic : 1 (Front)
USB : 1 (Ver. 2.0, 5 V/1.0 A)
Ethernet : 1
RS232 : 1
IR IN : 1
12V TRIGGER OUT : 1 (100 mA)

Specifications and features are subject to change without notice.

❑ →License and Trademark

ONKYO

SN 29403699_EN
(C) Copyright 2019 Onkyo & Pioneer Corporation Japan. All rights reserved. Onkyo group has established its Privacy Policy, available at [http://www.onkyo.com/privacy/].
H1903-0

# Initial Setup Guide

Guide de Configuration Initiale / Guía de configuración inicial

AV RECEIVER / AMPLI-TUNER AUDIO-VIDEO

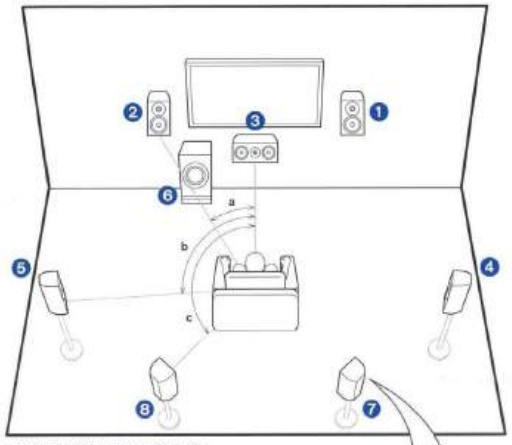
**TX-NR797**

SN 29403660 F1901-0

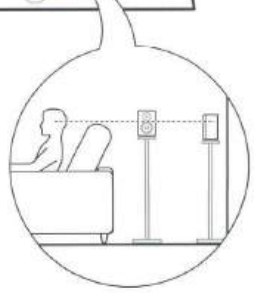
* 2 9 4 0 3 6 6 0 *

7.1 ch System

1,2 Front Speakers
3 Center Speaker
4,5 Surround Speakers
6 Powered Subwoofer
7,8 Surround Back Speakers




a: 22° to 30°, b: 90° to 110°, c: 135° to 150°



En : Refer to the instruction manual available on our website to install and connect speaker systems other than 7.1 ch. / Fr : Se référer aux instructions du mode d'emploi disponible sur notre site Web pour installer et raccorder les systèmes d'enceintes autres que 7.1. / Es : Consulte el manual de instrucciones disponible en nuestro sitio web para instalar y conectar sistemas de altavoces que no sean de 7.1 canales.

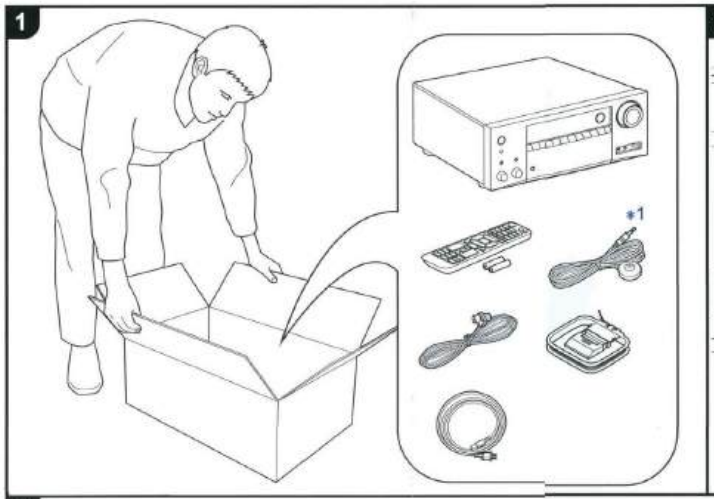
http://www.onkyo.com/manual/txnr797/top.pdf

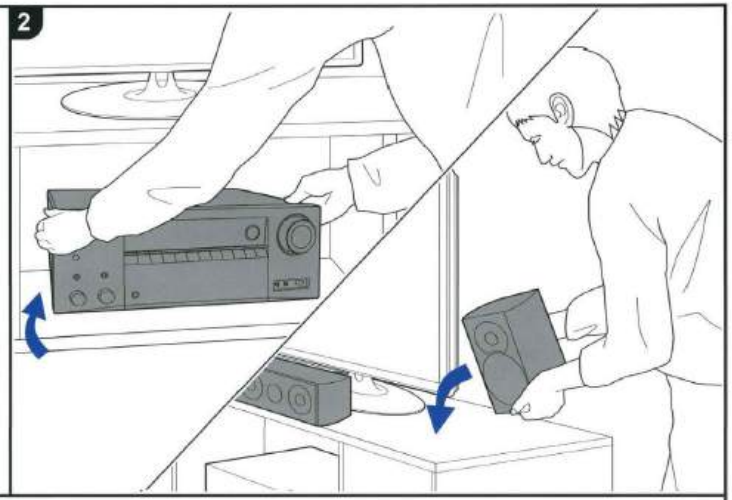
ONKYO

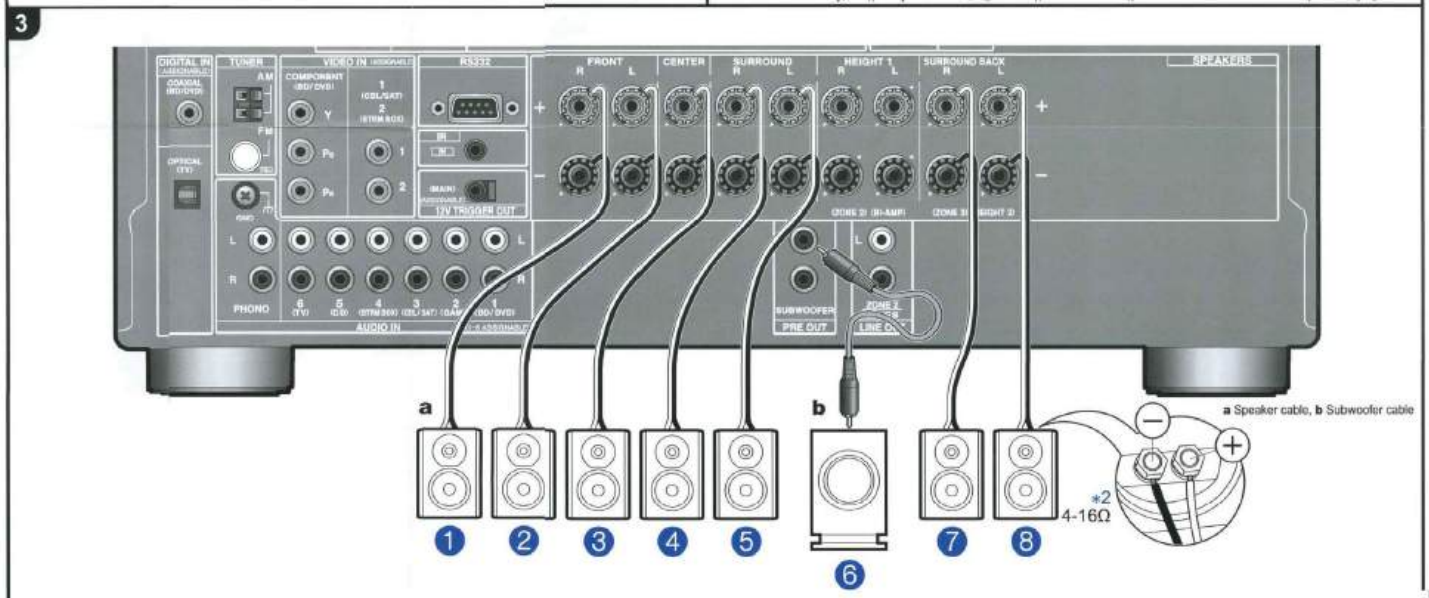
# 1. Install & Connections

Installation & Raccordements / Instalación y conexiones

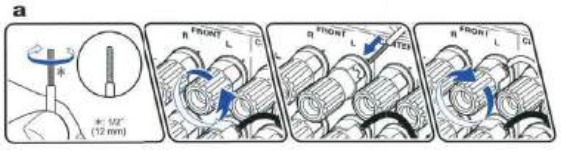
*1 *2 *3 →



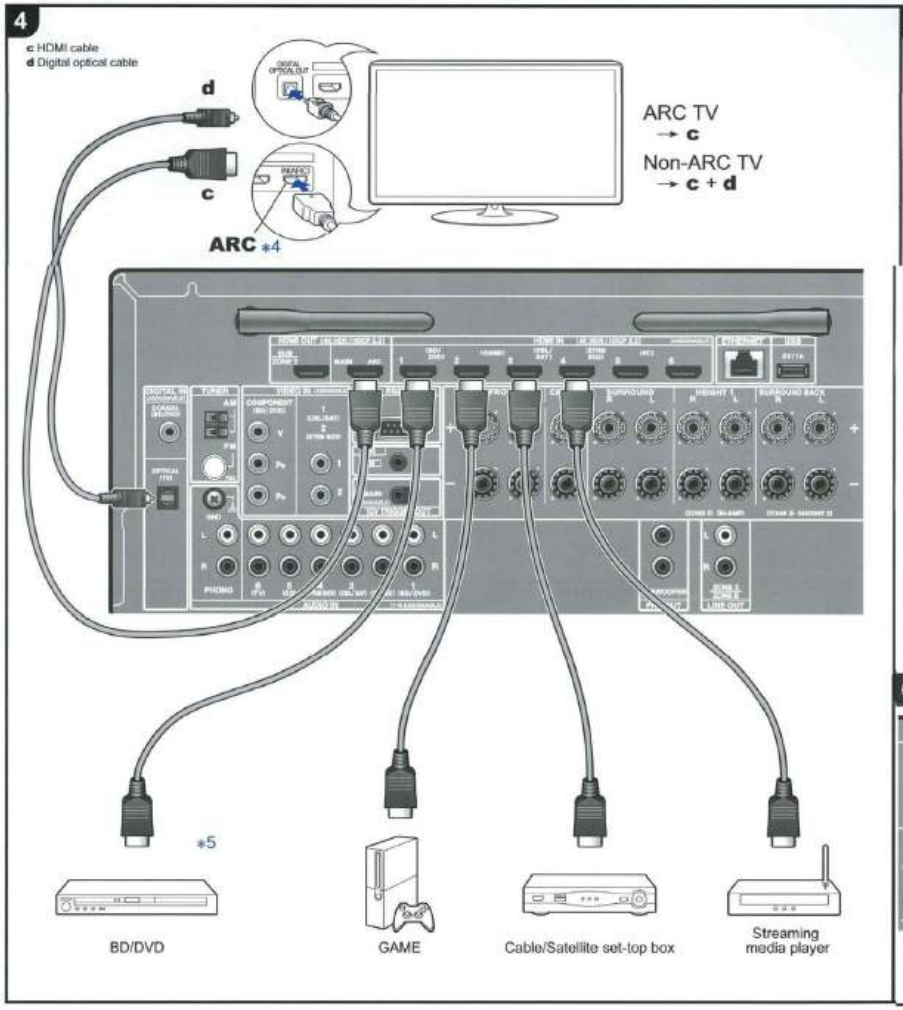



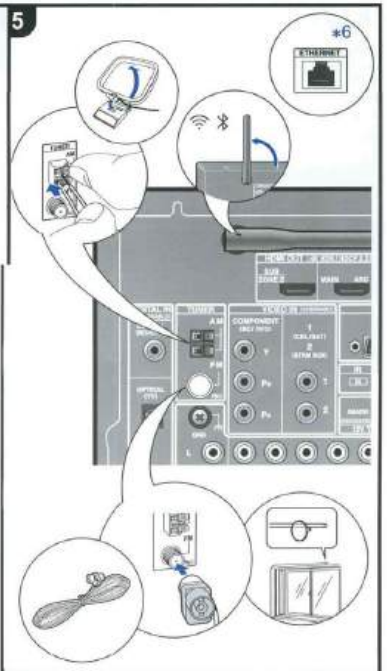

a Speaker cable, b Subwoofer cable

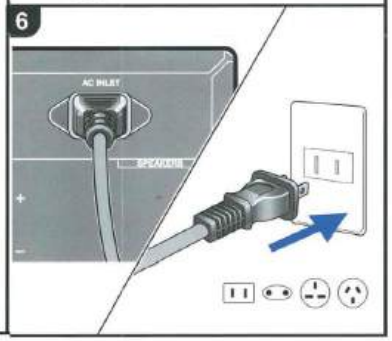


En : Refer to the instruction manual available on our website to install and connect speaker systems other than 7.1 ch. / Fr : Se référer aux instructions du mode d'emploi disponible sur notre site Web pour installer et raccorder les systèmes d'enceintes autres que 7.1. / Es : Consulte el manual de instrucciones disponible en nuestro sitio web para instalar y conectar sistemas de altavoces que no sean de 7.1 canales.

http://www.onkyo.com/manual/txnr797/top.pdf




∗1
**En :** Used during Initial Setup. / **Fr :** Utilisé durant la configuration initiale. / **Es :** Utilizado durante la configuración inicial.

∗2
**En :** Connect speakers with 4 Ω to 16 Ω impedance. If any of the connected speakers have 4 Ω or more to less than 6 Ω impedance, in "Initial Setup", "Speaker Setup", set "Speaker Impedance" to "4ohms". / **Fr :** Raccordez des enceintes de valeur d'impédance comprise entre 4 Ω et 16 Ω. Si l'une des enceintes raccordées possède une impédance qui se situe entre 4 Ω et moins de 6 Ω, dans "Initial Setup", "Speaker Setup", réglez "Speaker Impedance" sur "4ohms". / **Es :** Conecte altavoces con una impedancia de entre 4 Ω y 16 Ω. Si cualquiera de los altavoces conectados tiene una impedancia de 4 Ω o más hasta menos de 6 Ω, en "Initial Setup", "Speaker Setup", ajuste "Speaker Impedance" en "4ohms".

∗3
**En :** Make sure the wires at the ends of the speaker cables are twisted tightly and do not stick out of the speaker terminals when connecting. The unit can be damaged if the exposed wires of the speakers touch the rear panel or the + and - wires touch each other. / **Fr :** Assurez-vous de torsader légèrement les fils à l'extrémité du câble d'enceinte et qu'ils ne sortent pas des bornes d'enceinte lors du raccordement. L'appareil peut être endommagé si les fils dénudés des enceintes entrent en contact avec le panneau arrière ou si les fils + et - se touchent. / **Es :** Asegúrese de que los hilos de los extremos de los cables de los altavoces estén bien trenzados y no sobresalgan de los terminales de los altavoces al conectarlos. La unidad podría sufrir daños si los cables expuestos de los altavoces tocan el panel trasero o los cables + y - se tocan entre sí.

∗4
**En :** If it is an ARC TV, connect to the ARC compatible input jack on the TV. Settings are required to use the ARC function. Select "Yes" for "ARC Setup" in "Initial Setup". / **Fr :** S'il s'agit d'un TV ARC, branchez la prise compatible ARC du téléviseur. Des réglages sont nécessaires pour utiliser la fonctionnalité ARC. Sélectionnez "Yes" pour "ARC Setup" dans "Initial Setup". / **Es :** Si se trata de un TV ARC, conecte al conector de entrada compatible con ARC del TV. Para usar la función ARC se requieren algunos ajustes. Seleccione "Yes" para "ARC Setup" en la "Initial Setup".

∗5
**En :** To output the audio of an AV component to ZONE 3, as well as connecting using the HDMI cable, it is also necessary connect using an analog audio cable. For details, refer to the instruction manual. / **Fr :** Pour reproduire le son d'un appareil AV vers la ZONE 3, en plus de brancher un câble HDMI, il est également nécessaire de brancher un câble audio analogique. Pour plus de détails, consultez le mode d'emploi. / **Es :** Para transmitir el audio de un componente AV a la ZONE 3, así como para conectar mediante el cable HDMI, también es necesario conectar mediante un cable de audio analógico. Para más detalles, consulte el manual de instrucciones.

∗6
**En :** If you connect this unit to the network using wired LAN, connect an LAN cable to the ETHERNET port. / **Fr :** Si vous connectez cet appareil au réseau à l'aide du LAN filaire, branchez un câble LAN au port ETHERNET. / **Es :** Si conecta esta unidad a la red usando una LAN con cable, conecte un cable de LAN al puerto ETHERNET.

∗7
**En :** Switch the input on the TV to that assigned to the unit. Follow the guidance displayed on the screen to complete Initial Setup. Note that there are a maximum of 9 listening points available for measuring with "AccuEQ Room Calibration" when the listening area is large. Also, if you selected "No. Skip" for "ARC Setup", to enable HDMI CEC and HDMI Standby Through function, after completing Initial Setup, you will need to press ⏻ on the remote controller and make the settings in "5. Hardware" - "1. HDMI". / **Fr :** Réglez l'entrée du téléviseur sur celle assignée à l'appareil. Suivez les instructions affichées sur l'écran pour terminer la Configuration initiale. Notez qu'il y a un maximum de 9 points d'écoute disponibles à mesurer avec le "AccuEQ Room Calibration" lorsque la zone d'écoute est grande. De plus, si vous sélectionnez "No. Skip" dans "ARC Setup", pour activer les fonctions HDMI CEC et HDMI Standby Through, une fois la Configuration Initiale effectuée, vous devrez appuyer sur ⏻ de la télécommande et effectuer les réglages dans "5. Hardware" - "1. HDMI". / **Es :** Cambie la entrada en la TV a aquella asignada a la unidad. Siga la guía mostrada en la pantalla para completar la configuración inicial. Tenga en cuenta que se puede medir un máximo de 9 puntos de escucha con "AccuEQ Room Calibration" cuando el área de escucha es grande. Además, si seleccionó "No. Skip" para "ARC Setup", para activar HDMI CEC y la función HDMI Standby Through, tras completar la configuración inicial, tendrá que pulsar ⏻ en el mando a distancia y realizar los ajustes en "5. Hardware" - "1. HDMI".

## Tips

### When the unit is operating erratically

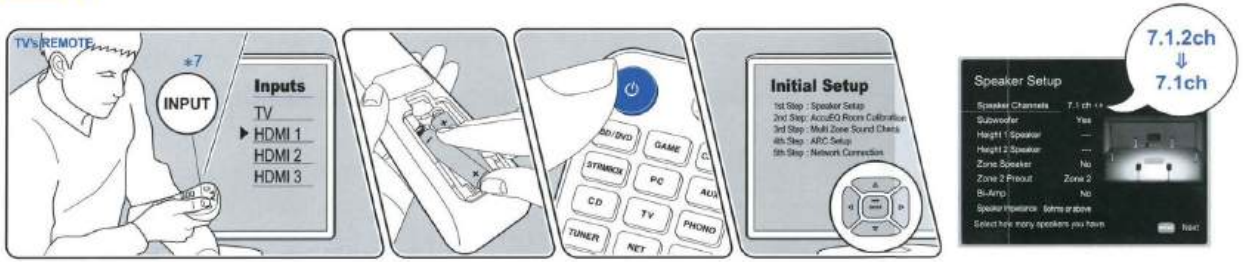
Lorsque l'appareil fonctionne de façon irrégulière / Cuando el funcionamiento de la unidad sea errático

**En :** If operation becomes unstable, try restarting the unit. Set the unit to standby, then press and hold ⏻ ON/STANDBY on the main unit for 5 seconds or more. / **Fr :** Si le fonctionnement devient instable, essayez de redémarrer l'appareil. Mettez l'appareil en mode veille, puis appuyez sur la touche ⏻ ON/STANDBY de l'appareil principal pendant au moins 5 secondes. / **Es :** Si el funcionamiento se vuelve inestable, pruebe a reiniciar la unidad. Ajuste la unidad en el modo de espera y después mantenga pulsado ⏻ ON/STANDBY en la unidad principal durante 5 segundos o más.

**En :** If restarting doesn't fix the problem, try unplugging the power cord and HDMI cables then replugging them in again, initializing settings (with the unit ON, while pressing CBL/SAT on the main unit, press ⏻ ON/STANDBY), and trying Firmware Update. / **Fr :** Si le redémarrage de régle pas le problème, essayez de débrancher le cordon d'alimentation et les câbles HDMI puis de les rebrancher, paramètres d'initialisation (avec l'appareil en marche, tout en appuyant sur la touche CBL/SAT de l'appareil principal, appuyez sur ⏻ ON/STANDBY), et essayez la Mise à jour du micrologiciel. / **Es :** Si reiniciar la unidad no soluciona el problema, pruebe a desconectar el cable de alimentación y los cables HDMI y volverlos a conectar, a ajustar de inicialización (cuando la unidad se encuentra en ON, mientras pulsa CBL/SAT en la unidad principal, pulse ⏻ ON/STANDBY), y a actualizar el firmware.

# 2. Initial Setup with Auto Start-up Wizard

Configuration avec l'assistant de démarrage automatique / Configuración con el asistente de arranque automático




To redo the initial setup / Pour refaire la configuration initiale / Para rehacer la configuración inicial

⚙ ▷ "7. Miscellaneous" ▷ "4.Initial Setup"

ONKYO

# TX-NR797 9.2-Channel Network A/V Receiver

SMART AV RECEIVER

BLACK

CERTIFIED BY THX · THX SELECT · 4K HDR ULTRA HD HDR10, HLG, BT. 2020 · COMPATIBLE DOLBY VISION · IMAX ENHANCED · dts X · DOLBY ATMOS · Dynamic Audio Amplification

384kHz 32bit · Works with Apple AirPlay · Wi Fi CERTIFIED · ONKYO · Bluetooth · Works with SONOS · Chromecast built-in · works with the Google Assistant

dts Play-Fi · Flare connect · DEEZER · TIDAL · pandora · Spotify · Spotify · music

TUNE IN · AccuEQ ROOM CALIBRATION ADVANCE · ZONE B · POWERED ZONE 2 · POWERED ZONE 3 · Hi-Res AUDIO

## Think big, go bigger with exhilarating sound by Onkyo

This 9.2-channel Onkyo SMART A/V Receiver™ plays the lead role in your whole-home audio experience. Works with Sonos, Chromecast built-in*1, AirPlay 2, and DTS Play-Fi® are enhanced by high-speed 802.11ac Wi-Fi® while speaker outputs with DACs can power D/A audio in three rooms. With nine channels of high-current power on tap, roll up the volume to THX® Certified Select™ reference level and wrap your family in 5.2.4 channels of Dolby Atmos® or DTS:X® sound, or feel IMAX® Enhanced*2 content as the filmmakers intended. Dolby Surround® upmixes legacy sound for height-enabled systems while Dolby Atmos Height Virtualizer creates a 3D sound-field using horizontal speakers. DAA features an upgraded power-train while anti-noise refinements result in a wider soundstage. AccuEQ Advance 9-point calibration eliminates standing waves so audio is expressed naturally. All this and more helps the TX-NR797 shape entertainment to your life. **1 The unit may automatically download and apply an Over-the-Air software update during setup. *2 Enabled with a future firmware update.*

### PRODUCT HIGHLIGHTS

- 220 W/Ch THX® Certified Select™ DAA system
- SMART AV Receiver Works with Sonos, Chromecast built-in*1, AirPlay 2, DTS Play-Fi®, FlareConnect™*2, Spotify®, Amazon Music, Pandora®, TIDAL, Deezer, TuneIn*3
- 9.2-ch amps support 5.2.4-ch Dolby Atmos® and DTS:X®
- Dolby Atmos Height Virtualizer*4
- IMAX® Enhanced*4 certified for IMAX® digital remasters
- Refined HDMI® grounds, SoC board, and power amps
- HDMI Sub/Zone 2 output for a sub-display or projector
- Quad-core SoC supports 802.11ac (2x2 MIMO) Wi-Fi®*5
- Zone 2/Zone B line-out with DAC shares D/A audio (including HDMI/SPDIF*6)
- Supports 5.2-ch Main + Powered Zone 2 + Powered Zone 3 speaker outputs for simultaneous/independent D/A audio distribution*7
- Stereo Assign Mode supports Height-channel playback
- DSP-based Vocal Enhancer improves dialog audibility
- OSD features media input/output data display function
- HDMI supports 4K/60p, 4K HDR, BT.2020, HDCP 2.2
- AccuEQ Advance 9-point calibration with AccuReflex™
- Volume memory-presets for A/V inputs via front panel
- IP control, RS-232C, 12 V trigger output, and IR input

### AMPLIFIER FEATURES

- 220 W/Ch (6 ohms, 1 kHz, 10% THD, 1 channel driven), 100 W/Ch (8 ohms, 20 Hz–20 kHz, 0.08% THD, 2 channels driven, FTC)
- Certified for IMAX Enhanced and THX Certified Select
- Dynamic Audio Amplification
- Custom High-Current Low-Noise Power Transformer
- Large custom-made audio power capacitors
- Non-phase-shift amp topology with discrete output stage
- Strengthened power-supply line for high-current dynamics
- Refined HDMI grounds and short signal-paths reduce noise
- Isolated SoC board reduces interference
- High current capability for 4-ohm speaker drive
- AKM (AK4458) 384 kHz/32-bit multichannel D/A conversion
- VLSC™ (Vector Linear Shaping Circuitry) noise filtering (Front L/R)
- PLL (Phase Locked Loop) anti-jitter technology for SPDIF audio
- Independent tone controls for all channels (excluding Zone 2/3)

### VIDEO & AUDIO SUPPORT

- Supports HDCP 2.2, 4K/60p, HDR (Dolby Vision™, HDR10, HLG), BT.2020, 4:4:4 color sub-sampling, 24-bit color, 3D Video, ARC (Audio Return Channel), DeepColor™, x.v.Color, and LipSync via HDMI
- Dolby Atmos, DTS:X, Dolby® TrueHD, and DTS-HD Master Audio®
- Dolby Atmos Height Virtualizer 3D processing
- Dolby Surround® and DTS® Neural:X upmixing technology
- IMAX Mode for IMAX Enhanced content
- THX® listening modes for movies, music, and games
- Sound optimization for games (Rock, Sports, Action, and RPG)
- Theater-Dimensional virtual surround-sound function

### NETWORK FEATURES

- SMART AV Receiver supports multi-room audio, streaming services, and Onkyo Controller*8 remote streaming app
- Works with Sonos for the Sonos Home Sound System*9
- Chromecast built-in and voice control with the Google Assistant*10
- AirPlay 2 multi-room audio and voice control with Siri*11
- DTS Play-Fi multi-room audio via Onkyo Music Control App*8
- FlareConnect multi-zone audio with compatible components
- Quad-core SoC supports high-speed 802.11ac (2x2 MIMO) Wi-Fi
- Hi-Res Audio playback via network (DSD 11.2 MHz/5.6 MHz/2.8 MHz*12; FLAC, WAV [RIFF], AIFF, and ALAC to 192 kHz/24-bit*13)

### CONNECTION FEATURES

- 7 HDMI inputs (1 front), 2 outputs (Main [ARC], Sub/Zone 2)
- 1 component video input (assignable)
- 2 composite video inputs (assignable)
- 2 digital audio inputs (optical and coaxial, assignable)
- 6 analog RCA inputs (assignable)
- 1/8" (3.5 mm) mini-stereo analog input (front)
- 1 phono input with built-in MM equalizer for turntable
- 1/8" (3.5 mm) setup mic input for AccuEQ (front)
- 1/4" (6.35 mm) headphone jack (front)
- 2 subwoofer pre-outs
- Zone 2/Zone B analog RCA line-level output
- 9 banana-plug-ready screw-type speaker posts
- Bi-directional Ethernet terminal for network and IP control
- USB input (5 V/1 A) for audio playback (rear)
- RS-232 serial input for control
- IR (infrared) input for remote-control extenders
- 12 V trigger output (Main, assignable, 100 mA)
- AC power socket for detachable power cord

### ADVANCED FEATURES

- AccuEQ Advance 9-point calibration with AccuReflex™
- Vocal Enhancer DSP clarifies dialog via remote or front-panel controls
- *Bluetooth*® technology with Wake on Play Standby, auto input selection for voice control with selected smart speakers
- Advanced Music Optimizer improves compressed audio playback
- Zone 2 and Zone 3 outputs support synced/independent multi-source D/A audio distribution (including HDMI/SPDIF)
- Front to Height speaker switching in Stereo Assign Mode
- Zone 2/Zone B line-out (analog RCA) with Zone 2 DAC connects compatible audio systems for synced/independent D/A playback (including HDMI/SPDIF) in Main and Zone 2; connects compatible transmitters for wireless headphones
- One-touch volume memory-presets for A/V inputs via front panel
- 1080p to 4K upscaling via HDMI
- GUI with overlaid OSD via HDMI featuring media input/output display
- Crossover adjustment for each channel (40/50/60/70/80/90/100/120/150/180/200 Hz)
- A/V Sync Control (up to 500 ms in 5 ms steps at 48 kHz)
- Various standby modes and HDMI pass-through
- Optional rack-mounting kit (IRK-155-3D)
- IP control for home automation, SmartGrid-ready
- 3-Mode display dimmer (Normal/Dim/Dimmer)
- 40 FM/AM random presets
- Redesigned simple remote control

**1 The unit may automatically download and apply an Over-the-Air software update during setup. *2 FlareConnect is a proprietary network protocol that shares select audio sources between supported components. Please visit the Onkyo website for product compatibility information. *3 Service availability varies with region and subscriptions may be required. *4 Enabled with a future firmware update. *5 Some countries or regions have regulations that affect wireless signal strength and the use of Wi-Fi channels. *6 When set to Zone 2, HDMI audio is available on inputs 1–3. SPDIF and HDMI support PCM signals only. Simultaneous playback of multiple audio sources is enabled. When set to Zone B, encoded and PCM audio playback for all inputs is enabled in Main and Zone B. *7 Zone 2 HDMI audio is available on inputs 1–3. SPDIF and HDMI support PCM signals only. Simultaneous playback of multiple audio sources is enabled in Main, Zone 2, and Zone 3. Zone 3 supports analog/NET/Bluetooth. Output via Zone 2 output and Zone 2/Zone B line-out enabled. *8 Available free at the App Store and Google Play for iPhone, iPad, and Android™ devices. Please check device and OS requirements before installation. *9 Requires a Sonos Connect (sold separately). *10 Voice control requires a smart speaker featuring the Google Assistant. *11 Voice control with Siri requires an Apple HomePod. *12 Converted to PCM. DSD playback over Wi-Fi cannot be guaranteed in all network environments. *13 Supported sampling rates may vary depending on network environment. ALAC supported to 96 kHz.*

# TX-NR797 9.2-Channel Network A/V Receiver

### SMART AV Receiver™ makes multi-room easy

SMART AV Receiver is the heart of your home entertainment system. Access streaming content from Amazon Music, Pandora®, Spotify®, TIDAL, Deezer, and TuneIn and share sound as part of a multi-room system via Works with Sonos, Chromecast built-in*, AirPlay 2, DTS Play-Fi®, and FlareConnect™.

SMART AV RECEIVER

** The unit may automatically download and apply an Over-the-Air software update during setup.*

### Works with Sonos

The TX-NR797 can join your existing Sonos Home Sound System, or be the start of a new one, just by pairing it with a Sonos Connect*. The AVR ties into the Sonos ecosystem, waking, changing inputs, and playing at the desired volume on command from the Sonos app*.

** Sonos Connect sold separately. Sonos app is available free for iPad, iPhone, and Android™ at the App Store and Google Play. Please confirm device and OS compatibility before installation.*

### Chromecast built-in with the Google Assistant

Stream any music from your smartphone, laptop, or PC to the receiver with ease. Control playback with Chromecast-enabled apps you know and love from your iPhone, iPad, Android phone or tablet, Mac or Windows® laptop, or Chromebook. If you have a smart speaker featuring the Google Assistant, you can cue, play, and control music playback by voice.

*Note: The unit may automatically download and apply an Over-the-Air software update during setup.*

### Experience IMAX® Enhanced

IMAX Enhanced* A/V receivers feature DTS:X sound technology optimized for the IMAX® signature experience, reproducing the full dynamic range of IMAX theatrical sound-mixes available with digitally re-mastered IMAX Enhanced content. A pre-set IMAX Mode reproduces audio at the highest levels and delivers IMAX Enhanced content as the filmmakers intended. IMAX Enhanced versions of a range of films, from Hollywood blockbusters to documentaries, will be released for 4K HDR streaming and Ultra HD Blu-ray™.

IMAX® ENHANCED

** Enabled with a future firmware update.*

### THX® Certified Select™ theater-reference sound

THX Certified Select guarantees the same reference volume level of a commercial theater in rooms where the viewing position is about 10–12 ft. from the screen. To gain certification for reference sound within strict THX® sound-quality parameters, receivers must pass 2,000 bench-tests in 75 categories covering 14,000 data points.

### Dolby Atmos® and DTS:X® – setting sound free

Dolby Atmos and DTS:X map sounds in the movie to their corresponding positions in your room, so audio is localized or free move among your speakers and around the audience in sync with the action on screen. This 9.2-ch receiver expands object-based sound-field coverage with a 5.2.4 or 7.2.2-ch layout. Enjoy classic titles through your height-enabled system with Dolby Surround® and DTS® Neural:X upmixers for legacy soundtracks.

### Dolby Atmos Height Virtualizer

When playing any Dolby® format, engaging Dolby Atmos Height Virtualizer* enables a more immersive listening experience, creating a virtual surround and height effect from traditional speaker layouts without employing additional surround or height speakers. ** Enabled with a future firmware update.*

### Dynamic Audio Amplification

Refined over 70 years to deliver emotion in high fidelity, DAA features a custom High-Current Low-Noise Power Transformer, customized capacitors, and discrete amp output stages. Unique topology prevents phase-shift while high current improves speaker control for true dynamic speed. Driving 4-ohm loads through all channels, DAA has power to move.

### New upgrades reduce noise and boost power

The TX-NR797 adds new refinements that control noise, boost power, and improve S/N performance. A new HDMI® board has shorter signal-paths and large, carefully finished grounds for clean A/V signals. SoC is isolated to reduce interference noise. The power-supply line is strengthened in pursuit of power and the results are evident in improved speed, force, and localization across an expanded soundstage.

### Whole Home Audio, just add speakers

Orchestrate playback of different audio sources in up to three rooms at once from your smartphone. The TX-NR797 has nine amplifier channels and two zone audio DACs supporting D/A audio distribution via Zone 2 and Zone 3 outputs, including HDMI®/SPDIF/NET/*Bluetooth*®, and supports a variety of speaker layouts including 5.2.2-ch Main + Zone 2, or 5.2-ch + Zone 2 + Zone 3.

*Note: HDMI and SPDIF support PCM audio only. Zone 2 HDMI audio available on inputs 1–3. Zone 3 supports analog/NET/Bluetooth.*

### Quad-core SoC supports 802.11ac Wi-Fi®

A powerful SoC (System on a Chip) processes multiple tasks at once. It evolves network functions and supports the latest high-speed 802.11ac (2x2 MIMO) specification while compatible with 802.11 b/g/n dual-band routers.

*Note: Some countries or regions have regulations that affect wireless signal strength and the use of Wi-Fi channels.*

### Versatile Zone 2/Zone B line-out

Connect an audio system via analog RCA input to the AVR's Zone 2/Zone B line-out. In Zone 2 mode, you can play the same or different D/A sources (including SPDIF and HDMI) in either or both rooms at the same time. Zone B mode is an ideal match for a supported wireless transmitter. Listen to any source—including the TV—through wireless headphones. Perfect for midnight movies and TV.

### Clarify voice dialog in-program instantly

Vocal Enhancer solves inaudible dialog in TV programs and movies. DSP technology identifies voice frequencies so you can adjust them using remote-control keys or controls on the front panel.

### AccuEQ Advance with AccuReflex™

AccuEQ Advance room acoustic calibration uses nine-point measurement to remove standing waves that occur when sound from the speakers resonates with sound reflecting off the walls, altering its natural expression. During the process, background noise is ignored to ensure accurate equalization. AccuReflex optimizes 3D sound reproduction through height speakers by resolving phase-shift. Enjoy a cohesive 3D sound-field in rooms of any shape or size.

### Connections for custom installation

The TX-NR797 features a 12 V trigger output for an external component and an IR input for remote-control range extension. It supports IP control, RS-232C, and OSD output for custom installers. An optional rack-mount kit is also available.

## SPECIFICATIONS

**Amplifier Section**

| | |
|---|---|
| Power output (All channels) | 220 W/Ch<br>(6 ohms, 1 kHz, 10% THD,1 channel driven)<br>100 W/Ch (8 ohms, 20 Hz–20 kHz,<br>0.08% THD, 2 channels driven, FTC) |
| Dynamic power | 250 W (3 ohms, Front)<br>220 W (4 ohms, Front)<br>130 W (8 ohms, Front) |
| THD+N (Total Harmonic Distortion + Noise) | 0.08% (20 Hz–20 kHz, half power) |
| Input sensitivity and impedance | 200 mV rms/47 k-ohms (Line)<br>3.5 mV rms/47 k-ohms (Phono MM) |
| Rated RCA output level and impedance | 1 V rms/470 ohms (Subwoofer pre-out)<br>200 mV rms/470 ohms<br>(Zone B/Zone 2 line-out) |
| Frequency response | 10 Hz–100 kHz/+1 dB, -3 dB (Direct Mode) |
| Tone control | ±10 dB, 20 Hz (Bass)<br>±10 dB, 20 kHz (Treble) |
| Signal-to-noise ratio | 106 dB (Line, IHF-A)<br>80 dB (Phono, IHF-A) |
| Speaker impedance | 4 ohms–16 ohms |

**Video Section**

| | |
|---|---|
| Input sensitivity/output level and impedance | |
| Video | 1.0 Vp–p/75 ohms (Component Y)<br>0.7 Vp–p/75 ohms (Component $P_B/P_R$)<br>1.0 Vp–p/75 ohms (Composite) |

**Tuner Section**

| | |
|---|---|
| Tuning frequency range | |
| FM | 87.5 MHz–107.9 MHz |
| AM | 530 kHz–1,710 kHz |
| FM/AM preset memory | 40 Stations |

**General**

| | |
|---|---|
| Power supply | AC 120 V~, 60 Hz |
| Power consumption | 750 W |
| No-sound power consumption | 75 W |
| Standby power consumption | 0.15 W |
| Dimensions (W x H x D) | 17 1/8″ x 6 13/16″ x 14 15/16″<br>(435 x 173.5 x 379.5 mm) |
| Weight | 23.8 lbs. (10.8 kg) |

**UPC CODE**

| | |
|---|---|
| (B) | 889951001744 |

**CARTON**

| | |
|---|---|
| Dimensions (W x H x D) | 21″ x 10 7/16″ x 18 7/16″<br>(534 x 265 x 468 mm) |
| Weight | 29.8 lbs. (13.5 kg) |

**Supplied Accessories**

• Power cord • Indoor FM antenna • AM loop antenna
• Speaker setup microphone • Quick Start Guide • Remote controller
• AAA (R03) batteries x 2

*Text on receiver may vary with region.*

Due to a policy of continuous product improvement, Onkyo reserves the right to change specifications and appearance without notice. THX and the THX logo are trademarks of THX Ltd., registered in the U.S. and other countries. THX CERTIFIED SELECT and the THX SELECT application icon are trademarks of THX Ltd. For DTS patents, see http://patents.dts.com. Manufactured under license from DTS Licensing Limited. DTS, the Symbol, DTS and the Symbol together, DTS:X and the DTS:X logo, DTS Neural:X and the DTS Neural:X logo, and Play-Fi and the Play-Fi logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of DTS, Inc. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved. Manufactured under license from IMAX Corporation. IMAX® is a registered trademark of IMAX Corporation in the United States and/or other countries. All Rights Reserved. Dolby, Dolby Atmos, Dolby Surround, Dolby Vision, and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories. The terms HDMI and HDMI High-Definition Multimedia Interface, and the HDMI Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing Administrator, Inc. in the United States and other countries. SONOS is a trademark of SONOS, Inc. The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. Apple, AirPlay, Siri, HomePod, Mac, iPad, and iPhone are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc. Google, Android, Google Play, Chromebook, Chromecast built-in and other related marks and logos are trademarks of Google LLC. Wi-Fi® is a registered trademark of the Wi-Fi Alliance. The Wi-Fi CERTIFIED Logo is a certification mark of the Wi-Fi Alliance. Spotify and the Spotify logo are trademarks of the Spotify Group, registered in the U.S. and other countries. Products displaying the Hi-Res Audio logo conform to the Hi-Res Audio standard as defined by Japan Audio Society. The Hi-Res Audio logo is used under license from Japan Audio Society. PANDORA, the PANDORA logo, and the Pandora trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pandora Media, Inc. Used with permission. Amazon, Amazon Music, and all related logos and motion marks are trademarks of Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. Ultra HD Blu-ray™ is a trademark of the Blu-ray Disc Association. Dynamic Audio Amplification, SMART AV Receiver, FlareConnect, Onkyo Controller, Onkyo Music Control App, Music Optimizer, Theater-Dimensional, VLSC, and AccuEQ are registered trademarks or trademarks of Onkyo Corporation. All other trademarks and registered trademarks are the property of their respective holders.

ONKYO http://www.onkyousa.com/

Copyright © 2019 Onkyo Corporation. All rights reserved.

NPR No. 19N014 03/19

# Connecting your Unit to a Sonos System

## Required Equipment

- Works with Sonos certified Onkyo Product
- Sonos Connect
- RCA Audio Cable (Supplied with Sonos Connect)

## How it Works

Once your unit is connected to the Sonos Connect you will be able to send any music or source on your Sonos App to the unit. By going through the Sonos Connect, you can play your unit through other Sonos devices in the network in the same group, or you can just play on your unit. Further, the power of your unit turns on automatically when music starts playing on the Sonos App, and the linked function to switch input works.

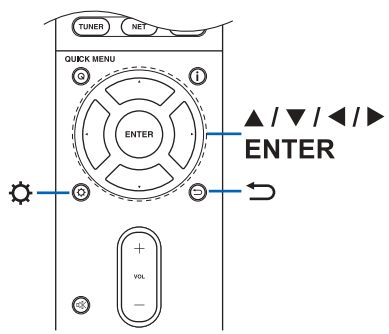
## Connecting your Unit to Sonos Connect

1. Plug the Sonos Connect into an unused input on the rear panel of your unit using the RCA audio cable supplied with your Sonos Connect. Any input can be used other than the PHONO input.
   - You can also connect with a digital cable. For details, refer to the instruction manual of the Sonos.

**Tips**

You can rename the input that is displayed on the unit to a more logical name. For example, you can change the name of input that the Sonos Connect is plugged into from “CD” (or other input) to “SONOS”. This can be done by going into section “Source” in the setup menu and then selecting “Name Edit”. Please refer to the user’s manual supplied with your unit for details.

## Setting up your Unit to work with the Sonos Connect




The remote controller depends on the model.

1. Press the ☼ (SETUP) button on the supplied remote controller to access the settings menu.
2. Use the ▲ or ▼ buttons on the remote controller to display "WorksSONOS".
   - If "WorksSONOS" is not displayed, select "Hardware" and press ENTER, then use the ▲ or ▼ buttons on the remote controller to display "WorksSONOS".

## Setting up your Unit to work with the Sonos Connect - continued

3. Select "WorksSONOS", and then press ENTER.
4. Use the ◀ or ▶ buttons on the remote controller to select the “Input” that you want your Sonos to be connected to. (The input jack connected to Sonos Connect in step 1 shown previously.)
   - The linked function is disabled when you select Off.

5. Use the ▲ or ▼ buttons on the remote controller to display “Connect Device” and press ENTER. This will allow you to see all the Sonos devices on the same network as the unit. Select the Sonos Connect that is connected to your unit and press ENTER.
   **(Note)**
   - Products other than Sonos Connect (products without output terminals such as Play:3) are also displayed in the list and are selectable. In these cases, input switches when play starts on the Sonos product, but the audio is not output. Select the room name for the connected Sonos Connect.
   - The list of Sonos products can show up to 32 units. If you cannot find the Sonos Connect you want to link with, return to the previous screen, turn off the products you do not want to link, then try again.
6. Use the ▲ or ▼ buttons on the remote controller to display “Out Zone:” and then use the ◄ or ► buttons to select the Zone where you want to hear the music. The unit automatically switches to play in the main room (the room where this unit is), another room (Zone 2) or M/Z2 (the main room and Zone 2), according to play on Sonos Connect. Some units may have additional Zone outputs.
7. Press the ☼ (SETUP) button on the remote controller to exit the setup menu.
8. Setup is now complete and you are ready to use your equipment.
   - The power on linking depends on the network standby function of this unit. For details, refer to this unit's instruction manual.

## Now the fun part - listening to Sonos on your Unit

1. Using your Sonos App select the music you want to listen to and send it to the room (or group) where your unit is located. We recommend naming your unit / Sonos Connect combination a friendly name like TV Room or Living Room where the equipment is located.
2. Just like your other Sonos speakers and gear that you are familiar with you can group your unit with other speakers or listen to it by itself.

**(Note)**
If the input on your unit does not change automatically when play starts, try stopping play, then starting it again.

## Setting the Preset Volume

You can set the volume that Sonos Connect will be played at beforehand. The volume set will be used only when using Sonos Connect.

1. Press ☼ (SETUP) button on the remote controller to display the setup menu.
2. Press the ▲ or ▼ buttons on the remote controller to display "WorksSONOS".
   - If "WorksSONOS" is not displayed, select "Hardware" and press ENTER, then press the ▲ or ▼ buttons on the remote controller to display "WorksSONOS".
3. Select "WorksSONOS", and press ENTER.
4. Press the ▲ or ▼ buttons on the remote controller to select "Preset Volume" and press ENTER.
5. Press the ▲ or ▼ buttons on the remote controller to display the main room (where this unit is located) or another room (Zone 2 or Zone 3, for example), then press ◄ or ► to set the volume.
   - Select "Last" to return to the initial setting.
6. Press ☼ (SETUP) button on the remote controller to exit the setup menu.

## ■ English

### Chromecast built-in support

A future firmware update is planned to provide support for Chromecast built-in. Until this update is completed, Chromecast built-in will not be available for this unit.

- Details on the firmware update will be posted on our website and through other means at a later date.

## ■ Français

### Assistance pour Chromecast intégré

Une prochaine mise à jour du micrologiciel est prévue pour fournir une assistance au service Chromecast intégré. Chromecast intégré n'est pas disponible sur cet appareil avant le déploiement de la mise à jour.

- Les détails concernant la mise à jour du micrologiciel seront publiés sur notre site internet et par d'autres moyens à une date ultérieure.

## ■ Español

### Compatibilidad con Chromecast integrado

Se ha planificado una futura actualización de firmware para permitir que la unidad sea compatible con Chromecast integrado. Hasta que esta actualización se complete, Chromecast integrado no estará disponible para esta unidad.

- En el futuro se publicarán más detalles sobre la actualización de firmware en nuestra página web y mediante otros medios.

## ■ Italiano

### Supporto di Chromecast integrato

In futuro è previsto un aggiornamento del firmware per fornire supporto per Chromecast integrato. Sino al completamento di tale aggiornamento, Chromecast integrato non sarà disponibile per questa unità.

- Informazioni sull'aggiornamento del firmware verranno pubblicate in seguito sul nostro sito web e attraverso altri mezzi.

## ■ Deutsch

### Integrierte Chromecast-Technologie Unterstützung

Es ist ein Firmware-Update geplant, um Integrierte Chromecast-Technologie zu unterstützen. Vor Abschluss des Updates ist Integrierte Chromecast-Technologie auf diesem Gerät nicht verfügbar.

- Details zum Firmware-Update werden zu einem späteren Zeitpunkt auf unserer Website und über andere Kanäle bekanntgegeben.

## ■ Nederlands

### Chromecast ingebouwd ondersteuning

Er is een toekomstige firmware-update gepland om u ondersteuning te geven voor Chromecast ingebouwd. Zolang deze update niet voltooid is, zal Chromecast ingebouwd niet voor dit toestel beschikbaar zijn.

- Details over de firmware-update zullen later op onze website gezet worden en via andere middelen bekend gemaakt worden.

## ■ Svenska

### Chromecast inbyggt support

Vi planerar en uppgradering av den nya fasta programvaran för att ge support för Chromecast inbyggt. Tills denna uppdatering har genomförts kommer Chromecast inbyggt inte att vara tillgänglig för denna enhet.

- Mer information angående uppdateringen av den fasta programvaran kommer att finnas på vår webbplats och på andra ställen senare.

## ■ Suomi

### Sisäänrakennettu Chromecast tuki

Tulevan laiteohjelmapäivityksen suunnitellaan antavan tuen toiminnolle Sisäänrakennettu Chromecast. Kunnes kyseistä päivitystä ei ole suoritettu, Sisäänrakennettu Chromecast ei ole saatavilla tässä laitteessa.

- Tarkempia tietoja laiteohjelmiston päivityksestä julkaistaan verkkosivullamme sekä muilla tavoin myöhemmin.

## ■ Русский язык

### Поддержка С поддержкой Chromecast

В будущем планируется обновить встроенное программное обеспечение для обеспечения поддержки службе С поддержкой Chromecast. До выполнения этого обновления служба С поддержкой Chromecast будет недоступна для данного устройства.

- Подробная информация о будущем обновлении позднее будет опубликована на нашем веб-сайте и предоставлена другими способами.

## ■ العربية

### دعم Chromecast built-in

من المزمع أن يتوفر تحديث للبرنامج الثابت في المستقبل لإتاحة الدعم لـ Chromecast built-in.
وحتى يتم هذا التحديث، لن يكون Chromecast built-in متاحًا لهذه الوحدة.

- ستُنشر التفاصيل الخاصة بتحديث البرنامج الثابت على موقعنا على الويب، وعبر الوسائل الأخرى في وقت لاحق.

## ■ 中文（繁體字）

### 內建 Chromecast 支援

預計日後將推出韌體更新，以針對內建 Chromecast 提供支援。但在更新推出之前，內建 Chromecast 將無法在本裝置上使用。

- 韌體更新的詳細資料將公告於本公司網站，並於日後透過其他方式公佈。

## ■ 中文 （简体字）

### 内置 Chromecast 支持

未来的固件更新计划支持内置 Chromecast 。在该更新完成之前，本机将无法使用内置 Chromecast 。

- 有关固件更新的详情将发布在我们的网站，并在稍后通过其他渠道发布。

## ■ 日本語

### Chromecast 搭載の対応について

本製品はファームウェアのアップデートにより、Chromecast 搭載への対応を予定しております。そのため、ファームウェアをアップデートするまでは、Chromecast 搭載をご利用いただけません。

- ファームウェアアップデートの詳細については、後日弊社ホームページなどでお知らせいたします。

Chromecast built-in is a trademarks of Google LLC.

F1901-1

SN 29355977A

(C) Copyright 2019 Onkyo & Pioneer Corporation Japan. All rights reserved.

* 2 9 3 5 5 9 7 7 A *

## ■ English

### Chromecast built-in

You can enjoy music wirelessly with your smartphone or tablet PC connecting to the same network as this unit. To use the Chromecast built-in function, initial settings are required. Refer to the instruction manual via the following URL for information on the initial settings and operations.
http://www.onkyo.com/manual/playback/chromecast.pdf

## ■ Français

### Chromecast built-in

Vous pouvez écouter la musique à distance avec votre smartphone ou votre tablette en vous connectant au même réseau que cet appareil. Pour utiliser la fonction Chromecast built-in, les réglages initiaux sont nécessaires. Consultez le mode d'emploi depuis l'URL suivante pour avoir des informations sur les réglages initiaux et les commandes.
http://www.onkyo.com/manual/playback/chromecast.pdf

## ■ Español

### Chromecast built-in

Puede disfrutar sin cables de música con su teléfono inteligente o tableta conectándose a la misma red que la unidad. Para utilizar la función Chromecast built-in, se requieren ajustes iniciales. Consulte el manual de instrucciones a través de la siguiente URL para obtener información sobre los ajustes y las operaciones iniciales.
http://www.onkyo.com/manual/playback/chromecast.pdf

## ■ Italiano

### Chromecast built-in

È possibile ascoltare musica in modalità wireless tramite il proprio smartphone o tablet, collegandolo alla stessa rete a cui è connessa questa unità. Per usare la funzione Chromecast built-in, sono richieste delle impostazioni iniziali. Consultare il manuale di istruzioni tramite la seguente URL per informazioni sulle impostazioni iniziali e sul funzionamento.
http://www.onkyo.com/manual/playback/chromecast.pdf

## ■ Deutsch

### Chromecast built-in

Sie können Musik kabellos vom Smartphone oder Tablet-PC im gleichen Netzwerk wie dieses Gerät wiedergeben. Zum Verwenden der Chromecast built-in Funktion sind erste Einstellungen erforderlich. Informationen zu ersten Einstellungen und Bedienvorgängen finden Sie in der Bedienungsanleitung unter folgender URL:
http://www.onkyo.com/manual/playback/chromecast.pdf

## ■ Nederlands
### Chromecast built-in

U kunt draadloos van muziek genieten met uw smartphone of tablet-PC door verbinding te maken met hetzelfde netwerk als dit toestel. Om de Chromecast built-in functie te gebruiken zijn begininstellingen nodig. Raadpleeg de gebruiksaanwijzing via de volgende URL voor informatie over de begininstellingen en de bediening.
http://www.onkyo.com/manual/playback/chromecast.pdf

## ■ Svenska
### Chromecast built-in

Du kan njuta av musik trådlöst med din smartmobil eller pekdator genom att ansluta till samma nätverk som den här apparaten. För att använda den Chromecast built-in funktionen, krävs det att grundinställningarna gjorts. Mer information om grundinställningarna och funktionerna finns i bruksanvisningen via följande URL.
http://www.onkyo.com/manual/playback/chromecast.pdf

## ■ 中文（繁體字）
### Chromecast built-in

您可以無線方式聆聽與本機連接至同一存取點之智慧型手機或平板電腦上的音樂檔案。若要使用 Chromecast built-in 功能，需要進行初始設定。如需初始設定和操作的資訊，請參閱下列 URL 中的使用說明書。
http://www.onkyo.com/manual/playback/chromecast.pdf

## ■ 日本語
### Chromecast built-in

本機と同じネットワークに接続したスマートフォンやタブレットを使って、音楽をワイヤレスで楽しむことができます。
Chromecast built-in機能をお使いになるには、初期設定が必要です。初期設定や操作については、以下のURLから取扱説明書をご参照ください。
http://www.onkyo.com/manual/playback/chromecast.pdf

Chromecast built-in is a trademarks of Google LLC.

SN 29356010
(C) Copyright 2019 Onkyo & Pioneer Corporation Japan. All rights reserved.

F1901-0
*29356010*

## ■ English

### DTS Virtual:X support

A future firmware update is planned to provide support for DTS Virtual:X. Until this update is completed, DTS Virtual:X will not be available for this unit.

- Details on the firmware update will be posted on our website and through other means at a later date.

## ■ Français

### Assistance pour DTS Virtual:X

Une prochaine mise à jour du micrologiciel est prévue pour fournir une assistance au service DTS Virtual:X. DTS Virtual:X n'est pas disponible sur cet appareil avant le déploiement de la mise à jour.

- Les détails concernant la mise à jour du micrologiciel seront publiés sur notre site internet et par d'autres moyens à une date ultérieure.

## ■ Español

### Compatibilidad con DTS Virtual:X

Se ha planificado una futura actualización de firmware para permitir que la unidad sea compatible con DTS Virtual:X. Hasta que esta actualización se complete, DTS Virtual:X no estará disponible para esta unidad.

- En el futuro se publicarán más detalles sobre la actualización de firmware en nuestra página web y mediante otros medios.

## ■ Italiano

### Supporto di DTS Virtual:X

In futuro è previsto un aggiornamento del firmware per fornire supporto per DTS Virtual:X. Sino al completamento di tale aggiornamento, DTS Virtual:X non sarà disponibile per questa unità.

- Informazioni sull'aggiornamento del firmware verranno pubblicate in seguito sul nostro sito web e attraverso altri mezzi.

## ■ Deutsch

### DTS Virtual:X Unterstützung

Es ist ein Firmware-Update geplant, um DTS Virtual:X zu unterstützen. Vor Abschluss des Updates ist DTS Virtual:X auf diesem Gerät nicht verfügbar.

- Details zum Firmware-Update werden zu einem späteren Zeitpunkt auf unserer Website und über andere Kanäle bekanntgegeben.

## ■ Nederlands

### DTS Virtual:X ondersteuning

Er is een toekomstige firmware-update gepland om u ondersteuning te geven voor DTS Virtual:X. Zolang deze update niet voltooid is, zal DTS Virtual:X niet voor dit toestel beschikbaar zijn.

- Details over de firmware-update zullen later op onze website gezet worden en via andere middelen bekend gemaakt worden.

## ■ Svenska

### DTS Virtual:X support

Vi planerar en uppgradering av den nya fasta programvaran för att ge support för DTS Virtual:X. Tills denna uppdatering har genomförts kommer DTS Virtual:X inte att vara tillgänglig för denna enhet.

- Mer information angående uppdateringen av den fasta programvaran kommer att finnas på vår webbplats och på andra ställen senare.

## ■ Suomi

### DTS Virtual:X tuki

Tulevan laiteohjelmapäivityksen suunnitellaan antavan tuen toiminnolle DTS Virtual:X. Kunnes kyseistä päivitystä ei ole suoritettu, DTS Virtual:X ei ole saatavilla tässä laitteessa.

- Tarkempia tietoja laiteohjelmiston päivityksestä julkaistaan verkkosivullamme sekä muilla tavoin myöhemmin.

## ■ Русский язык

### Поддержка DTS Virtual:X

В будущем планируется обновить встроенное программное обеспечение для обеспечения поддержки службе DTS Virtual:X. До выполнения этого обновления служба DTS Virtual:X будет недоступна для данного устройства.

- Подробная информация о будущем обновлении позднее будет опубликована на нашем веб-сайте и предоставлена другими способами.

## ■ العربية

### دعم DTS Virtual:X

من المزمع أن يتوفر تحديث للبرنامج الثابت في المستقبل لإتاحة الدعم لـ DTS Virtual:X.
وحتى يتم هذا التحديث، لن يكون DTS Virtual:X متاحًا لهذه الوحدة.

- ستُنشر التفاصيل الخاصة بتحديث البرنامج الثابت على موقعنا على الويب، وعبر الوسائل الأخرى في وقت لاحق.

## ■ 中文（繁體字）

### DTS Virtual:X 支援

預計日後將推出韌體更新，以針對DTS Virtual:X 提供支援。但在更新推出之前，DTS Virtual:X 將無法在本裝置上使用。

- 韌體更新的詳細資料將公告於本公司網站，並於日後透過其他方式公佈。

## ■ 中文（简体字）

### DTS Virtual:X 支持

未来的固件更新计划支持DTS Virtual:X。在该更新完成之前，本机将无法使用DTS Virtual:X。

- 有关固件更新的详情将发布在我们的网站，并在稍后通过其他渠道发布。

## ■ 日本語

### DTS Virtual:Xの対応について

本製品はファームウェアのアップデートにより、DTS Virtual:Xへの対応を予定しております。そのため、ファームウェアをアップデートするまでは、DTS Virtual:Xをご利用いただけません。

- ファームウェアアップデートの詳細については、後日弊社ホームページなどでお知らせいたします。

For DTS patents, see http://patents.dts.com. Manufactured under license from DTS, Inc. DTS, the Symbol, DTS and the Symbol together, Virtual:X, and the DTS Virtual:X logo are registered trademarks and/or trademarks of DTS, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.
© DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

F1812-0

SN 29356009

(C) Copyright 2018 Onkyo & Pioneer Corporation Japan. All rights reserved.

* 2 9 3 5 6 0 0 9 *

ONKYO

1-10-5 Yokoami, Sumida-ku, Tokyo 130-0015 JAPAN
http://www.onkyo.com/

**<U.S.A.>**
18 Park Way, Upper Saddle River, N.J. 07458, U.S.A.
For Dealer, Service, Order and all other Business Inquiries:
Tel: 201-785-2600 Fax: 201-785-2650
http://www.us.onkyo.com/

For Product Support Team Only:
1-800-229-1687
http://www.us.onkyo.com/

**<Germany>**
Gutenbergstrasse 3, 82178 Puchheim, Germany
Tel: +49 (0)89 2170 497 98 (For Product Support only)
https://www.de.onkyo.com/de/

**<UK>**
Meridien House, Ground Floor, 69-71 Clarendon Road,
Watford, Hertfordshire WD17 1DS, United Kingdom
Tel: +44 (0)20 3936 8087 (For Product Support only)
https://www.uk.onkyo.com/en/

**<France>**
6, Avenue de Marais F - 95816 Argenteuil Cedex France
Tel: +33 (0)1 82 88 15 07 (For Product Support only)
https://www.fr.onkyo.com/fr/

**EU Official Web Site**
https://www.eu.onkyo.com/

**<Hong Kong>**
Unit 1033, 10/F, Star House, No 3, Salisbury Road, Tsim Sha
Tsui Kowloon, Hong Kong.
Tel: +852-2429-3118 Fax: +852-2428-9039
http://www.hk.onkyo.com/

**<PRC>**
302, Building 1, 20 North Chaling Rd., Xuhui District,
Shanghai, China 200032,
Tel: +86-21-52131366 Fax: +86-21-52130396
http://www.cn.onkyo.com/

**<Asia, Oceania, Middle East, Africa>**
Please contact an Onkyo distributor referring to Onkyo
SUPPORT site.
http://www.intl.onkyo.com/support/

The above-mentioned information is subject to change without prior notice.
Visit the Onkyo web site for the latest update.

(C) Copyright 2018 Onkyo & Pioneer Corporation Japan.
All rights reserved. Onkyo group has established its Privacy Policy, avaiable at [http://www.onkyo.com/privacy/].

SN29403580

F1812-0

* 2 9 4 0 3 5 8 0 *

En

## Safety Information

**WARNING**
RISK OF ELECTRIC SHOCK
DO NOT OPEN

**AVIS**
RISQUE DE CHOC ELECTRIQUE
NE PAS OUVRIR

The lightning flash with arrowhead symbol, within an equilateral triangle, is intended to alert the user to the presence of uninsulated "dangerous voltage" within the product's enclosure that may be of sufficient magnitude to constitute a risk of electric shock to persons.

The exclamation point within an equilateral triangle is intended to alert the user to the presence of important operating and maintenance (servicing) instructions in the literature accompanying the appliance.

**CAUTION:**
TO PREVENT THE RISK OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, DO NOT REMOVE COVER (OR BACK). NO USER-SERVICEABLE PARTS INSIDE. REFER SERVICING TO QUALIFIED SERVICE PERSONNEL.

### Important safety instructions

1) Read these instructions.
2) Keep these instructions.
3) Heed all warnings.
4) Follow all instructions.
5) Do not use this apparatus near water.
6) Clean only with dry cloth.
7) Do not block any ventilation openings. Install in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
8) Do not install near any heat sources such as radiators, heat registers, stoves, or other apparatus (including amplifiers) that produce heat.
9) Do not defeat the safety purpose of the polarized or grounding-type plug. A polarized plug has two blades with one wider than the other. A grounding type plug has two blades and a third grounding prong. The wide blade or the third prong are provided for your safety. If the provided plug does not fit into your outlet, consult an electrician for replacement of the obsolete outlet.
10) Protect the power cord from being walked on or pinched particularly at plugs, convenience receptacles, and the point where they exit from the apparatus.
11) Only use attachments/accessories specified by the manufacturer.
12) Use only with the cart, stand, tripod, bracket, or table specified by the manufacturer, or sold with the apparatus. When a cart is used, use caution when moving the cart/apparatus combination to avoid injury from tip-over.

**PORTABLE CART WARNING**

13) Unplug this apparatus during lightning storms or when unused for long periods of time.
14) Refer all servicing to qualified service personnel. Servicing is required when the apparatus has been damaged in any way, such as power-supply cord or plug is damaged, liquid has been spilled or objects have fallen into the apparatus, the apparatus has been exposed to rain or moisture, does not operate normally, or has been dropped.

### WARNING

This equipment is not waterproof. To prevent a fire or shock hazard, do not place any container filled with liquid near this equipment (such as a vase or flower pot) or expose it to dripping, splashing, rain or moisture.

To prevent a fire hazard, do not place any naked flame sources (such as a lighted candle) on the equipment.

Store small parts out of the reach of children and infants. If accidentally swallowed, contact a doctor immediately.

Slots and openings in the cabinet are provided for ventilation to ensure reliable operation of the product, and to protect it from overheating. To prevent fire hazard, the openings should never be blocked or covered with items (such as newspapers, tablecloths, curtains) or by operating the equipment on thick carpet or a bed.

Do not use or store batteries in direct sunlight or other excessively hot place, such as inside a car or near a heater. This can cause batteries to leak, overheat, explode or catch fire. It can also reduce the life or performance of batteries.

Risk of explosion if battery is replaced by an incorrect type. Risk of explosion if disposal of a battery into fire or a hot oven, or mechanically crushing or cutting of a battery.

### Precautions

If you install the apparatus in a built-in installation, such as a bookcase or rack, ensure that there is adequate ventilation.

Leave 20 cm (8") of free space at the top and sides and 10 cm (4") at the rear. The rear edge of the shelf or board above the apparatus shall be set 10 cm (4") away from the rear panel or wall,creating a flue-like gap for warm air to escape.

**Operating Environment**

Operating environment temperature and humidity: +5 °C to +35 °C (+41 °F to +95 °F); less than 85 %RH (cooling vents not blocked)

Do not install this unit in a poorly ventilated area, or in locations exposed to high humidity or direct sunlight (or strong artificial light).

**Important Notice**

The modal number and serial number of this equipment are on the rear or bottom. Record these numbers on your enclosed warranty card and keep in a safe place for future reference.

**CAUTION**

The power switch on this unit will not completely shut off all power from the AC outlet. Since the power cord serves as the main disconnect device for the unit, you will need to unplug it from the AC outlet to shut down all power. Therefore, make sure the unit has been installed so that the power cord can be easily unplugged from the AC outlet in case of an accident. To avoid fire hazard, the power cord should also be unplugged from the AC outlet when left unused for a long period of time (for example, when on vacation).

**The Safety of Your Ears is in Your Hands**

Get the most out of your equipment by playing it at a safe level – a level that lets the sound come through clearly without annoying blaring or distortion and, most importantly, without affecting your sensitive hearing. Sound can be deceiving. Over time, your hearing "comfort level" adapts to higher volumes of sound, so what sounds "normal" can actually be loud and harmful to your hearing. Guard against this by setting your equipment at a safe level BEFORE your hearing adapts.

**Be Sure To Observe The Following Guidelines:**

- Do not turn up the volume so high that you can't hear what's around you.
- Use caution or temporarily discontinue use in potentially hazardous situations.
- Do not use headphones while operating a motorized vehicle; the use of headphones may create a traffic hazard and is illegal in many areas.

**Establish a Safe Level:**

- Set your volume control at a low setting.
- Slowly increase the sound until you can hear it comfortably and clearly, without distortion.
- Once you have established a comfortable sound level, set the dial and leave it there.

This product is for general household purposes. Any failure due to use for other than household purposes (such as long-term use for business purposes in a restaurant or use in a car or ship) and which requires repair will be charged for even during the warranty period.

**Power-Cord Caution**

Handle the power cord by the plug. Do not pull out the plug by tugging the cord and never touch the power cord when your hands are wet as this could cause a short circuit or electric shock. Do not place the unit, a piece of furniture, etc., on the power cord, or pinch the cord. Never make a knot in the cord or tie it with other cords. The power cords should be routed such that they are not likely to be stepped on. A damaged power cord can cause a fire or give you an electrical shock. Check the power cord once in a while. When you find it damaged, ask your nearest our authorized service center or your dealer for a replacement.

**Radio Wave Caution**

This Product uses radio waves in the 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz frequency bands. There are nations and regions where the use of particular 5 GHz bands are prohibited outdoors, so do not use this unit outside in those places. 2.4 GHz radio waves are used by other wireless systems (Microwave ovens and Cordless phones, etc.). In this event noise appears in your television image, there is the possibility this unit (including products supported by this unit) is causing signal interference with the antenna input connector of your television, video, satellite tuner, etc. In this event, increase the distance between the antenna input connector and this unit (including products supported by this unit).

When disposing of used batteries, please comply with governmental regulations or environmental public institution's rules that apply in your country/area.

**DISCLAIMER**

Through this device you are able to link to other services or websites which are not under the control of any company which has designed, manufactured or distributed/have distributed this device, and its affiliates (collectively, "Company"). We have no control over the nature, content and availability of those services. The inclusion of any links does not necessarily imply a recommendation or endorse the views expressed within them.

All information, content and services available through this device belong to third parties and are protected by copyright, patent, trademark and/or other intellectual property laws of applicable countries.

The information, content and services provided through this device are for your personal, noncommercial use only. Any information, content or services may not be used in any manner other than previously approved by the appropriate content owner or service provider. You may not modify, copy, republish, translate, exploit, create derivative works, upload, post, transmit, sell or distribute in any manner any information, content or services available through this device, unless expressly permitted by the appropriate copyright, patent, trademark and/or other intellectual property owner, including, without limitation, content owner or service provider.

THE CONTENT AND SERVICES AVAILABLE THROUGH THIS DEVICE ARE PROVIDED "AS IS".

COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT INFORMATION, CONTENT OR SERVICES SO PROVIDED, EITHER EXPRESSLY OR IMPLIEDLY, FOR ANY PURPOSE.

COMPANY EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, WARRANTIES OF TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

Company makes no representation or warranty of any kind, express or implied, about the completeness, accuracy, validity, legality, reliability, suitability or availability with respect to the information, content or services available through this device. Company shall not be liable, whether in contract or tort, including negligence and strict liability, for any direct, indirect, special, incidental or consequential damages or any other damages arising out of, or in connection with, any information contained in, or as a result of the use of any content or service by you or any third party, even if Company has been advised of the possibility of such damages, nor shall Company be liable for any third party claims against users of this device or any third party.

In no event shall Company be responsible nor liable for, without limiting the generality of the foregoing, any interruption or suspension of any information, content or service available through this device. Company is neither responsible nor liable for customer service related to the information, content and services available through this device. Any question or request for service relating to the information, content or services should be made directly to the appropriate content owners and services providers.

Fr

# Informations sur la sécurité

**WARNING** RISK OF ELECTRIC SHOCK DO NOT OPEN

**AVIS** RISQUE DE CHOC ELECTRIQUE NE PAS OUVRIR

Un symbole d'éclair fléché dans un triangle équilatéral est destiné à attirer l'attention de l'utilisateur sur le fait que certains organes internes non-isolés de l'appareil sont traversés par un courant électrique assez dangereux pour constituer un resque d'électrocution.

Un point d'exclamation dans un triangle équilatéral est destiné à attirer l'attention de l'utilisateur sur des instructions importantes relatives à l'entretien et à l'utilisation du produit.

**ATTENTION:**

POUR ÉVITER TOUT RISQUE D'ÉLECTROCUTION, NE PAS ENLEVER LE COUVERCLE (NI LE PANNEAU ARRIÈRE). AUCUNE PIÈCE RÉPARABLE PAR L'UTILISATEUR NE SE TROUVE À L'INTÉRIEUR. CONFIER TOUT ENTRETIEN À UN PERSONNEL QUALIFIÉ UNIQUEMENT.

**Remarques importantes pour votre sécurité**

1) Veuillez lire ces instructions.
2) Veuillez conserver ces instructions.
3) Respectez tous les avertissements.
4) Suivez toutes les instructions.
5) Ne vous servez pas de cet appareil à proximité d'eau.
6) Essuyez le boîtier avec un chiffon sec uniquement.
7) Ne bloquez pas les orifices d'aération. Installez cet appareil en suivant les instructions du fabricant.
8) Ne le placez pas à proximité de sources de chaleur telles que radiateurs, chauffage, poêles ou autre dispositif (y compris les amplificateurs) générateur de chaleur.
9) N'essayez pas de circonvenir le dispositif de sécurité que représente une fiche polarisée ou une fiche avec mise à la terre. Une fiche polarisée dispose de deux lames dont l'une est plus large que l'autre. Une fiche avec terre est munie de deux lames ainsi que d'une broche de mise à la terre. La lame la plus large ou la broche assurent votre sécurité. Si la fiche fournie ne peut être insérée dans la prise murale, demandez à un électricien de remplacer la prise.
10) Protégez le cordon d'alimentation en évitant qu'on ne marche pas dessus et qu'il ne soit plié (notamment au niveau des fiches, des cachecâbles et de la sortie de l'appareil).
11) Servez-vous exclusivement des fixations/accessoires préconisés par le fabricant.
12) Utilisez exclusivement le chariot, le support, le trépied, la fixation ou la table spécifié(e) par le fabricant ou vendu(e) avec l'appareil. Un chariot contenant l'appareil doit toujours être déplacé avec precaution pour éviter qu'il ne se renverse et blesse quelqu'un.

**AVERTISSEMENT POUR SUPPORTS À ROULETTES**

S3126A

13) Débranchez l'appareil durant un orage ou lorsqu'il reste inutilisé longtemps.
14) Veuillez faire appel à un technicien qualifié pour l'entretien. Un entretien est indispensable si l'appareil a été endommagé d'une façon ou d'une autre : cordon d'alimentation ou fiche endommagée, liquide renversé ou chute de petits objets dans l'appareil, exposition à la pluie ou à une humidité excessive, fonctionnement anormal ou chute de l'appareil.

## AVERTISSEMENT

Cet appareil n'est pas étanche. Pour éviter les risques d'incendie et de décharge électrique, ne placez près de lui un récipient rempli d'eau, tel qu'un vase ou un pot de fleurs, et ne l'exposez pas à des gouttes d'eau, des éclaboussures, de la pluie ou de l'humidité.

Pour éviter les risques d'incendie, ne placez aucune flamme nue (telle qu'une bougie allumée) sur l'appareil.

Gardez les pièces de petite taille hors de la portée des bébés et des enfants. En cas d'ingestion accidentelle, veuillez contacter immédiatement un médecin.

Les fentes et ouvertures du coffret sont prévues pour la ventilation, pour assurer un fonctionnement stable de l'appareil et pour éviter sa surchauffe. Pour éviter les risques d'incendie, ne bouchez jamais les ouvertures et ne les recouvrez pas d'objets, tels que journaux, nappes ou rideaux, et n'utilisez pas l'appareil posé sur un tapis épais ou un lit.

N'utilisez, ni ne conservez vos piles à la lumière directe du soleil ou dans un endroit fortement exposé à la chaleur, comme une voiture ou à proximité d'un appareil de chauffage. Les piles risqueraient de suinter, surchauffer, exploser ou s'enflammer. La durée de vie et la performance des piles peuvent également être réduites.

Il y a un risque d'explosion si la batterie est remplacée par une autre de type incorrect. Il existe un risque d'explosion en cas de dépôt de la batterie dans un feu ou un four chaud ou encore en cas d'écrasement ou de découpe mécanique de la batterie.

## Précautions

Veillez à n'installer cet appareil que dans un rack ou un meuble qui n'entrave pas la ventilation.

Laissez un espace libre de 20 cm au-dessus et à côté de l'appareil ainsi que 10 cm en face arrière. La face arrière du rack ou du meuble doit se trouver à 10 cm ou plus du mur pour assurer une aération adéquate en vue de dissiper la chaleur.

**Milieu de fonctionnement**

Température et humidité du milieu de fonctionnement : De +5 °C à +35 °C (de +41 °F à +95 °F) ; Humidité relative inférieure à 85 % (orifices de ventilation non obstrués)

N'installez pas l'appareil dans un endroit mal ventilé ou un lieu soumis à une forte humidité ou en plein soleil (ou à une forte lumière artificielle).

**Avis important**

Le numéro de modèle et le numéro de série de cet équipement sont situés à l'arrière ou en-dessous. Notez ces numéros sur votre carte de garantie jointe et conservezla dans un endroit sûr pour une future consultation.

**ATTENTION**

La touche interrupteur de cet appareil ne coupe pas totalement le courant provenant de la prise secteur. Comme le cordon d'alimentation fait office de dispositif de déconnexion du secteur, il devra être débranché au niveau de la prise secteur pour que l'appareil soit complètement hors tension. Par conséquent, veillez à installer l'appareil de telle manière que son cordon d'alimentation puisse être facilement débranché de la prise secteur en cas d'accident. Pour éviter tout risque d'incendie, le cordon d'alimentation sera débranché au niveau de la prise secteur si vous prévoyez une période prolongée de non utilisation (par exemple avant un départ en vacances).

**La protection de vos oreilles est entre vos mains**

Tirez le meilleur parti de votre équipement en l'utilisant à un niveau sans danger - un niveau qui permet de percevoir un son clair, sans beuglement ou distorsion gênants et, plus important, sans affecter la sensibilité de votre ouïe. Le son peut être trompeur. Au fil du temps, le "niveau de confort" de votre audition s'adapte à des volumes plus élevés, de sorte que les sons que vous trouvez "normaux" peuvent, en réalité, être très forts et dangereux pour votre ouïe. Vous devez vous prémunir contre cela en réglant votre équipement à un niveau sans danger AVANT que votre audition s'adapte.

**Assurez-vous de suivre les consignes suivantes :**

- N'augmentez pas le volume au point de ne pas pouvoir entendre ce qu'il se passe autour de vous.
- Agissez avec précaution ou arrêtez l'utilisation dans des situations potentiellement dangereuses.
- N'utilisez pas les écouteurs en conduisant un véhicule motorisé ; l'utilisation des écouteurs peut causer un danger pour la circulation et est illégale dans de nombreuses régions.

**免責聲明**

經由本裝置，您可以連接到其他服務或網站，該類服務或網站非歸屬於設計、製造或經銷此裝置的任何公司及其附屬公司（統稱"公司"）。我們無法控制這些服務的性質、內容和可用性。加入任何連結均不一定表示推薦或接受其中的觀點。

透過此裝置獲取的任何資訊、內容和服務均屬於第三方並受版權、專利、商標和 / 或相應國家其他知識財產法的保護。

本設備提供的資訊、內容和服務僅供個人用於非商業用途。未經相應內容所有者或服務提供商事先批准，不得以任何其他方式使用任何資訊、內容或服務。未經過相應版權、專利、商標和 / 或其他知識產權所有者（包括但不限於內容所有者或服務提供商）的明確批准，不得以任何方式修改、複製、再發佈、翻譯、利用、建立衍生作品、上載、發佈、傳輸、出售或散發透過本裝置獲得的任何資訊、內容或服務。

經由本裝置存取的內容和服務均依"原有形式"提供。

公司對提供的資訊、內容或服務不作任何出於任何目的的明示或暗示的擔保。

公司明確表示不提供任何擔保，無論明示或暗示，包括但不限於所有權、不侵權、適銷性或適合特定目的的擔保。

公司對透過本設備獲得的資訊、內容或服務的完整性、準確性、有效性、合法性、可靠性、適合性或可用性不提供任何類型的擔保，無論明示或暗示。公司對因您或任何第三方使用其中包含的任何資訊造成的或與之相關的任何直接、間接、特殊、偶發或後果性損失或任何其他損失不負任何責任，無論根據合同還是侵權法，包括疏忽和嚴格責任，即使公司已收到可能有此損失的通知，而且公司對任何第三方對此裝置或的使用者或第三方的索賠不負任何責任。

在任何情況下，在不限定前述規定適用性的前提下，公司對於通過本裝置可得的任何資訊、內容或服務出現的任何中斷或暫時中止概不負責。公司對於與通過本裝置獲得的資訊、內容和服務相關的客戶服務概不負責。與此類資訊、內容或服務相關的一切疑問或請求應直接向合適的內容所有者和服務提供商提出。

**適用於台灣機型**

您需要遵從以下說明的法律。

低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法

第十二條

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

「廢電池請回收」

## 电子产品不包括 BD/DVD/CD

| 單元 Unit | 限用物質及其化學符號 Restricted substances and its chemical symbols | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 鉛 Lead (Pb) | 汞 Mercury (Hg) | 鎘 Cadmium (Cd) | 六價鉻 Hexavalent chromium ($Cr^{+6}$) | 多溴聯苯 Polybrominated biphenyls (PBB) | 多溴二苯醚 Polybrominated diphenyl ethers (PBDE) |
| 外部裝飾方面 | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| 安裝電路板 | — | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| 附屬品(遙控器) | — | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| 纜線 | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |

備考1.「超出0.1 wt %」及「超出0.01 wt %」係指限用物質之百分比含量超出百分比含量基準值。

Note 1：“Exceeding 0.1 wt %” and “exceeding 0.01 wt %” indicate that the percentage content of the restricted substance exceeds the reference percentage value of presence condition.

備考2.「○」係指該項限用物質之百分比含量未超出百分比含量基準值。

Note 2：“o” indicates that the percentage content of the restricted substance does not exceed the percentage of reference value of presence.

備考3.「–」係指該項限用物質為排除項目。

Note 3：The “–” indicates that the restricted substance corresponds to the exemption.

## For U.S. and Canadian Models

**FEDERAL COMMUNICATIONS COMMISSION DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY**

| | |
|---|---|
| Product Name: | AV RECEIVER |
| Model Number: | TX-NR595,TX-NR696,TX-NR797,TX-RZ740, TX-RZ840,TX-8390 |
| Responsible Party Name: | Onkyo U.S.A. Corporation |
| Address: | 18 PARK WAY, UPPER SADDLE RIVER, NEW JERSEY 07458, USA |
| Phone: | 1-800-229-1687 |

This device complies with Part 15 of FCC Rules and Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of this device.

Le present appareil est conforme aux la partie 15 des regles de la FCC et CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisee aux deux conditions suivantes : (1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioelectrique subi, meme si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

This device complies with following standard and class CAN ICES-3 B/NMB-3 B

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

NOTE: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

5.15-5.25 GHz band is restricted to indoor operations only.

La bande 5 150-5 250 MHz est restreints à une utilisation à l'intérieur.

This equipment complies with FCC/IC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines in Supplement C to OET65 and RSS-102 of the IC radio frequency (RF) Exposure rules. This equipment has very low levels of RF energy that it deemed to comply without maximum permissive exposure evaluation (MPE). But it is desirable that it should be installed and operated keeping the radiator at least 20cm or more away from person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles).

Cet equipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements enoncees pour un environnement non controle et respecte les regles les radioelectriques (RF) de la FCC lignes directrices d'exposition dans le Supplement C a OET65 et d'exposition aux frequences radioelectriques (RF) CNR-102 de l'IC. Cet equipement emet une energie RF tres faible qui est consideree conforme sans evaluation de l'exposition maximale autorisee. Cependant, cet equipement doit etre installe et utilise en gardant une distance de 20 cm ou plus entre le dispositif rayonnant et le corps (a l'exception des extremites : mains, poignets, pieds et chevilles).

Under Industry Canada regulations, this radio transmitter may only operate using an antenna of a type and maximum (or lesser) gain approved for the transmitter by Industry Canada. To reduce potential radio interference to other users, the antenna type and its gain should be so chosen that the equivalent isotropically radiated power (e.i.r.p.) is not more than that necessary for successful communication.

Conformément à la réglementation d'Industrie Canada, le présent émetteur radio peut fonctionner avec une antenne d'un type et d'un gain maximal (ou inférieur) approuvé pour l'émetteur par Industrie Canada. Dans le but de réduire les risques de brouillage radioélectrique à l'intention des autres utilisateurs, il faut choisir le type d'antenne et son gain de sorte que la puissance isotrope rayonnée équivalente (p.i.r.e.) ne dépasse pas l'intensité nécessaire à l'établissement d'une communication satisfaisante.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operated in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

**Information to User**

Alteration or modifications carried out without appropriate authorization may invalidate the user's right to operate the equipment.

## License and Trademark / Licence et marque commerciale / Licencias y marcas comerciales / 授權和商標

(TX-NR595, TX-NR696, TX-NR797, TX-RZ740, TX-RZ840)

DOLBY ATMOS　DOLBY VISION COMPATIBLE

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Dolby Atmos, Dolby Surround, Dolby Vision and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

(TX-8390)

For DTS patents, see http://patents.dts.com. Manufactured under license from DTS, Inc. DTS,Play-Fi, the Symbol, and Play-Fi together in combination with the Symbol are trademarks of DTS, Inc.DTS and Play-Fi are registered trademarks of DTS, Inc. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

(TX-NR797, TX-RZ740, TX-RZ840)

dts X

For DTS patents, see http://patents.dts.com. Manufactured under license from DTS, Inc. DTS, the Symbol, DTS and the Symbol together, DTS:X, and the DTS:X logo, Play-Fi and the Play-Fi logo are registered trademarks and/or trademarks of DTS, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

(TX-NR595, TX-NR696)

dts X　dts VIRTUAL X

For DTS patents, see http://patents.dts.com. Manufactured under license from DTS, Inc. DTS, the Symbol, DTS and the Symbol together, DTS:X, Virtual:X, Play-Fi, the DTS:X logo, the DTS Play-Fi logo, and the DTS Virtual:X logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of DTS, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

(TX-NR595, TX-NR696, TX-NR797, TX-RZ740, TX-RZ840, TX-8390)

HDMI HIGH-DEFINITION MULTIMEDIA INTERFACE

The terms HDMI and HDMI High-Definition Multimedia Interface, and the HDMI Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing Administrator, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

## Important Notice Regarding Software

The software package installed in this product includes software licensed to Onkyo & Pioneer Corporation (hereinafter, called "O&P Corporation") directly or indirectly by third party developers. Please be sure to read this notice regarding such software.

## ソフトウェアに関する重要なお知らせ

本製品に搭載されるソフトウェアには、オンキヨー & パイオニア株式会社（以下「弊社」とします）が第三者より直接的に又は間接的に使用許諾を受けたソフトウェアが含まれております。これらのソフトウェアに関する本お知らせを必ずご一読くださいますようお願い申し上げます。

## Notice Regarding GNU GPL/LGPL-applicable Software

This product includes the following software that is covered by GNU General Public License (hereinafter, called "GPL") or by GNU Lesser General Public License (hereinafter, called "LGPL"). O&P Corporation notifies you that, according to the attached GPL/LGPL, you have right to obtain, modify, and redistribute software source code for the listed software.

## GNU GPL / LGPL 適用ソフトウェアに関するお知らせ

本製品には、以下の GNU General Public License（以下「GPL」とします）または GNU Lesser General Public License（以下「LGPL」とします）の適用を受けるソフトウェアが含まれております。お客様は添付の GPL/LGPL に従いこれらのソフトウェアソースコードの入手、改変、再配布の権利があることをお知らせいたします。

### Package List / パッケージリスト

The list below depends on the model / リストはモデルによって異なります

alsa-conf-base alsa-lib alsa-state alsa-utils-alsactl alsa-utils-alsamixer alsa-utils-amixer
alsa-utils-aplay base-files base-passwd bluez4 busybox ca-certificates devmem2 directfb dleyna-connector-dbus
eglibc-gconv eglibc-gconv-utf-16 gstreamer1.0-libav
gstreamer1.0-plugins-bad-a2dp gstreamer1.0-plugins-bad-bluez
gstreamer1.0-plugins-bad-mms gstreamer1.0-plugins-bad-mpegtsdemux
gstreamer1.0-plugins-bad-mpg123 gstreamer1.0-plugins-bad-opus
gstreamer1.0-plugins-bad-sbc gstreamer1.0-plugins-bad gstreamer1.0-plugins-base-adder gstreamer1.0-plugins-base-alsa
gstreamer1.0-plugins-base-audioconvert
gstreamer1.0-plugins-base-audiorate gstreamer1.0-plugins-base-audioresample gstreamer1.0-plugins-base-audiotestsrc
gstreamer1.0-plugins-base-encodebin
gstreamer1.0-plugins-base-ogg gstreamer1.0-plugins-base-playback
gstreamer1.0-plugins-base-tcp gstreamer1.0-plugins-base
gstreamer1.0-plugins-base-typefindfunctions gstreamer1.0-plugins-base-volume
gstreamer1.0-plugins-base-vorbis gstreamer1.0-plugins-good-apetag
gstreamer1.0-plugins-good-audioparsers gstreamer1.0-plugins-good-autodetect
gstreamer1.0-plugins-good-debug gstreamer1.0-plugins-good-flac
gstreamer1.0-plugins-good-icydemux gstreamer1.0-plugins-good-id3demux
gstreamer1.0-plugins-good-isomp4 gstreamer1.0-plugins-good-level
gstreamer1.0-plugins-good-multifile gstreamer1.0-plugins-good-multipart
gstreamer1.0-plugins-good-rtpmanager gstreamer1.0-plugins-good-rtp
gstreamer1.0-plugins-good-souphttpsrc gstreamer1.0-plugins-good
gstreamer1.0-plugins-good-udp gstreamer1.0-plugins-good-wavenc
gstreamer1.0-plugins-good-wavparse gstreamer1.0-plugins-ugly-asf
gstreamer1.0-plugins-ugly gstreamer1.0 gupnp-dlna init-ifupdown initscripts-functions initscripts kernel-3.19.0 kernel-
image-3.19.0 kernel-module-btmrvl-sdio
kernel-module-btmrvl kernel-module-mwifiex-sdio kernel-module-mwifiex kmod libasound2 libasound-module-bluez libavahi-
qt4-autoipd libblkid1 libc6 libdaemon0
libdleyna-core-1.0-1 libdleyna-server-1.0-1 libffac6 libgcc1 libgcrypt11 libgee-0.8-2
libglib-2.0-0 libgmp3 libgnutls28 libgpg-error0 libgssdp-1.0-3 libgstaudio-1.0-0 libgstmpegts-1.0-0 libgstpbutils-1.0-0
libgstrtfl-1.0-0 libgstrtp-1.0-0 libgstrtsp-1.0-0 libgstsdp-1.0-0 libgsttag-1.0-0 libgstvideo-1.0-0 libgupnp-1.0-4 libgupnp-av-1.0-2
libjson-sax1.0 libkmod2 liblzo2-2 libmms0 libni-3-200 libnl-3-cli libnl-3-genl libnl-nf-3-200 libni-route-3-200 libopkg1
libqtcore4 libqtdbus4 libqtnetwork4 libqtxml4 libreadline5 libsoup-2.4 libstdc++6 libsysfs2 libts-1.0-0 libudev0
libusb-0.1-4 libusb-1.0-0 libuuid1 mpg123 mtd-utils mtd-utils-ubifs netbase nettle psplash-default psplash rsync rygel sbc
shared-mime-info-data shared-mime-info sysfsutils sysvinit-inittab sysvinit-pidof sysvinit tslib-conf u-boot-stream800-fw-utils
udev-cache udev udev-utils
update-alternatives-opkg update-rc.d usbutils-ids usbutils wireless-tools libiconv
ethtool-4.0 rtwpriv libgstrtpfec libevrisonv libQtGuiE squashfs ethtool cpulimit
libdlna libBasicUseageEnvironment libUsageEnvironment libgroupsock libliveMedia libphaacdec libphffmpegcommon
libphfaacdec libphmpg123 mongoose
base-passwd bluez5-obaddr dosfstools
e2fsprogs e2fsprogs-badblocks e2fsprogs-e2fsck e2fsprogs-mke2fs
eudev fuse-utils gdbserver kbd
kernel-4.9.123 kernel-module-galcore kernel-module-imx-gpu-viv kernel-module-optee kernel-module-optee-armtz
libc6-thread-db libe2p2 libevdev libext2fs2 libfdisk1 libfuse2 libgbm1 libgmp3 libgstadaptivedemux-1.0-0
libgsturidownloader-1.0-0 libmount1 libqt5xmlpatterns5 libresample1.8 libsbc1 libsmartcols1 libss2 libuiockmgr1 mianconfig
mmc-utils qt4-embedded-plugin-imageformat-jpeg
qtbase qtbase-extra-plugins qtbase-gui qtbase-misc
qtdeclarative qtdeclarative-plugins qtdeclarative-qmlplugins qtwayland qtwayland-plugins
util-linux util-linux-cfdisk util-linux-fdisk util-linux-losetup util-linux-mkfs util-linux-mount util-linux-mountpoint util-linux-readprofile
util-linux-runuser util-linux-sfdisk util-linux-swaponoff util-linux-umount
libsystemd gimark2
cairo cairo-gobject
gdbm gdbm-compat gdbm-dev
pango

## Notice Regarding MPL-applicable Software

This product includes the following software that is covered by Mozilla Public License (hereinafter, called "MPL"). O&P Corporation notifies you that, according to the attached MPL, you have right to obtain, modify, and redistribute software source code for the listed software.

## MPL 適用ソフトウェアに関するお知らせ

本製品には、以下の Mozilla Public License（以下「MPL」とします）の適用を受けるソフトウェアが含まれております。お客様は添付の MPL に従いこれらのソフトウェアソースコードの入手、改変、再配布の権利があることをお知らせいたします。

### Package List / パッケージリスト

ca-certificates

## GNU LESSER GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE

**Version 2.1, February 1999**

Copyright (C) 1991, 1999 Free Software Foundation, Inc. 59 Temple Place, Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307 USA Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed. [This is the first released version of the Lesser GPL. It also counts as the successor of the GNU Library Public License, version 2, hence the version number 2.1.]

### Preamble

The licenses for most software are designed to take away your freedom to share and change it. By contrast, the GNU General Public Licenses are intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change free software--to make sure the software is free for all its users. This license, the Lesser General Public License, applies to some specially designated software packages--typically libraries--of the Free Software Foundation and other authors who decide to use it. You can use it too, but we suggest you first think carefully about whether this license or the ordinary General Public License is the better strategy to use in any particular case, based on the explanations below. When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom of use, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for this service if you wish); that you receive source code or can get it if you want it; that you can change the software and use pieces of it in new free programs; and that you are informed that you can do these things. To protect your rights, we need to make restrictions that forbid distributors to deny you these rights or to ask you to surrender these rights. These restrictions translate to certain responsibilities for you if you distribute copies of the library or if you modify it. For example, if you distribute copies of the library, whether gratis or for a fee, you must give the recipients all the rights that we gave you. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. If you link other code with the library, you must provide complete object files to the recipients, so that they can relink them with the library after making changes to the library and recompiling it. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights. We protect your rights with a two-step method: (1) we copyright the library, and (2) we offer you this license, which gives you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify the library.

To protect each distributor, we want to make it very clear that there is no warranty for the free library. Also, if the library is modified by someone else and passed on, the recipients should know that what they have is not the original version, so that the original author's reputation will not be affected by problems that might be introduced by others. Finally, software patents pose a constant threat to the existence of any free program. We wish to make sure that a company cannot effectively restrict the users of a free program by obtaining a restrictive license from a patent holder. Therefore, we insist that any patent license obtained for a version of the library must be consistent with the full freedom of use specified in this license. Most GNU software, including some libraries, is covered by the ordinary GNU General Public License. This license, the GNU Lesser General Public License, applies to certain designated libraries, and is quite different from the ordinary General Public License. We use this license for certain libraries in order to permit linking those libraries into non-free programs.

When a program is linked with a library, whether statically or using a shared library, the combination of the two is legally speaking a combined work, a derivative of the original library. The ordinary General Public License therefore permits such linking only if the entire combination fits its criteria of freedom. The Lesser General Public License permits more lax criteria for linking other code with the library. We call this license the "Lesser" General Public License because it does Less to protect the user's freedom than the ordinary General Public License. It also provides other free software developers Less of an advantage over competing non-free programs. These disadvantages are the reason we use the ordinary General Public License for many libraries. However, the Lesser license provides advantages in certain special circumstances. For example, on rare occasions, there may be a special need to encourage the widest possible use of a certain library, so that it becomes a de-facto standard. To achieve this, non-free programs must be allowed to use the library.

A more frequent case is that a free library does the same job as widely used non-free libraries. In this case, there is little to gain by limiting the free library to free software only, so we use the Lesser General Public License. In other cases, permission to use a particular library in non-free programs enables a greater number of people to use a large body of free software. For example, permission to use the GNU C Library in non-free programs enables many more people to use the whole GNU operating system, as well as its variant, the GNU/Linux operating system. Although the Lesser General Public License is Less protective of the users' freedom, it does ensure that the user of a program that is linked with the Library has the freedom and the wherewithal to run that program using a modified version of the Library. The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow. Pay close attention to the difference between a "work based on the library" and a "work that uses the library". The former contains code derived from the library, whereas the latter must be combined with the library in order to run.

### TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR COPYING, DISTRIBUTION AND MODIFICATION

0. This License Agreement applies to any software library or other program which contains a notice placed by the copyright holder or other authorized party saying it may be distributed under the terms of this Lesser General Public License (also called "this License"). Each licensee is addressed as "you".

A "library" means a collection of software functions and/or data prepared so as to be conveniently linked with application programs (which use some of those functions and data) to form executables. The "Library", below, refers to any such software library or work which has been distributed under these terms. A "work based on the Library" means either the Library or any derivative work under copyright law: that is to say, a work containing the Library or a portion of it, either verbatim or with modifications and/or translated straightforwardly into another language. (Hereinafter, translation is included without limitation in the term "modification".) "Source code" for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. For a library, complete source code means all the source code for all modules it contains, plus any associated interface definition files, plus the scripts used to control compilation and installation of the library.

Activities other than copying, distribution and modification are not covered by this License; they are outside its scope. The act of running a program using the Library is not restricted, and output from such a program is covered only if its contents constitute a work based on the Library (independent of the use of the Library in a tool for writing it). Whether that is true depends on what the Library does and what the program that uses the Library does.

1. You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Library's complete source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and to the absence of any warranty; and distribute a copy of this License along with the Library.

   You may charge a fee for the physical act of transferring a copy, and you may at your option offer warranty protection in exchange for a fee.

2. You may modify your copy or copies of the Library or any portion of it, thus forming a work based on the Library, and copy and distribute such modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above, provided that you also meet all of these conditions:

   a) The modified work must itself be a software library.

   b) You must cause the files modified to carry prominent notices stating that you changed the files and the date of any change.

   c) You must cause the whole of the work to be licensed at no charge to all third parties under the terms of this License.

   d) If a facility in the modified Library refers to a function or a table of data to be supplied by an application program that uses the facility, other than as an argument passed when the facility is invoked, then you must make a good faith effort to ensure that, in the event an application does not supply such function or table, the facility still operates, and performs whatever part of its purpose remains meaningful.

   (For example, a function in a library to compute square roots has a purpose that is entirely well-defined independent of the application. Therefore, Subsection 2d requires that any application-supplied function or table used by this function must be optional: if the application does not supply it, the square root function must still compute square roots.) These requirements apply to the modified work as a whole. If identifiable sections of that work are not derived from the Library, and can be reasonably considered independent and separate works in themselves, then this License, and its terms, do not apply to those sections when you distribute them as separate works. But when you distribute the same sections as part of a whole which is a work based on the Library, the distribution of the whole must be on the terms of this License, whose permissions for other licensees extend to the entire whole, and thus to each and every part regardless of who wrote it.

   Thus, it is not the intent of this section to claim rights or contest your rights to work written entirely by you; rather, the intent is to exercise the right to control the distribution of derivative or collective works based on the Library. In addition, mere aggregation of another work not based on the Library with the Library (or with a work based on the Library) on a volume of a storage or distribution medium does not bring the other work under the scope of this License.

3. You may opt to apply the terms of the ordinary GNU General Public License instead of this License to a given copy of the Library. To do this, you must alter all the notices that refer to this License, so that they refer to the ordinary GNU General Public License, version 2, instead of to this License. (If a newer version than version 2 of the ordinary GNU General Public License has appeared, then you can specify that version instead if you wish.) Do not make any other change in these notices.

   Once this change is made in a given copy, it is irreversible for that copy, so the ordinary GNU General Public License applies to all subsequent copies and derivative works made from that copy. This option is useful when you wish to copy part of the code of the Library into a program that is not a library.

4. You may copy and distribute the Library (or a portion or derivative of it, under Section 2) in object code or executable form under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above provided that you accompany it with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code, which must be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange. If distribution of object code is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, then offering equivalent access to copy the source code from the same place satisfies the requirement to distribute the source code, even though third parties are not compelled to copy the source along with the object code.

5. A program that contains no derivative of any portion of the Library, but is designed to work with the Library by being compiled or linked with it, is called a "work that uses the Library". Such a work, in isolation, is not a derivative work of the Library, and therefore falls outside the scope of this License.

   However, linking a "work that uses the Library" with the Library creates an executable that is a derivative of the Library (because it contains portions of the Library), rather than a "work that uses the library". The executable is therefore covered by this License. Section 6 states terms for distribution of such executables. When a "work that uses the Library" uses material from a header file that is part of the Library, the object code for the work may be a derivative work of the Library even though the source code is not. Whether this is true is especially significant if the work can be linked without the Library, or if the work is itself a library. The threshold for this to be true is not precisely defined by law. If such an object file uses only numerical parameters, data structure layouts and accessors, and small macros and small inline functions (ten lines or less in length), then the use of the object file is unrestricted, regardless of whether it is legally a derivative work. (Executables containing this object code plus portions of the Library will still fall under Section 6.) Otherwise, if the work is a derivative of the Library, you may distribute the object code for the work under the terms of Section 6. Any executables containing that work also fall under Section 6, whether or not they are linked directly with the Library itself.

6. As an exception to the Sections above, you may also combine or link a "work that uses the Library" with the Library to produce a work containing portions of the Library, and distribute that work under terms of your choice, provided that the terms permit modification of the work for the customer's own use and reverse engineering for debugging such modifications.

   You must give prominent notice with each copy of the work that the Library is used in it and that the Library and its use are covered by this License. You must supply a copy of this License. If the work during execution displays copyright notices, you must include the copyright notice for the Library among them, as well as a reference directing the user to the copy of this License. Also, you must do one of these things:

   a) Accompany the work with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code for the Library including whatever changes were used in the work (which must be distributed under Sections 1 and 2 above); and, if the work is an executable linked with the Library, with the complete machine-readable "work that uses the Library", as object code and/or source code, so that the user can modify the Library and then relink to produce a modified executable containing the modified Library. (It is understood that the user who changes the contents of definitions files in the Library will not necessarily be able to recompile the application to use the modified definitions.)

   b) Use a suitable shared library mechanism for linking with the Library. A suitable mechanism is one that (1) uses at run time a copy of the library already present on the user's computer system, rather than copying library functions into the executable, and (2) will operate properly with a modified version of the library, if the user installs one, as long as the modified version is interface-compatible with the version that the work was made with.

   c) Accompany the work with a written offer, valid for at least three years, to give the same user the materials specified in Subsection 6a, above, for a charge no more than the cost of performing this distribution.

   d) If distribution of the work is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, offer equivalent access to copy the above specified materials from the same place.

   e) Verify that the user has already received a copy of these materials or that you have already sent this user a copy.

   For an executable, the required form of the "work that uses the Library" must include any data and utility programs needed for reproducing the executable from it. However, as a special exception, the materials to be distributed need not include anything that is normally distributed (in either source or binary form) with the major components (compiler, kernel, and so on) of the operating system on which the executable runs, unless that component itself accompanies the executable. It may happen that this requirement contradicts the license restrictions of other proprietary libraries that do not normally accompany the operating system. Such a contradiction means you cannot use both them and the Library together in an executable that you distribute.

7. You may place library facilities that are a work based on the Library side-by-side in a single library together with other library facilities not covered by this License, and distribute such a combined library, provided that the separate distribution of the work based on the Library and of the other library facilities is otherwise permitted, and provided that you do these two things:

   a) Accompany the combined library with a copy of the same work based on the Library, uncombined with any other library facilities. This must be distributed under the terms of the Sections above.

   b) Give prominent notice with the combined library of the fact that part of it is a work based on the Library, and explaining where to find the accompanying uncombined form of the same work.

8. You may not copy, modify, sublicense, link with, or distribute the Library except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense, link with, or distribute the Library is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.

9. You are not required to accept this License, since you have not signed it. However, nothing else grants you permission to modify or distribute the Library or its derivative works. These actions are prohibited by law if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or distributing the Library (or any work based on the Library), you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so, and all its terms and conditions for copying, distributing or modifying the Library or works based on it.

10. Each time you redistribute the Library (or any work based on the Library), the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensor to copy, distribute, link with or modify the Library subject to these terms and conditions. You may not impose any further restrictions on the recipients' exercise of the rights granted herein. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties with this License.

11. If, as a consequence of a court judgment or allegation of patent infringement or for any other reason (not limited to patent issues), conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot distribute so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not distribute the Library at all. For example, if a patent license would not permit royalty-free redistribution of the Library by all those who receive copies directly or indirectly through you, then the only way you could satisfy both it and this License would be to refrain entirely from distribution of the Library.

    If any portion of this section is held invalid or unenforceable under any particular circumstance, the balance of the section is intended to apply, and the section as a whole is intended to apply in other circumstances. It is not the purpose of this section to induce you to infringe any patents or other property right claims or to contest validity of any such claims; this section has the sole purpose of protecting the integrity of the free software distribution system which is implemented by public license practices. Many people have made generous contributions to the wide range of software distributed through that system in reliance on consistent application of that system; it is up to the author/donor to decide if he or she is willing to distribute software through any other system and a licensee cannot impose that choice. This section is intended to make thoroughly clear what is believed to be a consequence of the rest of this License.

12. If the distribution and/or use of the Library is restricted in certain countries either by patents or by copyrighted interfaces, the original copyright holder who places the Library under this License may add an explicit geographical distribution limitation excluding those countries, so that distribution is permitted only in or among countries not thus excluded. In such case, this License incorporates the limitation as if written in the body of this License.

13. The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the Lesser General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.

    Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Library specifies a version number of this License which applies to it and "any later version", you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Library does not specify a license version number, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

14. If you wish to incorporate parts of the Library into other free programs whose distribution conditions are incompatible with these, write to the author to ask for permission. For software which is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, write to the Free Software Foundation; we sometimes make exceptions for this. Our decision will be guided by the two goals of preserving the free status of all derivatives of our free software and of promoting the sharing and reuse of software generally.

**NO WARRANTY**

15. BECAUSE THE LIBRARY IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE LIBRARY, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE LIBRARY "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE LIBRARY IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE LIBRARY PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.
16. IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE LIBRARY AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE LIBRARY (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE LIBRARY TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER SOFTWARE), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

## END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

### How to Apply These Terms to Your New Libraries

If you develop a new library, and you want it to be of the greatest possible use to the public, we recommend making it free software that everyone can redistribute and change. You can do so by permitting redistribution under these terms (or, alternatively, under the terms of the ordinary General Public License). To apply these terms, attach the following notices to the library. It is safest to attach them to the start of each source file to most effectively convey the exclusion of warranty; and each file should have at least the "copyright" line and a pointer to where the full notice is found.

<one line to give the library's name and an idea of what it does.>
Copyright (C) <year> <name of author>

This library is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU Lesser General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2.1 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.

This library is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU Lesser General Public License for more details.

You should have received a copy of the GNU Lesser General Public License along with this library; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 59 Temple Place, Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307 USA

Also add information on how to contact you by electronic and paper mail.

You should also get your employer (if you work as a programmer) or your school, if any, to sign a "copyright disclaimer" for the library, if necessary. Here is a sample; alter the names:

Yoyodyne, Inc., hereby disclaims all copyright interest in the library `Frob' (a library for tweaking knobs) written by James Random Hacker.

signature of Ty Coon, 1 April 1990
Ty Coon, President of Vice

That's all there is to it!

## GNU GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE

### Version 2, June 1991

Copyright (C) 1989, 1991 Free Software Foundation, Inc.59 Temple Place - Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307, USA
Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

### Preamble

The licenses for most software are designed to take away your freedom to share and change it. By contrast, the GNU General Public License is intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change free software--to make sure the software is free for all its users. This General Public License applies to most of the Free Software Foundation's software and to any other program whose authors commit to using it. (Some other Free Software Foundation software is covered by the GNU Library General Public License instead.) You can apply it to your programs, too.

When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for this service if you wish), that you receive source code or can get it if you want it, that you can change the software or use pieces of it in new free programs; and that you know you can do these things.

To protect your rights, we need to make restrictions that forbid anyone to deny you these rights or to ask you to surrender the rights. These restrictions translate to certain responsibilities for you if you distribute copies of the software, or if you modify it.

For example, if you distribute copies of such a program, whether gratis or for a fee, you must give the recipients all the rights that you have. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights.

We protect your rights with two steps: (1) copyright the software, and (2) offer you this license which gives you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify the software.

Also, for each author's protection and ours, we want to make certain that everyone understands that there is no warranty for this free software. If the software is modified by someone else and passed on, we want its recipients to know that what they have is not the original, so that any problems introduced by others will not reflect on the original authors' reputations.

Finally, any free program is threatened constantly by software patents. We wish to avoid the danger that redistributors of a free program will individually obtain patent licenses, in effect making the program proprietary. To prevent this, we have made it clear that any patent must be licensed for everyone's free use or not licensed at all.

The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow.

### TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR COPYING, DISTRIBUTION AND MODIFICATION

0. This License applies to any program or other work which contains a notice placed by the copyright holder saying it may be distributed under the terms of this General Public License. The "Program", below, refers to any such program or work, and a "work based on the Program" means either the Program or any derivative work under copyright law: that is to say, a work containing the Program or a portion of it, either verbatim or with modifications and/or translated into another language. (Hereinafter, translation is included without limitation in the term "modification".) Each licensee is addressed as "you".

Activities other than copying, distribution and modification are not covered by this License; they are outside its scope. The act of running the Program is not restricted, and the output from the Program is covered only if its contents constitute a work based on the Program (independent of having been made by running the Program). Whether that is true depends on what the Program does.

1. You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Program's source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and to the absence of any warranty; and give any other recipients of the Program a copy of this License along with the Program.

   You may charge a fee for the physical act of transferring a copy, and you may at your option offer warranty protection in exchange for a fee.

2. You may modify your copy or copies of the Program or any portion of it, thus forming a work based on the Program, and copy and distribute such modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above, provided that you also meet all of these conditions:
   a) You must cause the modified files to carry prominent notices stating that you changed the files and the date of any change.
   b) You must cause any work that you distribute or publish, that in whole or in part contains or is derived from the Program or any part thereof, to be licensed as a whole at no charge to all third parties under the terms of this License.
   c) If the modified program normally reads commands interactively when run, you must cause it, when started running for such interactive use in the most ordinary way, to print or display an announcement including an appropriate copyright notice and a notice that there is no warranty (or else, saying that you provide a warranty) and that users may redistribute the program under these conditions, and telling the user how to view a copy of this License. (Exception: if the Program itself is interactive but does not normally print such an announcement, your work based on the Program is not required to print an announcement.)

   These requirements apply to the modified work as a whole. If identifiable sections of that work are not derived from the Program, and can be reasonably considered independent and separate works in themselves, then this License, and its terms, do not apply to those sections when you distribute them as separate works. But when you distribute the same sections as part of a whole which is a work based on the Program, the distribution of the whole must be on the terms of this License, whose permissions for other licensees extend to the entire whole, and thus to each and every part regardless of who wrote it.

   Thus, it is not the intent of this section to claim rights or contest your rights to work written entirely by you; rather, the intent is to exercise the right to control the distribution of derivative or collective works based on the Program. In addition, mere aggregation of another work not based on the Program with the Program (or with a work based on the Program) on a volume of a storage or distribution medium does not bring the other work under the scope of this License.

3. You may copy and distribute the Program (or a work based on it, under Section 2) in object code or executable form under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above provided that you also do one of the following:
   a) Accompany it with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code, which must be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange;or,
   b) Accompany it with a written offer, valid for at least three years, to give any third party, for a charge no more than your cost of physically performing source distribution, a complete machine-readable copy of the corresponding source code, to be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or,
   c) Accompany it with the information you received as to the offer to distribute corresponding source code. (This alternative is allowed only for noncommercial distribution and only if you received the program in object code or executable form with such an offer, in accord with Subsection b above.)

   The source code for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. For an executable work, complete source code means all the source code for all modules it contains, plus any associated interface definition files, plus the scripts used to control compilation and installation of the executable. However, as a special exception, the source code distributed need not include anything that is normally distributed (in either source or binary form) with the major components (compiler, kernel, and so on) of the operating system on which the executable runs, unless that component itself accompanies the executable. If distribution of executable or object code is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, then offering equivalent access to copy the source code from the same place counts as distribution of the source code, even though third parties are not compelled to copy the source along with the object code.

4. You may not copy, modify, sublicense, or distribute the Program except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense or distribute the Program is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.

5. You are not required to accept this License, since you have not signed it. However, nothing else grants you permission to modify or distribute the Program or its derivative works. These actions are prohibited by law if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or distributing the Program (or any work based on the Program), you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so, and all its terms and conditions for copying, distributing or modifying the Program or works based on it.

6. Each time you redistribute the Program (or any work based on the Program), the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensor to copy, distribute or modify the Program subject to these terms and conditions. You may not impose any further restrictions on the recipients' exercise of the rights granted herein. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties to this License.

7. If, as a consequence of a court judgment or allegation of patent infringement or for any other reason (not limited to patent issues), conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot distribute so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not distribute the Program at all. For example, if a patent license would not permit royalty-free redistribution of the Program by all those who receive copies directly or indirectly through you, then the only way you could satisfy both it and this License would be to refrain entirely from distribution of the Program.

   If any portion of this section is held invalid or unenforceable under any particular circumstance, the balance of the section is intended to apply and the section as a whole is intended to apply in other circumstances.

   It is not the purpose of this section to induce you to infringe any patents or other property right claims or to contest validity of any such claims; this section has the sole purpose of protecting the integrity of the free software distribution system, which is implemented by public license practices. Many people have made generous contributions to the wide range of software distributed through that system in reliance on consistent application of that system; it is up to the author/donor to decide if he or she is willing to distribute software through any other system and a licensee cannot impose that choice.

   This section is intended to make thoroughly clear what is believed to be a consequence of the rest of this License.

8. If the distribution and/or use of the Program is restricted in certain countries either by patents or by copyrighted interfaces, the original copyright holder who places the Program under this License may add an explicit geographical distribution limitation excluding those countries, so that distribution is permitted only in or among countries not thus excluded. In such case, this License incorporates the limitation as if written in the body of this License.

9. The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.

   Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Program specifies a version number of this License which applies to it and "any later version", you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Program does not specify a version number of this License, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

10. If you wish to incorporate parts of the Program into other free programs whose distribution conditions are different, write to the author to ask for permission. For software which is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, write to the Free Software Foundation; we sometimes make exceptions for this. Our decision will be guided by the two goals of preserving the free status of all derivatives of our free software and of promoting the sharing and reuse of software generally.

### NO WARRANTY

11. BECAUSE THE PROGRAM IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE PROGRAM, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE PROGRAM "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE PROGRAM IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE PROGRAM PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.
12. IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE PROGRAM AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PROGRAM (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE PROGRAM TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER PROGRAMS), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

## END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

### How to Apply These Terms to Your New Programs

If you develop a new program, and you want it to be of the greatest possible use to the public, the best way to achieve this is to make it free software which everyone can redistribute and change under these terms.

To do so, attach the following notices to the program. It is safest to attach them to the start of each source file to most effectively convey the exclusion of warranty; and each file should have at least the "copyright" line and a pointer to where the full notice is found.

<one line to give the program's name and an idea of what it does.>
Copyright (C) <year> <name of author>

This program is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.

This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU General Public License for more details.

You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License along with this program; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 59 Temple Place - Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307, USA.

Also add information on how to contact you by electronic and paper mail.

If the program is interactive, make it output a short notice like this when it starts in an interactive mode:

Gnomovision version 69, Copyright (C) year name of author Gnomovision comes with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY; for details type `show w'. This is free software, and you are welcome to redistribute it under certain conditions; type `show c' for details.

The hypothetical commands `show w' and `show c' should show the appropriate parts of the General Public License. Of course, the commands you use may be called something other than `show w' and `show c'; they could even be mouse-clicks or menu items--whatever suits your program.

You should also get your employer (if you work as a programmer) or your school, if any, to sign a "copyright disclaimer" for the program, if necessary. Here is a sample; alter the names:

Yoyodyne, Inc., hereby disclaims all copyright interest in the program `Gnomovision' (which makes passes at compilers) written by James Hacker.

<signature of Ty Coon>, 1 April 1989
Ty Coon, President of Vice

This General Public License does not permit incorporating your program into proprietary programs. If your program is a subroutine library, you may consider it more useful to permit linking proprietary applications with the library. If this is what you want to do, use the GNU Library General Public License instead of this License.

## Mozilla Public License Version 2.0

**1. Definitions**

**1.1. "Contributor"**
means each individual or legal entity that creates, contributes to the creation of, or owns Covered Software.

**1.2. "Contributor Version"**
means the combination of the Contributions of others (if any) used by a Contributor and that particular Contributor's Contribution.

**1.3. "Contribution"**
means Covered Software of a particular Contributor.

**1.4. "Covered Software"**
means Source Code Form to which the initial Contributor has attached the notice in Exhibit A, the Executable Form of such Source Code Form, and Modifications of such Source Code Form, in each case including portions thereof.

**1.5. "Incompatible With Secondary Licenses"**
means
(a) that the initial Contributor has attached the notice described in Exhibit B to the Covered Software; or
(b) that the Covered Software was made available under the terms of version 1.1 or earlier of the License, but not also under the terms of a Secondary License.

**1.6. "Executable Form"**
means any form of the work other than Source Code Form.

**1.7. "Larger Work"**
means a work that combines Covered Software with other material, in a separate file or files, that is not Covered Software.

**1.8. "License"**
means this document.

**1.9. "Licensable"**
means having the right to grant, to the maximum extent possible, whether at the time of the initial grant or subsequently, any and all of the rights conveyed by this License.

**1.10. "Modifications"**
means any of the following:
(a) any file in Source Code Form that results from an addition to, deletion from, or modification of the contents of Covered Software; or
(b) any new file in Source Code Form that contains any Covered Software.

**1.11. "Patent Claims" of a Contributor**
means any patent claim(s), including without limitation, method, process, and apparatus claims, in any patent Licensable by such Contributor that would be infringed, but for the grant of the License, by the making, using, selling, offering for sale, having made, import, or transfer of either its Contributions or its Contributor Version.

**1.12. "Secondary License"**
means either the GNU General Public License, Version 2.0, the GNU Lesser General Public License, Version 2.1, the GNU Affero General Public License, Version 3.0, or any later versions of those licenses.

**1.13. "Source Code Form"**
means the form of the work preferred for making modifications.

**1.14. "You" (or "Your")**
means an individual or a legal entity exercising rights under this License. For legal entities, "You" includes any entity that controls, is controlled by, or is under common control with You. For purposes of this definition, "control" means (a) the power, direct or indirect, to cause the direction or management of such entity, whether by contract or otherwise, or (b) ownership of more than fifty percent (50%) of the outstanding shares or beneficial ownership of such entity.

**2. License Grants and Conditions**

**2.1. Grants**
Each Contributor hereby grants You a world-wide, royalty-free, non-exclusive license:
(a) under intellectual property rights (other than patent or trademark) Licensable by such Contributor to use, reproduce, make available, modify, display, perform, distribute, and otherwise exploit its Contributions, either on an unmodified basis, with Modifications, or as part of a Larger Work; and
(b) under Patent Claims of such Contributor to make, use, sell, offer for sale, have made, import, and otherwise transfer either its Contributions or its Contributor Version.

**2.2. Effective Date**
The licenses granted in Section 2.1 with respect to any Contribution become effective for each Contribution on the date the Contributor first distributes such Contribution.

**2.3. Limitations on Grant Scope**
The licenses granted in this Section 2 are the only rights granted under this License. No additional rights or licenses will be implied from the distribution or licensing of Covered Software under this License.
Notwithstanding Section 2.1(b) above, no patent license is granted by a Contributor:
(a) for any code that a Contributor has removed from Covered Software; or
(b) for infringements caused by: (i) Your and any other third party's modifications of Covered Software, or (ii) the combination of its Contributions with other software (except as part of its Contributor Version); or
(c) under Patent Claims infringed by Covered Software in the absence of its Contributions.
This License does not grant any rights in the trademarks, service marks, or logos of any Contributor (except as may be necessary to comply with the notice requirements in Section 3.4).

**2.4. Subsequent Licenses**
No Contributor makes additional grants as a result of Your choice to distribute the Covered Software under a subsequent version of this License (see Section 10.2) or under the terms of a Secondary License (if permitted under the terms of Section 3.3).

**2.5. Representation**
Each Contributor represents that the Contributor believes its Contributions are its original creation(s) or it has sufficient rights to grant the rights to its Contributions conveyed by this License.

**2.6. Fair Use**
This License is not intended to limit any rights You have under applicable copyright doctrines of fair use, fair dealing, or other equivalents.

**2.7. Conditions**
Sections 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, and 3.4 are conditions of the licenses granted in Section 2.1.

## 3. Responsibilities

**3.1. Distribution of Source Form**
All distribution of Covered Software in Source Code Form, including any Modifications that You create or to which You contribute, must be under the terms of this License. You must inform recipients that the Source Code Form of the Covered Software is governed by the terms of this License, and how they can obtain a copy of this License. You may not attempt to alter or restrict the recipients' rights in the Source Code Form.

**3.2. Distribution of Executable Form**
If You distribute Covered Software in Executable Form then:
(a) such Covered Software must also be made available in Source Code Form, as described in Section 3.1, and You must inform recipients of the Executable Form how they can obtain a copy of such Source Code Form by reasonable means in a timely manner, at a charge no more than the cost of distribution to the recipient; and
(b) You may distribute such Executable Form under the terms of this License, or sublicense it under different terms, provided that the license for the Executable Form does not attempt to limit or alter the recipients' rights in the Source Code Form under this License.

**3.3. Distribution of a Larger Work**
You may create and distribute a Larger Work under terms of Your choice, provided that You also comply with the requirements of this License for the Covered Software. If the Larger Work is a combination of Covered Software with a work governed by one or more Secondary Licenses, and the Covered Software is not Incompatible With Secondary Licenses, this License permits You to additionally distribute such Covered Software under the terms of such Secondary License(s), so that the recipient of the Larger Work may, at their option, further distribute the Covered Software under the terms of either this License or such Secondary License(s).

**3.4. Notices**
You may not remove or alter the substance of any license notices (including copyright notices, patent notices, disclaimers of warranty, or limitations of liability) contained within the Source Code Form of the Covered Software, except that You may alter any license notices to the extent required to remedy known factual inaccuracies.

**3.5. Application of Additional Terms**
You may choose to offer, and to charge a fee for, warranty, support, indemnity or liability obligations to one or more recipients of Covered Software. However, You may do so only on Your own behalf, and not on behalf of any Contributor. You must make it absolutely clear that any such warranty, support, indemnity, or liability obligation is offered by You alone, and You hereby agree to indemnify every Contributor for any liability incurred by such Contributor as a result of warranty, support, indemnity or liability terms You offer. You may include additional disclaimers of warranty and limitations of liability specific to any jurisdiction.

## 4. Inability to Comply Due to Statute or Regulation

If it is impossible for You to comply with any of the terms of this License with respect to some or all of the Covered Software due to statute, judicial order, or regulation then You must: (a) comply with the terms of this License to the maximum extent possible; and (b) describe the limitations and the code they affect. Such description must be placed in a text file included with all distributions of the Covered Software under this License. Except to the extent prohibited by statute or regulation, such description must be sufficiently detailed for a recipient of ordinary skill to be able to understand it.

## 5. Termination

5.1. The rights granted under this License will terminate automatically if You fail to comply with any of its terms. However, if You become compliant, then the rights granted under this License from a particular Contributor are reinstated (a) provisionally, unless and until such Contributor explicitly and finally terminates Your grants, and (b) on an ongoing basis, if such Contributor fails to notify You of the non-compliance by some reasonable means prior to 60 days after You have come back into compliance. Moreover, Your grants from a particular Contributor are reinstated on an ongoing basis if such Contributor notifies You of the non-compliance by some reasonable means, this is the first time You have received notice of non-compliance with this License from such Contributor, and You become compliant prior to 30 days after Your receipt of the notice.
5.2. If You initiate litigation against any entity by asserting a patent infringement claim (excluding declaratory judgment actions, counter-claims, and cross-claims) alleging that a Contributor Version directly or indirectly infringes any patent, then the rights granted to You by any and all Contributors for the Covered Software under Section 2.1 of this License shall terminate.
5.3. In the event of termination under Sections 5.1 or 5.2 above, all end user license agreements (excluding distributors and resellers) which have been validly granted by You or Your distributors under this License prior to termination shall survive termination.

## 6. Disclaimer of Warranty

Covered Software is provided under this License on an "as is" basis, without warranty of any kind, either expressed, implied, or statutory, including, without limitation, warranties that the Covered Software is free of defects, merchantable, fit for a particular purpose or non-infringing. The entire risk as to the quality and performance of the Covered Software is with You. Should any Covered Software prove defective in any respect, You (not any Contributor) assume the cost of any necessary servicing, repair, or correction. This disclaimer of warranty constitutes an essential part of this License. No use of any Covered Software is authorized under this License except under this disclaimer.

## 7. Limitation of Liability

Under no circumstances and under no legal theory, whether tort (including negligence), contract, or otherwise, shall any Contributor, or anyone who distributes Covered Software as permitted above, be liable to You for any direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages of any character including, without limitation, damages for lost profits, loss of goodwill, work stoppage, computer failure or malfunction, or any and all other commercial damages or losses, even if such party shall have been informed of the possibility of such damages. This limitation of liability shall not apply to liability for death or personal injury resulting from such party's negligence to the extent applicable law prohibits such limitation. Some jurisdictions do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so this exclusion and limitation may not apply to You.

## 8. Litigation

Any litigation relating to this License may be brought only in the courts of a jurisdiction where the defendant maintains its principal place of business and such litigation shall be governed by laws of that jurisdiction, without reference to its conflict-of-law provisions.
Nothing in this Section shall prevent a party's ability to bring cross-claims or counter-claims.

## 9. Miscellaneous

This License represents the complete agreement concerning the subject matter hereof. If any provision of this License is held to be unenforceable, such provision shall be reformed only to the extent necessary to make it enforceable. Any law or regulation which provides that the language of a contract shall be construed against the drafter shall not be used to construe this License against a Contributor.

## 10. Versions of the License

**10.1. New Versions**
Mozilla Foundation is the license steward. Except as provided in Section 10.3, no one other than the license steward has the right to modify or publish new versions of this License. Each version will be given a distinguishing version number.

**10.2. Effect of New Versions**
You may distribute the Covered Software under the terms of the version of the License under which You originally received the Covered Software, or under the terms of any subsequent version published by the license steward.

**10.3. Modified Versions**
If you create software not governed by this License, and you want to create a new license for such software, you may create and use a modified version of this License if you rename the license and remove any references to the name of the license steward (except to note that such modified license differs from this License).

**10.4. Distributing Source Code Form that is Incompatible With Secondary Licenses**
If You choose to distribute Source Code Form that is Incompatible With Secondary Licenses under the terms of this version of the License, the notice described in Exhibit B of this License must be attached.

### Exhibit A - Source Code Form License Notice

This Source Code Form is subject to the terms of the Mozilla Public License, v. 2.0. If a copy of the MPL was not distributed with this file, You can obtain one at http://mozilla.org/MPL/2.0/.
If it is not possible or desirable to put the notice in a particular file, then You may include the notice in a location (such as a LICENSE file in a relevant directory) where a recipient would be likely to look for such a notice.
You may add additional accurate notices of copyright ownership.

### Exhibit B - "Incompatible With Secondary Licenses" Notice

This Source Code Form is "Incompatible With Secondary Licenses", as defined by the Mozilla Public License, v. 2.0.

## Notice Regarding Third-party Software / その他第三者ソフトウェアに関するお知らせ

This product includes the following software that is directly or indirectly licensed to O&P Corporation by third-party developers. Please refer to the PDF files on the following website about the notice in response to requests from the copyright owners of each piece of software.
http://www.onkyo.com/manual/oss/2019avr.pdf
本製品には弊社が第三者より直接的に又は間接的に使用の許諾を受けた下記ソフトウェアが含まれております。各ソフトウェアの著作権者の要求に基づく通知については、以下のサイトより PDF ファイルをご参照ください。
http://www.onkyo.com/manual/oss/2019avr.pdf

**curl**
Copyright (c) 1996 - 2015, Daniel Stenberg, daniel@haxx.se. All rights reserved.
**dbus-1**
This license is Copyright (C) 2003-2004 Lawrence E. Rosen. All rights reserved.
**dropbear**
Copyright (c) 2002-2013 Matt Johnston
Portions copyright (c) 2004 Mihnea Stoenescu
All rights reserved.
**hostap-daemon**
Copyright (c) 2002-2012, Jouni Malinen <j@w1.fi> and contributors
All Rights Reserved.
**lw**
Copyright (c) 2007, 2008 Johannes Berg
Copyright (c) 2007 Andy Lutomirski
Copyright (c) 2007 Mike Kershaw
Copyright (c) 2008-2009 Luis R. Rodriguez
**libbz2-0**
This program, "bzip2", the associated library "libbzip2", and all documentation, are copyright (C) 1996-2010 Julian R Seward. All rights reserved.
**libcap2**
Copyright (c) 1997-8,2006 Andrew G. Morgan <morgan@kernel.org>
**libcrypto1.0.0**
Copyright (c) 1998-2011 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved.
**libcurl5**
Copyright (c) 1996 - 2014, Daniel Stenberg, <daniel@haxx.se>. All rights reserved.
**libdbus-1-3**
Copyright (C) 2003-2004 Lawrence E. Rosen. All rights reserved.
**libexpat1**
Copyright (c) 1998, 1999, 2000 Thai Open Source Software Center Ltd and Clark Cooper
Copyright (c) 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006 Expat maintainers.
**libffi6**
Copyright (c) 1996-2012 Anthony Green, Red Hat, Inc and others.
**libflac8**
Copyright (C) 2000,2001,2002 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
51 Franklin St, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301 USA
Copyright (C) 2000-2009 Josh Coalson
Copyright (C) 2011-2013 Xiph.Org Foundation
**libformw5**
Copyright (c) 1998-2004,2006 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
**libfreetype6**
Copyright 2005-2010, 2013 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg.
**libglib-2.0-0**
pcre : Copyright (c) 1997-2012 University of Cambridge
**libjpeg8**
Independent JPEG Group's JPEG software
copyright (C) 1991-2012, Thomas G. Lane, Guido Vollbeding.
**liblog4cplus-1.1-9**
Copyright (C) 1999-2009 Contributors to log4cplus project. All rights reserved.
**libmenuw5**
Copyright (c) 1998-2004,2006 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
**libncursesw5**
Copyright (c) 1998-2004,2006 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
**libogg0**
Copyright (c) 2002, Xiph.org Foundation
**libopus0**
Copyright 2001-2011 Xiph.Org, Skype Limited, Octasic, Jean-Marc Valin, Timothy B. Terriberry, CSIRO, Gregory Maxwell, Mark Borgarding, Erik de Castro Lopo
**liborc-0.4-0**
ORC - The Oil Runtime Compiler
Copyright 2002 - 2009 David A. Schleef <ds@schleef.org>
Copyright (C) 1997 - 2002, Makoto Matsumoto and Takuji Nishimura
**libpanelw5**
Copyright (c) 1998-2004,2006 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
**libpopt0**
Copyright (c) 1998 Red Hat Software
**libssl1.0.0**
Copyright (c) 1998-2011 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved.
**libtinfo5**
Copyright (c) 1998-2004,2006 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
**libuuid1**
Copyright (C) 1996, 1997, 1998, 1999 Theodore Ts'o
**libvorbis**
Copyright (c) 2002-2008 Xiph.org Foundation
**libx11-6**
Copyright (C) 2003-2006,2008 Jamey Sharp, Josh Triplett
Copyright © 2009 Red Hat, Inc.
Copyright 1990-1992,1999,2000,2004,2009,2010 Oracle and/or its affiliates.
All rights reserved.
**libxau6**
Copyright 1988, 1993, 1994, 1998 The Open Group
**libxcb1**
Copyright (C) 2001-2006 Bart Massey, Jamey Sharp, and Josh Triplett. All Rights Reserved.
**libxdmcp6**
Copyright 1989, 1998 The Open Group
**libxml2**
Copyright (C) 1998-2012 Daniel Veillard.
**nanomsg**
Achille Roussel <ach@fb.com> Aleksandar Fabijanic <alex@pocoproject.org>
Alex Brem <alex@fluktuation.net> Andre Jonsson <andre.jonsson@dataductus.se>
Andrew Starks <andrew.starks@tmms.com> Aram Santogidis <aram.santogidis@cern.ch>
Ark Degtiarov <a@amcloud.co> Bill McCroskey <Bill.McCroskey@Crown.com>
Boris Zantner <bzm@2bz.de> Bruce Mitchener <bruce.mitchener@gmail.com>
Bruno Bigras <bigras.bruno@gmail.com> Chip Salzenberg <chip@pobox.com>
David Beck <dbeck@beckground.hu> Dirkjan Ochtman <dirkjan@ochtman.nl>
Dong Fang <yp.fangdong@gmail.com> Drew Crawford <drew@saaledabstract.com>
Dylan Socolobsky <dsocolobsky@gmail.com>
Emeric Chevalier <emericchevalier.pro@gmail.com>
Emil Renner Berthing <esmil@mailme.dk> Evan Wies <evan@neomantra.net>
Gareth Roberts <biutack@gmail.com> Garrett D'Amore <garrett@damore.org>
Gonzalo Diethelm <gonzalo.diethelm@diethelm.org>
Gaurav Gupta <g.gupta@samsung.com> Hajime Saito <emijah.s@gmail.com>
Harlan Lieberman-Berg <H.LiebermanBerg@gmail.com>
Immanuel Weber <immanuel.weber@fhr.fraunhofer.de>
Ivan Pechorin <ivan.pechorin@gmail.com> Joshua Foster <jhawk28@gmail.com>
Julian Ammous <schmurfy@gmail.com> Kaspar Schiess <kaspar.schiess@absurd.li>
Kristian Lein-Mathisen <kristianlein@gmail.com> Luca Barbato <luca.barbato@gmail.com>
Manuel Mendez <nmendez534@gmail.com> Mark Elzey <sockel@gmail.com>
Martin Sustrik <sustrik@250bpm.com> Matt Howlett <matt.howlett@gmail.com>
Max Drechsler <max.drechsler@web.de> Michael John <posh.mike@gmail.com>
Mikko Koppanen <mikko@kuut.io> Nick Desaulniers <ndesaulniers@mozilla.com>
Nicolas Hillegeer <nicolashillegeer@gmail.com> Nir Soffer <nirsof@gmail.com>
Orjan Persson <o@42mm.org> Oskari Timperi <oskari.timperi@iki.fi>
Paul Colomiets <paul@colomiets.name> Pavlo Kapyshin <i@93z.org>
Remy Brunno <remy.bruno@trinnov.com> Rob Sciuk <rob@controlq.com>
Ryan Kilea <ryanbaylorkillea@wpi.edu> Robert G. Jakabosky <bobby@sharedrealm.com>
Sergey Avseyev <sergey.avseyev@gmail.com> Sergey Kovalevich <inndie@gmail.com>
Sergei Nikulov <sergey.nikulov@gmail.com> Simon Strandgaard <simon@troots.dk>
Stan Mihai <stanmihai4@gmail.com> Steve McKay <shubalubdub@gmail.com>
Timothee Besset <ttimo@ttimo.net> Tobias Peters <tobias.peters@kreativeffekt.at>
Victor Guerra <vguerra@gmail.com> Yonggang Luo <luoyonggang@gmail.com>
Zoltan Boszormenyi <zboszor@pr.hu>
**ncurses-terminfo-base**
Copyright (c) 1998-2004,2006 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
**openssl-conf**
Copyright (c) 1998-2011 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved.
**shadow**
Copyright (c+G358) 1990 - 1994, Julianne Frances Haugh
Copyright (c) 1996 - 2001, Marek Michalkiewicz
Copyright (c) 2001 - 2006, Tomasz Kloczko
Copyright (c) 2007 - 2009, Nicolas François
**sudo**
Copyright (c) 2009-2013 Todd C. Miller <Todd.Miller@courtesan.com>
**wpa-supplicant-cli**
Copyright (c) 2002-2014, Jouni Malinen <j@w1.fi> and contributors
All Rights Reserved.
**wpa-supplicant-passphrase**
Copyright (c) 2002-2014, Jouni Malinen <j@w1.fi> and contributors
All Rights Reserved.
**wpa-supplicant**
Copyright (c) 2002-2014, Jouni Malinen <j@w1.fi> and contributors
All Rights Reserved.
**boost**
Copyright © 2008 Beman Dawes, Rene Rivera
**iperf-2.0.5**
Copyright (c) 1999-2007, The Board of Trustees of the University of Illinois
All Rights Reserved.
**thttpd**
Copyright © 1995,1998,1999,2000,2001 by Jef Poskanzer <jef@mail.acme.com>
**Expat**
Copyright (c) 1998, 1999, 2000 Thai Open Source Software Center Ltd.
**FastDelegate**
Copyright © CodeProject, 1999-2015
All Rights Reserved.
**libogg**
Copyright (c) 2002, Xiph.org Foundation
**Tremolo**
Copyright (C) 2002-2009 Xiph.org Foundation
Changes Copyright (C) 2009-2010 Robin Watts for Pinknoise Productions Ltd
**Tremor**
Copyright (c) 2002, Xiph.org Foundation
**c-ares**
Copyright 1998 by the Massachusetts Institute of Technology.
**mDNSResponder**
Copyright (c) 2002-2006 Apple Computer, Inc
**GladmanAES**
Copyright (c) 1998-2010, Brian Gladman, Worcester, UK
**Curve25519**
Copyright 2008, Google Inc
**mongoose**
Copyright (c) 2004-2013 Sergey Lyubka <valenok@gmail.com>
Copyright (c) 2013-2018 Cesanta Software Limited
All rights reserved
**base-passwd**
Copyright (C) 1992-1996, 1998-2012 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
**bluez5-bdaddr**
Copyright (C) 2006-2010 Nokia Corporation
Copyright (C) 2004-2010 Marcel Holtmann <marcel@holtmann.org>
Copyright (C) 2014 Google Inc.

**dosfstools**
Copyright (C) 2015 Andreas Bombe <aeb@debian.org>
Copyright (C) 1993 Werner Almesberger <werner.almesberger@lrc.di.epfl.ch>
Copyright (C) 1998 Roman Hodek <Roman.Hodek@informatik.uni-erlangen.de>
Copyright (C) 2008-2014 Daniel Baumann <mail@daniel-baumann.ch>
**e2fsprogs**
Copyright 2008 by Theodore Ts'o. All Rights Reserved.
**e2fsprogs-badblocks**
Copyright 1992-2015 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
**e2fsprogs-e2fsck**
Copyright (C) 1993, 1994, 1995, 1996, 1997 Theodore Ts'o.
**e2fsprogs-mke2fs**
Copyright (c) 2003-2006 Theodore Ts'o <tytso@mit.edu>
Copyright (c) 1997-2003 Yann Dirson <dirson@debian.org>
Copyright (c) 2001 Alcove <http://www.alcove.com/>
Copyright (c) 1997 Klee Dienes
Copyright (c) 1995-1996 Michael Nonweiler <mm20@cam.ac.uk>
**eudev**
Copyright 2008-2012 Kay Sievers <kay@vrfy.org>
Copyright 2010-2012 Lennart Poettering
Copyright 2010-2012 Kay Sievers
**fuse-utils**
Copyright (C) 2001-2007 Miklos Szeredi <miklos@szeredi.hu>
**gdbserver**
Copyright (C) 2007-2015 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
**kbd**
Copyright (C) 2014 Alexey Gladkov <gladkov.alexey@gmail.com>
Copyright (C) 1994-1998 Michael K. Johnson <johnsonm@redhat.com>
Copyright (C) 2002, 2005 Dmitry V. Levin <ldv@altlinux.org>
**kernel-4.9.123**
Copyright 2014-2015 Integrated Device Technology, Inc.
(C) 2007 Rafael J. Wysocki <rjw@sisk.pl>
**kernel-module-galcore**
Copyright (C) 1989, 1991 Free Software Foundation, Inc. 51 Franklin Street, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301, USA
**kernel-module-imx-gpu-viv**
Copyright (C) 1989, 1991 Free Software Foundation, Inc. 51 Franklin Street, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301, USA
**kernel-module-optee**
Copyright (c) 2015-2016, Linaro Limited All rights reserved.
**kernel-module-optee-armtz**
Copyright (c) 2014, Linaro Limited
Copyright (c) 2014, STMicroelectronics International N.V.
**libc6-thread-db**
Copyright (C) 1991 Regents of the University of California.All rights reserved.
**libe2p2**
Theodore Ts'o <tytso@mit.edu>
**libevdev**
Copyright (c) 1999-2002 Vojtech Pavlik
**libext2fs2**
Theodore Ts'o <tytso@mit.edu>
**libfdisk1**
Copyright (C) 2019-2015 Karel Zak <kzak@redhat.com>
**libfuse2**
Copyright (C) 2001-2007 Miklos Szeredi <miklos@szeredi.hu>
**libgbm1**
Copyright © 2011 Intel Corporation
**libgmp3**
Copyright 1991, 1993, 1994, 1995, 1996, 1997, 1998, 1999, 2000, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
**libgstadaptivedemux-1.0-0**
Copyright (C) 2018 GStreamer developers
Copyright (C) 2014 Samsung Electronics. All rights reserved.
**libgsturidownloader-1.0-0**
Copyright (C) 1994, 1995, 1996, 1997, 1998, 1999, 2000, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
**libmount1**
Copyright (C) 2009-2018 Karel Zak <kzak@redhat.com>
**libqt5xmlpatterns5**
Copyright (C) 2016 The Qt Company Ltd.
**libresample1.8**
Copyright (C) 1992, 1993, 1994, 1995, 1996, 1997, 1998, 1999, 2000, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006, 2007, 2008, 2009 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
**libsbc1**
Copyright (C) 1996, 1997, 1998, 1999, 2000, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006, 2008, 2009, 2010, 2011, 2012 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
Copyright (C) 2008-2010 Nokia Corporation
Copyright (C) 2004-2010 Marcel Holtmann <marcel@holtmann.org>
Copyright (C) 2004-2005 Henryk Ploetz <henryk@ploetzli.ch>
Copyright (C) 2005-2006 Brad Midgley <bmidgley@xmission.com>
**libsmartcols1**
Copyright © 2010-2015 Karel Zak <kzak@redhat.com>
**libss2**
Copyright (C) 1997, 1998, 1999, 2000, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004 by Theodore Ts'o
**libulockmgr1**
Copyright (C) 2006 Miklos Szeredi <miklos@szeredi.hu>
Copyright (c) 2006-2008 Amit Singh/Google Inc.
Copyright (c) 2011-2014 Benjamin Fleischer
**mlanconfig**
Copyright (C) 2008-2014, Marvell International Ltd.
**mmc-utils**
Uwe Kleine-König <u.kleine-koenig@pengutronix.de>
**qt4-embedded-plugin-imageformat-jpeg**
Copyright (C) 2015 The Qt Company Ltd.
**qtbase**
Copyright (C) 2016 The Qt Company Ltd.
**qtbase-extra-plugins**
Copyright (C) 2016 The Qt Company Ltd.
**qtbase-gui**
Copyright (C) 2016 The Qt Company Ltd.
**qtbase-misc**
Copyright (C) 2016 The Qt Company Ltd.
**qtdeclarative**
Copyright (C) 2016 The Qt Company Ltd.
**qtdeclarative-plugins**
Copyright (C) 2016 The Qt Company Ltd.
**qtdeclarative-qmlplugins**
Copyright (C) 2016 The Qt Company Ltd.
**qtwayland**
Copyright (C) 2016 The Qt Company Ltd.
**qtwayland-plugins**
Copyright (C) 2015 The Qt Company Ltd.
**util-linux**
Copyright © 2010-2015 Karel Zak <kzak@redhat.com>
**util-linux-cfdisk**
Copyright © 2010-2015 Karel Zak <kzak@redhat.com>
**util-linux-fdisk**
Copyright © 2010-2015 Karel Zak <kzak@redhat.com>
**util-linux-losetup**
Copyright © 2010-2015 Karel Zak <kzak@redhat.com>
**util-linux-mkfs**
Copyright © 2010-2015 Karel Zak <kzak@redhat.com>
**util-linux-mount**
Copyright © 2010-2015 Karel Zak <kzak@redhat.com>
**util-linux-mountpoint**
Copyright © 2010-2015 Karel Zak <kzak@redhat.com>
**util-linux-readprofile**
Copyright © 2010-2015 Karel Zak <kzak@redhat.com>
**util-linux-runuser**
Copyright © 2010-2015 Karel Zak <kzak@redhat.com>
**util-linux-sfdisk**
Copyright © 2010-2015 Karel Zak <kzak@redhat.com>
**util-linux-swaponoff**
Copyright © 2010-2015 Karel Zak <kzak@redhat.com>
**util-linux-umount**
Copyright © 2010-2015 Karel Zak <kzak@redhat.com>
**libsystemd**
(C) 1989, 1991 Free Software Foundation, Inc. 51 Franklin Street, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301, USA
**glmark2**
(c) Copyright 1993, Silicon Graphics, Inc.
ALL RIGHTS RESERVED
**cairo**
(C) 1991, 1999 Free Software Foundation, Inc.51 Franklin Street, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301 USA
**cairo-gobject**
(C) 1991, 1999 Free Software Foundation, Inc.51 Franklin Street, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301 USA
**gdbm**
Copyright © 2007 Free Software Foundation, Inc. <http://fsf.org/>
**gdbm-compat**
Copyright © 2007 Free Software Foundation, Inc. <http://fsf.org/>
**gdbm-dev**
Copyright © 2007 Free Software Foundation, Inc. <http://fsf.org/>
**pango**
Copyright (C) 1991 Free Software Foundation, Inc.51 Franklin St, Fifth Floor, Boston, MA 02110-1301, USA

You may obtain a complete machine-readable copy of the corresponding source code on a physical medium by contacting Customer Service.
This offer is valid to any third party within three years after last shipment of the product. Costs of physical distribution will be charged.
コールセンターにお問い合わせいただければ，対応するソースコードの完全な機械可読コピーを物理メディアでお渡しします。
製品の最終出荷後，3 年間有効です。掛かる費用についてはご負担いただきます。

ONKYO

# Product Registration (USA and Canada)

## Product Registration

Thank you for purchasing this Onkyo product. In order to protect your investment and to receive information on new products and updates, please register. Please visit our web site for your online registration at:

**https://www.onkyousa.com/Support/productregistration.php** (For USA customers)
**http://www.onkyo.ca/Support/productregistration.php** (For Canadian customers)

## Online Customer Support

**www.onkyousa.com** can assist you anytime with Frequently Asked Questions, Hookup Diagrams, and Service Information.
**www.onkyo.ca** is available for Canadian customer

### We offer Product Support 7 days per week

Onkyo has extended its product support hours to a seven-day schedule. For questions, assistance, or comments, please call us or visit on our website at:

**Tel** 1-800-229-1687

**Web** **www.onkyousa.com/support** (For USA customers)
**www.onkyo.ca/support** (For Canadian customers)

**Onkyo USA Corporation**
18 Park Way, Upper Saddle River, NJ 07458
Phone: 201-785-2600 Fax: 201-934-7823

# Enregistrement du produit (États Unis et Canada)

## Enregistrement du produit

Nous vous remercions d'avoir acheté ce produit Onkyo. Pour protéger votre investissement et pour recevoir de l'information sur nos nouveaux produits ainsi que des mises à jour, veuillez enregistrer votre produit. Pour ce faire, consultez notre site Web aux adresses suivantes :

**https://www.onkyousa.com/Support/productregistration.php** (pour les clients des États Unis)
**http://www.onkyo.ca/Support/productregistration.php** (pour les clients du Canada)

## Soutien à la clientèle en ligne

Vous pouvez obtenir de l'aide en tout temps sur le site **www.onkyousa.com** en consultant les sections *Frequently Asked Questions, Hookup Diagrams* et *Service Information*. Les clients canadiens peuvent quant à eux consulter le site **www.onkyo.ca**.

### Nous offrons un soutien technique 7 jours sur 7

Onkyo offre maintenant un soutien technique 7 jours sur 7. Pour obtenir de l'aide, des réponses à vos questions, ou pour soumettre vos commentaires, veuillez communiquer avec nous par téléphone ou consulter notre site Web :

**Téléphone** 1-800-229-1687

**Sites Web** **www.onkyousa.com/support** (pour les clients des États Unis)
**www.onkyo.ca/support** (pour les clients du Canada)

**Onkyo USA Corporation**
18 Park Way, Upper Saddle River, NJ 07458
Téléphone: 201-785-2600 Télécopieur: 201-934-7823

SN: 29365304B

# Onkyo USA Corporation Limited Consumer Warranty (USA)

PLEASE RETAIN YOUR ORIGINAL BILL OF SALE AS YOU WILL NEED TO PRESENT IT SHOULD YOU REQUIRE SERVICE UNDER THIS WARRANTY.
Onkyo USA Corporation (hereinafter referred to as Onkyo) hereby warrants all Onkyo brand products **PURCHASED DIRECTLY FROM Onkyo OR FROM AN INDEPENDENT Onkyo AUTHORIZED DEALER in the UNITED STATES,**
in accordance with the following terms and conditions:

## WARRANTY PERIOD (from date of purchase):

| | |
|---|---|
| **New Products** | |
| Receivers, Amplifiers and Home Theater Systems/Sound Bars | 2 years Parts & Labor |
| BD/DVD Players, Tuners, Tablet and Speakers | 2 years Parts & Labor |
| CD Players and Personal Audio Systems | 1 year Parts & Labor |
| Smart Speakers, Wi-Fi/BT Speakers and Headphones | 1 year Parts & Labor |
| Portable Audios and Audio/Video Accessories | 1 year Parts & Labor |
| **Refurbished Products** | |
| Receivers and Amplifiers Other Audio/Video Equipment | 1 year Parts & Labor |

## SCOPE OF WARRANTY

From the date of original consumer purchase and for the respective periods specified above, Onkyo agrees to repair, at its sole expense, all Onkyo brand products purchased directly from Onkyo or from an Independent Onkyo Authorized Dealer, which are defective in material and/or workmanship during ordinary consumer use. Repairs may be completed using new or refurbished parts that meet or exceed Onkyo specifications for new parts. Onkyo, at its sole discretion, may replace a product, with a refurbished or reconditioned unit having comparable features and a limited consumer warranty.

### EXCLUSIONS:

***IF YOU PURCHASE AN Onkyo BRAND PRODUCT FROM AN UNAUTHORIZED DEALER, YOUR Onkyo WARRANTY MAY NOT BE VALID, please use our authorized dealer locator.***

### This Warranty does not apply with respect to or cover the following:

1. Defects or damage caused by accident, fire/smoke, flood/water damage, power surge (or related electrical abnormalities), lightning or other acts of nature.
2. Defects or damage caused by abuse, misuse, negligence, accident, unauthorized product modification or service, or failure to observe the instructions contained in the manual furnished at the time of original purchase.
3. Deterioration/failure due to corrosive atmosphere, including but not limited to; smoke, high humidity or extreme temperature.
4. Damage caused during shipment or handling.
5. Products purchased from anyone other than Onkyo or an Independent Onkyo Authorized Dealer. If you are uncertain as to whether a dealer is authorized, please contact Onkyo's Customer Relations Department or check the **Dealer and Service Locator**.
6. Products that have had their serial numbers altered or removed.
7. Products purchased in "AS IS" condition or noted as "DEMO", "DISPLAY", "OPEN BOX", or "CLEARANCE".
8. Products that have been altered or repaired by anyone other than Onkyo or an Onkyo authorized independent service station in a manner that has affected their performance, stability or reliability.
9. Accessories attached to or to be used with Onkyo products, such as antennas, batteries, cables, etc.
10. Any product attached to or used with the Onkyo Product.
11. Packing materials and cosmetic items.
12. Parts which have prescribed useful lives dependent upon the degree of their use, such as styli, cassette heads, idler wheels, batteries, etc.
13. Installation and removal of Onkyo products, setup, adjustments or signal reception issues.
14. Maintenance, cleaning or periodic check-ups.
15. Adjustments or alterations required for compatibility with conditions pertaining to foreign countries.

### OBTAINING WARRANTY SERVICE:

To obtain warranty service, take or ship your Onkyo product to an Onkyo Authorized Independent Service Center, together with a note describing your complaint and your copy of the dated purchase receipt. Repairs are not performed at our headquarters; all repairs must be performed by our Onkyo Authorized Independent Service Centers. For a list of Onkyo Authorized Independent Service Centers please go to; **www.onkyousa.com**, under, **Support**. Please also include in any mailing; a contact name, address and email address or telephone number. If you choose to ship your Onkyo product to an Onkyo Authorized Independent Service Center, all shipping arrangements must be made by you and all shipping charges and insurance must be fully prepaid. Any Onkyo product shipped in its entirety must be properly packaged to avoid shipping damage. Any shipping damage incurred as a result of improper or insufficient packaging will be the responsibility of the shipper. Onkyo will pay all return shipping charges for Onkyo products that have been serviced under this warranty. Any service or repair for items not covered by this limited warranty shall be at the Authorized Independent Service Center's rates and terms then in effect. Contact an Onkyo Authorized Independent Service Center for details.

### LIMITATIONS:

Onkyo makes this warranty subject to the following limitations:

1. This limited Warranty is valid only within the continental United States of America, Hawaii and Alaska. To be covered by this warranty the Onkyo product concerned must have been purchased directly from Onkyo or an Independent Onkyo Authorized Dealer and the person seeking warranty service must reside in one of the states of the United States of America or in the District of Columbia. This warranty extends only to the original retail purchaser and cannot be transferred to anyone.
2. Onkyo SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY WHATSOEVER FOR SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES. THE RESPONSIBILITY OF Onkyo UNDER THIS WARRANTY SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE REPAIR OR REPLACEMENT OF DEFECTIVE Onkyo PRODUCTS BY Onkyo OR ITS AUTHORIZED INDEPENDENT SERVICE CENTERS.
3. This warranty is valid only with respect to repairs affected by Onkyo or an Onkyo authorized independent service center.
4. ALL WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THE EXPRESS WARRANTY HEREIN CONTAINED INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANT ABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE APPLICABLE WARRANTY PERIOD SET FORTH ABOVE.

Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts and some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitations or exclusion may not apply to you. This warranty gives you specific legal rights and you may also have other rights that vary from state to state.

# Onkyo USA Corporation Consumer Warranty (Canada)

PLEASE RETAIN YOUR ORIGINAL BILL OF SALE AS YOU WILL NEED TO PRESENT IT SHOULD YOU REQUIRE SERVICE UNDER THIS WARRANTY.
Onkyo USA Corporation (hereinafter referred to as Onkyo) hereby warrants all Onkyo brand products **PURCHASED DIRECTLY FROM Onkyo OR FROM AN INDEPENDENT Onkyo AUTHORIZED DEALER IN CANADA,**
in accordance with the following terms and conditions:

## WARRANTY PERIOD (from date of purchase):

| | |
|---|---|
| **New Products** | |
| Receivers, Amplifiers and Home Theater Systems/Sound Bars | 2 years Parts & Labor |
| BD/DVD Players, Tuners, Tablet and Speakers | 2 years Parts & Labor |
| CD Players and Personal Audio Systems | 1 year Parts & Labor |
| Smart Speakers, Wi-Fi/BT Speakers and Headphones | 1 year Parts & Labor |
| Portable Audios and Audio/Video Accessories | 1 year Parts & Labor |
| **Refurbished Products** | |
| Receivers and Amplifiers Other Audio/Video Equipment | 1 year Parts & Labor |

## SCOPE OF WARRANTY

From the date of original consumer purchase and for the respective periods specified above, Onkyo agrees to repair, at its sole expense, all Onkyo brand products purchased directly from Onkyo or from an Independent Onkyo Authorized Dealer in Canada, which are defective in material and/or workmanship during ordinary consumer use. Repairs may be completed using new or refurbished parts that meet or exceed Onkyo specifications for new parts. Onkyo, at its sole discretion, may replace a product, with a refurbished or reconditioned unit having comparable features.

### EXCLUSIONS:

***IF YOU PURCHASE AN Onkyo BRAND PRODUCT FROM AN UNAUTHORIZED DEALER, YOUR Onkyo WARRANTY MAY NOT BE VALID, please use our authorized dealer locator.***

### This Warranty does not apply with respect to or cover the following:

1. Defects or damage caused by accident, fire/smoke, flood/water damage, power surge (or related electrical abnormalities), lightning or other acts of nature.
2. Defects or damage caused by abuse, misuse, negligence, accident, unauthorized product modification or service, or failure to observe the instructions contained in the manual furnished at the time of original purchase.
3. Deterioration/failure due to corrosive atmosphere, including but not limited to; smoke, high humidity or extreme temperature.
4. Damage caused during shipment or handling.
5. Products purchased from anyone other than Onkyo or an Independent Onkyo Authorized Dealer. If you are uncertain as to whether a dealer is authorized, please contact Onkyo's Customer Relations Department or check the **Dealer and Service Locator.**
6. Products that have had their serial numbers altered or removed.
7. Products purchased in "AS IS" condition or noted as "DEMO", "DISPLAY", "OPEN BOX", or "CLEARANCE".
8. Products that have been altered or repaired by anyone other than Onkyo or an Onkyo authorized independent service station in a manner that has affected their performance, stability or reliability.
9. Accessories attached to or to be used with Onkyo brand products, such as antennas, batteries, cables, etc.
10. Any product attached to or used with the Onkyo brand product.
11. Packing materials and cosmetic items.
12. Parts which have prescribed useful lives dependent upon the degree of their use, such as styli, cassette heads, idler wheels, batteries, etc.
13. Installation and removal of Onkyo brand products, setup, adjustments or signal reception issues.
14. Maintenance, cleaning or periodic check-ups.
15. Adjustments or alterations required for compatibility with conditions pertaining to foreign countries.
16. Loss of, damage to or corruption of stored program or data.

### OBTAINING WARRANTY SERVICE:

To obtain warranty service, take or ship your Onkyo brand product to an Onkyo Authorized Independent Service Center, together with a note describing your complaint and your original dated purchase receipt. Repairs are not performed at our headquarters; all repairs must be performed by our Onkyo Authorized Independent Service Centers. For a list of Onkyo Authorized Independent Service Centers please go to; **www.onkyo.ca**, under, **Support**. Please also include in any mailing; a contact name, address and email address or telephone number. If you choose to ship your Onkyo brand product to an Onkyo Authorized Independent Service Center, all shipping arrangements must be made by you and all shipping charges and insurance must be fully prepaid. Any Onkyo brand product shipped must be properly packaged to avoid shipping damage. Any damage incurred as a result of improper or insufficient packaging will be the responsibility of the customer or the shipper. Onkyo will pay all return shipping charges for Onkyo brand products that have been serviced under this warranty. Any service or repair for items not covered by this limited warranty shall be at the Authorized Independent Service Center's rates and terms then in effect. Contact an Onkyo Authorized Independent Service Center for details.

### LIMITATIONS:

Onkyo makes this warranty subject to the following limitations:

1. This limited Warranty is valid only within Canada. To be covered by this warranty the Onkyo brand product concerned must have been purchased directly from Onkyo or an Independent Onkyo Authorized Dealer in Canada and the person seeking warranty service must reside in Canada. This warranty extends only to the original retail purchaser meeting the above requirements and cannot be transferred to anyone.
2. Onkyo SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY WHATSOEVER FOR SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES FOR BREACH OF ANY EXPRESS, DEEMED OR IMPLIED WARRANTY OR CONDITION, OR FOR LOSS OF, DAMAGE TO OR CORRUPTION OF ANY PROGRAM OR DATA STORED IN OR USED WITH THE PRODUCT. THE RESPONSIBILITY OF Onkyo UNDER THIS WARRANTY IS AND SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE REPAIR OR REPLACEMENT OF DEFECTIVE Onkyo PRODUCTS BY Onkyo OR ITS AUTHORIZED INDEPENDENT SERVICE CENTERS.
3. This warranty is valid only with respect to repairs made by Onkyo or an Onkyo authorized independent service center.
4. EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT PROHIBITED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY IMPLIED CONDITION OR WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR DEEMED CONDITION OR WARRANTY UNDER APPLICABLE CONSUMER LAW, IS LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE APPLICABLE WARRANTY PERIOD SET FORTH ABOVE.

Some jurisdictions do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts and some jurisdictions do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitations or exclusion may not apply to you. This warranty gives you specific legal rights and you may also have other rights that vary from jurisdiction to jurisdiction.

ONKYO

# For multi-room audio, Just add speakers.

Harmonize your home with multi-room sound—just add NCP-302 speakers featuring FlareConnect™*. Share what's playing through your compatible master component, group and synchronize playback on supported systems, and manage music with the Onkyo Controller* app. Multi-room listening expands with Chromecast built-in* and DTS Play-Fi®* supporting voice control via compatible smart speakers including Onkyo's G3 or P3.

Flare connect

Chromecast built-in

dts Play-Fi music is home

** Note: FlareConnect, Chromecast built-in and DTS Play-Fi® are enabled with a firmware update. Sharing audio from a component's external inputs is enabled with a future firmware update. External inputs supporting FlareConnect™ may differ depending on model. Please consult individual product specifications for more information. Onkyo Controller is available for iPad, iPhone, and Android™ devices. Please check your device and OS compatibility at App Store or Google Play. Some music and internet radio services require a paid subscription and are subject to regional availability.*

NCP-302(B)

NCP-302(W)

# NCP-302

Wireless Audio System

QR: NCP-302

## SIMPLE CONTROL, GREAT MUSICALITY

works with the Google Assistant

Wi Fi CERTIFIED

Bluetooth

music

Spotify

TIDAL

DEEZER

tunein

pandora

## Music Anywhere

FlareConnect™* distributes audio from a supported master component's network and external input sources to other FlareConnect™-ready products. Enjoy vinyl records, CDs, or HDMI® audio on NCP-302 speakers in other rooms, and share network music freely between any FlareConnect™-ready system.

ONKYO

### *Intuitive Control Application*

Onkyo Controller for iPad, iPhone, and Android™ devices distributes any audio* playing on a FlareConnect™-ready master component to NCP-302 speakers. It creates and saves speaker groups, and streams network audio to single or grouped NCP-302 speakers with a tap on the touchscreen.

Next Generation Network Audio Mini-site
**http://www.onkyousa.com/wha/**

Flare connect

** Note: Sharing audio from a component's external inputs is enabled with a future firmware update, and external inputs supporting FlareConnect™ may differ depending on the model. Please consult individual product specification for more information.*

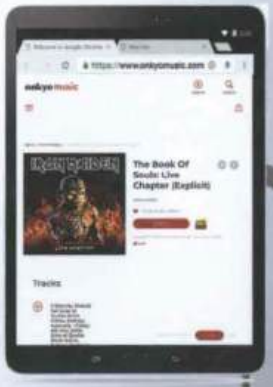
*Due to a policy of continuous product improvement, Onkyo reserves the right to change specifications and appearance without notice. Manufactured under license from DTS, Inc. DTS, the Symbol, DTS and the Symbol together, logo, Play-Fi, and the Play-Fi logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of DTS, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved. The terms HDMI, the HDMI logo, and High-Definition Multimedia Interface are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC in the United States and other countries. The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. iPad and iPhone are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. Google, Google Assistant, Android, Google Play, and Chromecast built-in are trademarks of Google Inc. Wi-Fi® is a registered trademark of the Wi-Fi Alliance. The Wi-Fi CERTIFIED Logo is a certification mark of the Wi-Fi Alliance. Spotify and the Spotify logo are trademarks of the Spotify Group, registered in the U.S. and other countries. Amazon, Amazon Music, and all related logos are trademarks of Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. FlareConnect and Onkyo Controller are trademarks of Onkyo Corporation. All other trademarks and registered trademarks are the property of their respective holders.*

29380177

# onkyo music

ENTER
**A NEW**
WORLD OF
**MUSIC**

Your Favorite Artists, Composers and labels in Hi-Res
Studio Master Recordings for those who seek the best audio quality!
Download service available in USA, UK and Germany at **onkyomusic.com**



Hi-Res AUDIO

GET IT ON Google Play

Download on the App Store

MQA

2 9 3 8 0 1 7 9 A

Google Play and the Google Play logo are trademarks of Google LLC.